

## **Oracle® GoldenGate**

Administering Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX

*12c (12.1.2)*

**E29388-06**

November 2014

Documentation for system administrators and database administrators that describes how to work with the interface components that control Oracle GoldenGate, monitor and troubleshoot Oracle GoldenGate performance, and perform other administrative operations.

Copyright © 2013, 2014, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

**U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS:** Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services.

---

---

# Contents

<b>Preface .....</b>	xvii
Audience.....	xvii
Documentation Accessibility .....	xvii
Related Documents .....	xvii
Conventions .....	xviii
<b>1 Introduction to Oracle GoldenGate</b>	
1.1 Oracle GoldenGate Supported Processing Methods and Databases .....	1-1
1.2 Overview of the Oracle GoldenGate Architecture .....	1-3
1.2.1 Overview of Extract .....	1-4
1.2.2 Overview of Data Pumps .....	1-4
1.2.3 Overview of Replicat .....	1-5
1.2.4 Overview of Trails .....	1-6
1.2.4.1 Processes that Write to, and Read, a Trail .....	1-6
1.2.4.2 Trail Creation and Maintenance .....	1-7
1.2.5 Overview of Extract Files .....	1-7
1.2.6 Overview of Checkpoints .....	1-7
1.2.7 Overview of Manager .....	1-8
1.2.8 Overview of Collector .....	1-9
1.3 Overview of Process Types .....	1-9
1.4 Overview of Groups .....	1-10
1.5 Overview of the Commit Sequence Number (CSN) .....	1-10
<b>2 Oracle GoldenGate Globalization Support</b>	
2.1 Preserving the Character Set .....	2-1
2.1.1 Character Set of Database Structural Metadata .....	2-1
2.1.2 Character Set of Character-type Data .....	2-1
2.1.3 Character Set of Database Connection .....	2-1
2.1.4 Character Set of Text Input and Output .....	2-2
2.2 Using Unicode and Native Characters .....	2-2
<b>3 Configuring Manager and Network Communications</b>	
3.1 Overview of the Manager Process .....	3-1
3.2 Assigning Manager a Port for Local Communication .....	3-2
3.3 Maintaining Ports for Remote Connections through Firewalls .....	3-2

3.4	Choosing an Internet Protocol .....	3-3
3.5	Recommended Manager Parameters .....	3-3
3.6	Creating the Manager Parameter File .....	3-4
3.7	Starting Manager .....	3-4
3.7.1	Starting Manager from the Command Shell of the Operating System .....	3-5
3.7.2	Starting Manager from GGSCI .....	3-5
3.8	Stopping Manager .....	3-5
3.8.1	Stopping Manager on UNIX and Linux .....	3-5
3.8.2	Stopping Manager on Windows .....	3-5

## 4 Getting Started with the Oracle GoldenGate Process Interfaces

4.1	Using the GGSCI Command-line Interface .....	4-1
4.1.1	Using Wildcards in Command Arguments .....	4-1
4.1.2	Globalization Support for the Command Interface .....	4-1
4.1.3	Using Command History .....	4-2
4.1.4	Storing and Calling Frequently Used Command Sequences .....	4-2
4.2	Controlling Oracle GoldenGate Processes .....	4-3
4.2.1	Controlling Manager .....	4-3
4.2.2	Controlling Extract and Replicat .....	4-3
4.2.3	Deleting Extract and Replicat .....	4-4
4.3	Automating Commands .....	4-5
4.3.1	Issuing Commands Through the IBM i CLI .....	4-6
4.4	Using Oracle GoldenGate Parameter Files .....	4-6
4.4.1	Globalization Support for Parameter Files .....	4-6
4.4.2	Working with the GLOBALS File .....	4-7
4.4.3	Working with Runtime Parameters .....	4-7
4.4.4	Creating a Parameter File .....	4-9
4.4.4.1	Creating a Parameter File in GGSCI .....	4-9
4.4.4.2	Creating a Parameter File with a Text Editor .....	4-11
4.4.5	Verifying a Parameter File .....	4-11
4.4.6	Viewing a Parameter File .....	4-11
4.4.7	Changing a Parameter File .....	4-12
4.4.8	Simplifying the Creation of Parameter Files .....	4-12
4.4.8.1	Using Wildcards .....	4-13
4.4.8.2	Using OBEY .....	4-13
4.4.8.3	Using Macros .....	4-13
4.4.8.4	Using Parameter Substitution .....	4-13
4.4.9	Getting Information about Oracle GoldenGate Parameters .....	4-14
4.5	Specifying Object Names in Oracle GoldenGate Input .....	4-14
4.5.1	Specifying Filesystem Path Names in Parameter Files on Windows Systems .....	4-14
4.5.2	Supported Database Object Names .....	4-15
4.5.2.1	Supported Special Characters .....	4-15
4.5.2.2	Non-supported Special Characters .....	4-15
4.5.3	Specifying Names that Contain Slashes .....	4-16
4.5.4	Qualifying Database Object Names .....	4-16
4.5.4.1	Two-part Names .....	4-16
4.5.4.2	Three-part Names .....	4-17

4.5.4.3	Applying Data from Multiple Containers or Catalogs .....	4-18
4.5.4.4	Specifying a Default Container or Catalog .....	4-18
4.5.5	Specifying Case-Sensitive Database Object Names .....	4-18
4.5.6	Using Wildcards in Database Object Names .....	4-19
4.5.6.1	Rules for Using Wildcards for Source Objects .....	4-20
4.5.6.2	Rules for Using Wildcards for Target Objects .....	4-21
4.5.6.3	Fallback Name Mapping .....	4-21
4.5.6.4	Wildcard Mapping from Pre-11.2.1 Trail Version .....	4-22
4.5.6.5	Asterisks or Question Marks as Literals in Object Names .....	4-22
4.5.6.6	How Wildcards are Resolved .....	4-22
4.5.6.7	Excluding Objects from a Wildcard Specification .....	4-22
4.5.7	Differentiating Case-sensitive Column Names from Literals .....	4-22

## **5 Using Oracle GoldenGate for Live Reporting**

5.1	Overview of the Reporting Configuration .....	5-1
5.1.1	Filtering and Conversion .....	5-1
5.1.2	Read-only vs. High Availability .....	5-2
5.1.3	Additional Information .....	5-2
5.2	Creating a Standard Reporting Configuration .....	5-2
5.2.1	Source System .....	5-3
5.2.2	Target System .....	5-4
5.3	Creating a Reporting Configuration with a Data Pump on the Source System .....	5-5
5.3.1	Source System .....	5-5
5.3.2	Target System .....	5-7
5.4	Creating a Reporting Configuration with a Data Pump on an Intermediary System .....	5-8
5.4.1	Source System .....	5-9
5.4.2	Intermediary System .....	5-11
5.4.3	Target System .....	5-12
5.5	Creating a Cascading Reporting Configuration .....	5-13
5.5.1	Source System .....	5-14
5.5.2	Second System in the Cascade .....	5-16
5.5.3	Third System in the Cascade .....	5-18

## **6 Using Oracle GoldenGate for Real-time Data Distribution**

6.1	Overview of the Data-distribution Configuration .....	6-1
6.2	Considerations for a Data-distribution Configuration .....	6-1
6.2.1	Fault Tolerance .....	6-1
6.2.2	Filtering and Conversion .....	6-2
6.2.3	Read-only vs. High Availability .....	6-2
6.2.4	Additional Information .....	6-2
6.3	Creating a Data Distribution Configuration .....	6-2
6.3.1	Source System .....	6-3
6.3.2	Target Systems .....	6-5

## **7 Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Real-time Data Warehousing**

7.1	Overview of the Data Warehousing Configuration .....	7-1
-----	--	-----

7.2	Considerations for a Data Warehousing Configuration .....	7-1
7.2.1	Isolation of Data Records .....	7-1
7.2.2	Data Storage .....	7-2
7.2.3	Filtering and Conversion .....	7-2
7.2.4	Additional Information .....	7-2
7.3	Creating a Data Warehousing Configuration .....	7-2
7.3.1	Source Systems .....	7-3
7.3.2	Target System .....	7-6

## **8 Configuring Oracle GoldenGate to Maintain a Live Standby Database**

8.1	Overview of a Live Standby Configuration .....	8-1
8.2	Considerations for a Live Standby Configuration .....	8-2
8.2.1	Trusted Source .....	8-2
8.2.2	Duplicate Standby .....	8-2
8.2.3	DML on the Standby System .....	8-2
8.2.4	Oracle GoldenGate Processes .....	8-2
8.2.5	Backup Files .....	8-2
8.2.6	Failover Preparedness .....	8-3
8.2.7	Sequential Values that are Generated by the Database .....	8-3
8.2.8	Additional Information .....	8-3
8.3	Creating a Live Standby Configuration .....	8-3
8.3.1	Prerequisites on Both Systems .....	8-4
8.3.2	Configuration from Active Source to Standby .....	8-4
8.4	Configuration from Standby to Active Source .....	8-6
8.5	Moving User Activity in a Planned Switchover .....	8-8
8.5.1	Moving User Activity to the Live Standby .....	8-8
8.5.2	Moving User Activity Back to the Primary System .....	8-10
8.6	Moving User Activity in an Unplanned Failover .....	8-11
8.6.1	Moving User Activity to the Live Standby .....	8-11
8.6.2	Moving User Activity Back to the Primary System .....	8-12

## **9 Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Active-Active High Availability**

9.1	Overview of an Active-active Configuration .....	9-1
9.2	Considerations for an Active-Active Configuration .....	9-2
9.2.1	TRUNCATES .....	9-2
9.2.2	Application Design .....	9-2
9.2.3	Keys .....	9-3
9.2.4	Triggers and Cascaded Deletes .....	9-3
9.2.5	Database-Generated Values .....	9-3
9.2.6	Database Configuration .....	9-3
9.3	Preventing Data Looping .....	9-4
9.3.1	Preventing the Capture of Replicat Operations .....	9-4
9.3.1.1	Preventing the Capture of Replicat Transactions (Oracle) .....	9-4
9.3.1.2	Preventing Capture of Replicat Transactions (Teradata) .....	9-4
9.3.1.3	Preventing Capture of Replicat Transactions (Other Databases) .....	9-5
9.3.2	Identifying Replicat Transactions .....	9-5
9.3.2.1	DB2 on z/OS, LUW, IBM i, and Informix .....	9-5

9.3.2.2	MySQL and NonStop SQL/MX .....	9-5
9.3.2.3	Oracle .....	9-5
9.3.2.4	SQL Server .....	9-6
9.3.2.5	Sybase .....	9-6
9.3.2.6	Teradata .....	9-6
9.3.3	Replicating DDL in a Bi-directional Configuration .....	9-7
9.4	Managing Conflicts .....	9-7
9.5	Additional Information .....	9-8
9.6	Creating an Active-Active Configuration .....	9-8
9.6.1	Prerequisites on Both Systems .....	9-9
9.6.2	Configuration from Primary System to Secondary System .....	9-9
9.6.3	Configuration from Secondary System to Primary System .....	9-11

## 10 Configuring Conflict Detection and Resolution

10.1	Overview of the Oracle GoldenGate CDR Feature .....	10-1
10.2	Configuring Oracle GoldenGate CDR .....	10-2
10.2.1	Making the Required Column Values Available to Extract .....	10-2
10.2.2	Configuring the Oracle GoldenGate Parameter Files for Conflict Resolution .....	10-2
10.2.3	Configuring the Oracle GoldenGate Parameter Files for Error Handling .....	10-3
10.2.3.1	Tools for Mapping Extra Data to the Exceptions Table .....	10-4
10.2.3.2	Sample Exceptions Mapping with Source and Target Columns Only .....	10-5
10.2.3.3	Sample Exceptions Mapping with Additional Columns in the Exceptions Table..... 10-6	
10.2.4	Viewing CDR Statistics .....	10-7
10.2.4.1	Report File .....	10-7
10.2.4.2	GGSCI .....	10-8
10.2.4.3	Column-conversion Functions .....	10-8
10.3	CDR Example 1: All Conflict Types with USEMAX, OVERWRITE, DISCARD .....	10-8
10.3.1	Table Used in this Example .....	10-8
10.3.2	MAP Statement with Conflict Resolution Specifications .....	10-9
10.3.3	Description of MAP Statement .....	10-9
10.3.4	Error Handling .....	10-9
10.3.5	INSERTROWEXISTS with the USEMAX Resolution .....	10-9
10.3.6	UPDATEROWEXISTS with the USEMAX Resolution .....	10-10
10.3.7	UPDATEROWMISSING with OVERWRITE Resolution .....	10-11
10.3.8	DELETEROWMISSING with DISCARD Resolution .....	10-12
10.3.9	DELETEROWEXISTS with OVERWRITE Resolution .....	10-13
10.4	CDR Example 2: UPDATEROWEXISTS with USEDELTA and USEMAX .....	10-14
10.4.1	Table Used in this Example .....	10-14
10.4.2	MAP Statement .....	10-14
10.4.3	Description of MAP Statement .....	10-14
10.4.4	Error Handling .....	10-15
10.5	CDR Example 3: UPDATEROWEXISTS with USEDELTA, USEMAX, and IGNORE ..	10-16
10.5.1	Table Used in this Example .....	10-16
10.5.2	MAP Statement .....	10-17
10.5.3	Description of MAP Statement .....	10-17
10.5.4	Error Handling .....	10-17

## **11 Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security**

11.1	Overview of Oracle GoldenGate Security Options .....	11-1
11.2	Encrypting Data with the Master Key and Wallet Method .....	11-2
11.2.1	Creating the Wallet and Adding a Master Key .....	11-3
11.2.2	Specifying Encryption Parameters in the Parameter File .....	11-3
11.2.3	Renewing the Master Key .....	11-4
11.2.4	Deleting Stale Master Keys .....	11-6
11.3	Encrypting Data with the ENCKEYS Method .....	11-8
11.3.1	Encrypting the Data with the ENCKEYS Method .....	11-8
11.3.2	Decrypting the Data with the ENCKEYS Method .....	11-9
11.3.3	Examples of Data Encryption using the ENCKEYS Method .....	11-10
11.4	Managing Identities in a Credential Store .....	11-11
11.4.1	Creating and Populating the Credential Store .....	11-12
11.4.2	Specifying the Alias in a Parameter File or Command .....	11-13
11.5	Encrypting a Password in a Command or Parameter File .....	11-13
11.5.1	Encrypting the Password .....	11-13
11.5.2	Specifying the Encrypted Password in a Parameter File or Command .....	11-14
11.6	Populating an ENCKEYS File with Encryption Keys .....	11-16
11.6.1	Defining Your Own Key .....	11-16
11.6.2	Using KEYGEN to Generate a Key .....	11-16
11.6.3	Creating and Populating the ENCKEYS Lookup File .....	11-16
11.7	Configuring GGSCI Command Security .....	11-17
11.7.1	Setting Up Command Security .....	11-17
11.7.2	Securing the CMDSEC File .....	11-19
11.8	Using Target System Connection Initiation .....	11-19
11.8.1	Configuring the Passive Extract Group .....	11-20
11.8.2	Configuring the Alias Extract Group .....	11-20
11.8.3	Starting and Stopping the Passive and Alias Processes .....	11-21
11.8.4	Managing Extraction Activities .....	11-21
11.8.5	Other Considerations when using Passive-Alias Extract .....	11-21

## **12 Mapping and Manipulating Data**

12.1	Limitations of Support .....	12-1
12.2	Parameters that Control Mapping and Data Integration .....	12-1
12.3	Mapping between Dissimilar Databases .....	12-2
12.4	Deciding Where Data Mapping and Conversion Will Take Place .....	12-2
12.4.1	Mapping and Conversion on Windows and UNIX Systems .....	12-2
12.4.2	Mapping and Conversion on NonStop Systems .....	12-2
12.5	Globalization Considerations when Mapping Data .....	12-2
12.5.1	Conversion between Character Sets .....	12-3
12.5.1.1	Database Object Names .....	12-3
12.5.1.2	Column Data .....	12-3
12.5.2	Preservation of Locale .....	12-4
12.5.3	Support for Escape Sequences .....	12-4
12.6	Mapping Columns .....	12-5
12.6.1	Supporting Case and Special Characters in Column Names .....	12-6
12.6.2	Configuring Table-level Column Mapping with COLMAP .....	12-6

12.6.2.1	Specifying the Columns to be Mapped in the COLMAP Clause .....	12-6
12.6.2.2	Using USEDEFAULTS to Enable Default Column Mapping .....	12-7
12.6.2.3	Determining Whether COLMAP Requires a Data-definitions File .....	12-8
12.6.3	Configuring Global Column Mapping with COLMATCH .....	12-9
12.6.4	Understanding Default Column Mapping .....	12-11
12.6.5	Mapping Data Types from Column to Column .....	12-12
12.6.5.1	Numeric Columns .....	12-12
12.6.5.2	Character-type Columns .....	12-12
12.6.5.3	Datetime Columns .....	12-12
12.7	Selecting and Filtering Rows .....	12-13
12.7.1	Selecting Rows with a FILTER Clause .....	12-13
12.7.2	Selecting Rows with a WHERE Clause .....	12-15
12.7.3	Considerations for Selecting Rows with FILTER and WHERE .....	12-16
12.7.3.1	Ensuring Data Availability for Filters .....	12-16
12.7.3.2	Comparing Column Values .....	12-17
12.7.3.3	Testing for NULL Values .....	12-17
12.8	Retrieving Before and After Values .....	12-17
12.9	Selecting Columns .....	12-18
12.10	Selecting and Converting SQL Operations .....	12-18
12.11	Using Transaction History .....	12-19
12.12	Testing and Transforming Data .....	12-20
12.12.1	Handling Column Names and Literals in Functions .....	12-21
12.12.2	Using the Appropriate Function .....	12-21
12.12.3	Transforming Dates .....	12-21
12.12.4	Performing Arithmetic Operations .....	12-22
12.12.4.1	Omitting @COMPUTE .....	12-22
12.12.5	Manipulating Numbers and Character Strings .....	12-23
12.12.6	Handling Null, Invalid, and Missing Data .....	12-23
12.12.6.1	Using @COLSTAT .....	12-23
12.12.6.2	Using @COLTEST .....	12-24
12.12.6.3	Using @IF .....	12-24
12.12.7	Performing Tests .....	12-24
12.12.7.1	Using @CASE .....	12-24
12.12.7.2	Using @VALONEOF .....	12-24
12.12.7.3	Using @EVAL .....	12-25
12.13	Using Tokens .....	12-25
12.13.1	Defining Tokens .....	12-25
12.13.2	Using Token Data in Target Tables .....	12-26

## 13 Associating Replicated Data with Metadata

13.1	Overview .....	13-1
13.2	Configuring Oracle GoldenGate to Assume Identical Metadata .....	13-1
13.2.1	Rules for Tables to be Considered Identical .....	13-2
13.3	Configuring Oracle GoldenGate to Assume Dissimilar Metadata .....	13-2
13.3.1	Contents of the Definitions File .....	13-3
13.3.2	Which Definitions File Type to Use, and Where .....	13-3
13.3.3	Understanding the Effect of Character Sets on Definitions Files .....	13-3

13.3.3.1	Confining Data Mapping and Conversion to the Replicat Process .....	13-3
13.3.3.2	Avoiding File Corruptions Due to Operating System Character Sets .....	13-4
13.3.3.3	Changing the Character Set of Existing Definitions Files .....	13-4
13.3.3.4	Downloading from a z/OS system to another platform .....	13-4
13.3.4	Using a Definitions Template .....	13-4
13.3.5	Configuring Oracle GoldenGate to Capture Data-definitions .....	13-5
13.3.5.1	Configure DEFGEN .....	13-5
13.3.5.2	Run DEFGEN .....	13-7
13.3.5.3	Transfer the Definitions File to the Remote System .....	13-8
13.3.5.4	Specify the Definitions File .....	13-8
13.3.6	Adding Tables that Satisfy a Definitions Template .....	13-8
13.3.7	Examples of Using a Definitions File .....	13-9
13.3.7.1	Creating a Source-definitions file for Use on a Target System .....	13-9
13.3.7.2	Creating Target-definitions Files for Use on a Source System .....	13-9
13.3.7.3	Creating Multiple Source-definitions Files for Use on a Target System .....	13-10
13.4	Configuring Oracle GoldenGate to Use a Combination of Similar and Dissimilar Definitions .....	13-11

## **14 Configuring Online Change Synchronization**

14.1	Overview of Online Change Synchronization .....	14-1
14.1.1	Initial Synchronization .....	14-2
14.2	Choosing Names for Processes and Files .....	14-2
14.2.1	Naming Conventions for Processes .....	14-2
14.2.2	Choosing File Names .....	14-3
14.3	Creating a Checkpoint Table .....	14-4
14.3.1	Options for Creating the Checkpoint Table .....	14-4
14.3.2	Adjusting for Coordinated Replicat in Oracle RAC .....	14-5
14.4	Creating an Online Extract Group .....	14-6
14.5	Creating a Trail .....	14-9
14.5.1	Assigning Storage for Oracle GoldenGate Trails .....	14-9
14.5.2	Estimating Space for the Trails .....	14-9
14.5.3	Adding a Trail .....	14-10
14.6	Creating a Parameter File for Online Extraction .....	14-11
14.7	Creating an Online Replicat Group .....	14-14
14.7.1	About Classic Replicat Mode .....	14-14
14.7.2	About Coordinated Replicat Mode .....	14-15
14.7.2.1	About Barrier Transactions .....	14-16
14.7.2.2	How Barrier Transactions are Processed .....	14-16
14.7.2.3	About the Global Watermark .....	14-17
14.7.3	About Integrated Replicat Mode .....	14-17
14.7.4	Understanding Replicat Processing in Relation to Parameter Changes .....	14-17
14.7.5	Creating the Replicat Group .....	14-18
14.8	Creating a Parameter File for Online Replication .....	14-19

## **15 Handling Processing Errors**

15.1	Overview of Oracle GoldenGate Error Handling .....	15-1
15.2	Handling Extract Errors .....	15-1

15.3	Handling Replicat Errors during DML Operations .....	15-2
15.3.1	Handling Errors as Exceptions .....	15-2
15.3.1.1	Using EXCEPTIONSONLY .....	15-3
15.3.1.2	Using MAPEXCEPTION .....	15-4
15.3.1.3	About the Exceptions Table .....	15-5
15.4	Handling Replicat errors during DDL Operations .....	15-5
15.5	Handling TCP/IP Errors .....	15-5
15.6	Maintaining Updated Error Messages .....	15-6
15.7	Resolving Oracle GoldenGate Errors .....	15-6

## **16 Instantiating Oracle GoldenGate with an Initial Load**

16.1	Overview of the Initial-Load Procedure .....	16-1
16.1.1	Improving the Performance of an Initial Load .....	16-1
16.1.2	Prerequisites for Initial Load .....	16-2
16.1.2.1	Disable DDL Processing .....	16-2
16.1.2.2	Prepare the Target Tables .....	16-2
16.1.2.3	Configure the Manager Process .....	16-2
16.1.2.4	Create a Data-definitions File .....	16-2
16.1.2.5	Create Change-synchronization Groups .....	16-2
16.1.2.6	Sharing Parameters between Process Groups .....	16-3
16.2	Loading Data with a Database Utility .....	16-3
16.3	Loading data with Oracle Data Pump .....	16-5
16.4	Loading Data from File to Replicat .....	16-6
16.5	Loading Data from File to Database Utility .....	16-11
16.6	Loading Data with an Oracle GoldenGate Direct Load .....	16-17
16.7	Loading Data with a Direct Bulk Load to SQL*Loader .....	16-22
16.8	Loading Data with Teradata Load Utilities .....	16-27

## **17 Customizing Oracle GoldenGate Processing**

17.1	Executing Commands, Stored Procedures, and Queries with SQLEXEC .....	17-1
17.1.1	Performing Processing with SQLEXEC .....	17-1
17.1.2	Using SQLEXEC .....	17-1
17.1.3	Executing SQLEXEC within a TABLE or MAP Statement .....	17-2
17.1.4	Executing SQLEXEC as a Standalone Statement .....	17-3
17.1.5	Using Input and Output Parameters .....	17-3
17.1.5.1	Passing Values to Input Parameters .....	17-3
17.1.5.2	Passing Values to Output Parameters .....	17-4
17.1.5.3	SQLEXEC Examples Using Parameters .....	17-4
17.1.6	Handling SQLEXEC Errors .....	17-5
17.1.6.1	Handling Missing Column Values .....	17-6
17.1.6.2	Handling Database Errors .....	17-6
17.1.7	Additional SQLEXEC Guidelines .....	17-6
17.2	Using Oracle GoldenGate Macros to Simplify and Automate Work .....	17-7
17.2.1	Defining a Macro .....	17-8
17.2.2	Calling a Macro .....	17-9
17.2.2.1	Calling a Macro that Contains Parameters .....	17-10

17.2.2.2	Calling a Macro without Input Parameters .....	17-12
17.2.3	Calling Other Macros from a Macro .....	17-12
17.2.4	Creating Macro Libraries .....	17-13
17.2.5	Tracing Macro Expansion .....	17-14
17.3	Using User Exits to Extend Oracle GoldenGate Capabilities .....	17-14
17.3.1	When to Implement User Exits .....	17-15
17.3.2	Making Oracle GoldenGate Record Information Available to the Routine .....	17-15
17.3.3	Creating User Exits .....	17-15
17.3.4	Supporting Character-set Conversion in User Exits .....	17-17
17.3.5	Using Macros to Check Name Metadata .....	17-17
17.3.6	Describing the Character Format .....	17-18
17.3.7	Upgrading User Exits .....	17-20
17.3.8	Viewing Examples of How to Use the User Exit Functions .....	17-20
17.4	Using the Oracle GoldenGate Event Marker System to Raise Database Events .....	17-21
17.4.1	Case Studies in the Usage of the Event Marker System .....	17-22
17.4.1.1	Trigger End-of-day Processing .....	17-22
17.4.1.2	Simplify Transition from Initial Load to Change Synchronization .....	17-22
17.4.1.3	Stop Processing When Data Anomalies are Encountered .....	17-22
17.4.1.4	Use a Heartbeat Table and Logging to Analyze Lag .....	17-23
17.4.1.5	Trace a Specific Order Number .....	17-23
17.4.1.6	Execute a Batch Process .....	17-23
17.4.1.7	Propagate Only a SQL Statement without the Resultant Operations .....	17-24
17.4.1.8	Committing Other Transactions Before Starting a Long-running Transaction	17-24
17.4.1.9	Execute a Shell Script to Validate Data .....	17-24

## 18 Monitoring Oracle GoldenGate Processing

18.1	Using the Information Commands in GGSCI .....	18-1
18.2	Monitoring an Extract Recovery .....	18-2
18.3	Monitoring Lag .....	18-3
18.3.1	About Lag .....	18-3
18.3.2	<b>Controlling How Lag is Reported</b> .....	18-3
18.4	Monitoring Processing Volume .....	18-3
18.5	Using the Error Log .....	18-4
18.6	Using the Process Report .....	18-4
18.6.1	Scheduling Runtime Statistics in the Process Report .....	18-5
18.6.2	Viewing Record Counts in the Process Report .....	18-5
18.6.3	Preventing SQL Errors from Filling the Replicat Report File .....	18-5
18.7	Using the Discard File .....	18-5
18.8	Maintaining the Discard and Report Files .....	18-6
18.9	Using the System Logs .....	18-7
18.10	Reconciling Time Differences .....	18-7
18.11	Sending Event Messages to a NonStop System .....	18-7
18.11.1	Running EMSCLNT on a Windows or UNIX System .....	18-8
18.11.2	Running the Collector on NonStop .....	18-8
18.12	Getting Help with Performance Tuning .....	18-9

## **19 Tuning the Performance of Oracle GoldenGate**

19.1	Using Multiple Process Groups .....	19-1
19.1.1	Considerations for using multiple process groups .....	19-2
19.1.1.1	Maintaining data integrity .....	19-2
19.1.1.2	Number of groups .....	19-2
19.1.1.3	Memory .....	19-3
19.1.1.4	Isolating processing-intensive tables .....	19-3
19.1.2	Using parallel Replicat groups on a target system .....	19-3
19.1.2.1	To create the Extract group .....	19-4
19.1.2.2	To create the Replicat groups .....	19-4
19.1.3	Using multiple Extract groups with multiple Replicat groups .....	19-4
19.1.3.1	To create the Extract groups .....	19-5
19.1.3.2	To create the Replicat groups .....	19-5
19.2	Splitting large tables into row ranges across process groups .....	19-5
19.3	Configuring Oracle GoldenGate to use the network efficiently .....	19-6
19.3.1	Detecting a network bottleneck that is affecting Oracle GoldenGate .....	19-7
19.3.2	Working around bandwidth limitations by using data pumps .....	19-8
19.3.3	Reducing the bandwidth requirements of Oracle GoldenGate .....	19-8
19.3.4	Increasing the TCP/IP packet size .....	19-8
19.4	Eliminating disk I/O bottlenecks .....	19-9
19.4.1	Improving I/O performance within the system configuration .....	19-9
19.4.2	Improving I/O performance within the Oracle GoldenGate configuration .....	19-9
19.5	Managing Virtual Memory and Paging .....	19-10
19.6	Optimizing data filtering and conversion .....	19-10
19.7	Tuning Replicat transactions .....	19-11
19.7.1	Tuning coordination performance against barrier transactions .....	19-11
19.7.2	Applying similar SQL statements in arrays .....	19-11
19.7.3	Preventing full table scans in the absence of keys .....	19-12
19.7.4	Splitting large transactions .....	19-12
19.7.5	Adjusting open cursors .....	19-12
19.7.6	Improving update speed .....	19-13
19.7.7	Set a Replicat transaction timeout .....	19-13

## **20 Performing Administrative Operations**

20.1	Performing Application Patches .....	20-1
20.2	Initializing the Transaction Logs .....	20-2
20.3	Shutting Down the System .....	20-4
20.4	Changing Database Attributes .....	20-4
20.4.1	Changing Database Metadata .....	20-4
20.4.2	Adding Tables to the Oracle GoldenGate Configuration .....	20-6
20.4.3	Coordinating Table Attributes between Source and Target .....	20-7
20.4.4	Performing an ALTER TABLE to Add a Column on DB2 z/OS Tables .....	20-9
20.4.5	Dropping and Recreating a Source Table .....	20-9
20.4.6	Changing the Number of Oracle RAC Threads when Using Classic Capture .....	20-10
20.4.7	Changing the ORACLE_SID .....	20-11
20.4.8	Purging Archive Logs .....	20-11

20.4.9	Reorganizing a DB2 Table (z/OS Platform) .....	20-11
20.5	Adding Process Groups to an Active Configuration .....	20-11
20.5.1	Before You Start .....	20-12
20.5.2	Adding Another Extract Group to an Active Configuration .....	20-12
20.5.3	Adding Another Data Pump to an Active Configuration .....	20-14
20.5.4	Adding Another Replicat Group to an Active Configuration .....	20-17
20.6	Changing the Size of Trail Files .....	20-18
20.7	Switching Extract from Classic Mode to Integrated Mode .....	20-18
20.8	Switching Extract from Integrated Mode to Classic Mode .....	20-20
20.9	Switching Replicat from Nonintegrated Mode to Integrated Mode .....	20-21
20.10	Switching Replicat from Integrated Mode to Nonintegrated Mode .....	20-22
20.11	Switching Replicat to Coordinated Mode .....	20-23
20.11.1	Procedure overview .....	20-23
20.11.2	Performing the switch to coordinated Replicat .....	20-24
20.12	Administering a Coordinated Replicat Configuration .....	20-25
20.12.1	Performing a Planned Re-partitioning of the Workload .....	20-26
20.12.2	Recovering Replicat after an Unplanned Re-partitioning .....	20-27
20.12.2.1	Reprocessing from the low watermark with HANDLECOLLISIONS .....	20-27
20.12.2.2	Using the auto-saved parameter file .....	20-28
20.12.3	Synchronizing threads after an Unclean Stop .....	20-29
20.13	Restarting a Primary Extract after System Failure or Corruption .....	20-29
20.13.1	Details of this procedure .....	20-29
20.13.2	Performing the Recovery .....	20-30

## 21 Undoing Data Changes with the Reverse Utility

21.1	Overview of the Reverse Utility .....	21-1
21.2	Reverse Utility Restrictions .....	21-2
21.3	Configuring the Reverse Utility .....	21-2
21.4	Creating Process Groups and Trails for Reverse Processing .....	21-4
21.5	Running the Reverse Utility .....	21-6
21.6	Undoing the Changes Made by the Reverse Utility .....	21-7

## A Supported Character Sets

A.1	Supported Character Sets - Oracle .....	A-1
A.2	Supported Character Sets - Non-Oracle .....	A-8

## B Supported Locales

## C About the Oracle GoldenGate Trail

C.1	Trail Recovery Mode .....	C-1
C.2	Trail File Header Record .....	C-2
C.3	Trail Record Format .....	C-2
C.4	Example of an Oracle GoldenGate Record .....	C-2
C.5	Record Header Area .....	C-3
C.5.1	Description of Header Fields .....	C-3
C.5.2	Using Header Data .....	C-5

C.6	Record Data Area .....	C-5
C.6.1	Full Record Image Format (NonStop sources) .....	C-5
C.6.2	Compressed Record Image Format (Windows, UNIX, Linux sources) .....	C-6
C.7	Tokens Area .....	C-6
C.8	Oracle GoldenGate Operation Types .....	C-7
C.9	Oracle GoldenGate Trail Header Record .....	C-10

## **D About the Commit Sequence Number**

## **E About Checkpoints**

E.1	Extract Checkpoints .....	E-1
E.1.1	About Extract read checkpoints .....	E-3
E.1.1.1	Startup checkpoint .....	E-3
E.1.1.2	Recovery checkpoint .....	E-3
E.1.1.3	Current checkpoint .....	E-3
E.1.2	About Extract write checkpoints .....	E-4
E.2	Replicat Checkpoints .....	E-4
E.2.1	About Replicat checkpoints .....	E-5
E.2.1.1	Startup Checkpoint .....	E-5
E.2.1.2	Current Checkpoint .....	E-5
E.3	Internal checkpoint information .....	E-5
E.4	Oracle GoldenGate checkpoint tables .....	E-6



---

---

# Preface

This guide contains instructions for:

- Working with the interface components that control Oracle GoldenGate.
- Monitoring and troubleshooting Oracle GoldenGate performance.
- Perform other administrative operations.

## Audience

This guide is intended for the person or persons who are responsible for operating Oracle GoldenGate and maintaining its performance. This audience typically includes, but is not limited to, systems administrators and database administrators.s.

## Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at

<http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc>.

### Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customers have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit

<http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info> or visit

<http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs> if you are hearing impaired.

## Related Documents

The Oracle GoldenGate documentation set includes the following components:

### Windows, UNIX, and Linux Platforms

- *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for DB2 for i*
- *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for DB2 LUW*
- *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for DB2 z/OS*
- *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Informix*
- *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for MySQL*
- *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for NonStop SQL/MX*

- *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for SQL Server*
- *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle TimesTen*
- *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database*
- *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Sybase*
- *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Teradata*
- *Administering Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*
- *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*
- *Logdump Reference for Oracle GoldenGate*
- *Upgrading Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*
- *Error Messages Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*

## Conventions

The following text conventions are used in this document:

Convention	Meaning
<b>boldface</b>	Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, such as "From the File menu, select <b>Save</b> ." Boldface also is used for terms defined in text or in the glossary.
<i>italic</i>	Italic type indicates placeholder variables for which you supply particular values, such as in the parameter statement: TABLE <i>table_name</i> . Italic type also is used for book titles and emphasis.
monospace	Monospace type indicates code components such as user exits and scripts; the names of files and database objects; URL paths; and input and output text that appears on the screen. Uppercase monospace type is generally used to represent the names of Oracle GoldenGate parameters, commands, and user-configurable functions, as well as SQL commands and keywords.
MONOSPACE	
UPPERCASE	Uppercase in the regular text font indicates the name of a utility unless the name is intended to be a specific case.
{ }	Braces within syntax enclose a set of options that are separated by pipe symbols, one of which must be selected, for example: { <i>option1</i>   <i>option2</i>   <i>option3</i> }.
[ ]	Brackets within syntax indicate an optional element. For example in this syntax, the <i>SAVE</i> clause is optional: CLEANUP REPLICAT <i>group_name</i> [, <i>SAVE count</i> ]. Multiple options within an optional element are separated by a pipe symbol, for example: [ <i>option1</i>   <i>option2</i> ].

---

# Introduction to Oracle GoldenGate

This chapter describes the capabilities of Oracle GoldenGate, its basic terminology, and its processing logic and architecture.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Oracle GoldenGate Supported Processing Methods and Databases](#)
- [Overview of the Oracle GoldenGate Architecture](#)
- [Overview of Process Types](#)
- [Overview of Groups](#)
- [Overview of the Commit Sequence Number \(CSN\)](#)

## 1.1 Oracle GoldenGate Supported Processing Methods and Databases

Oracle GoldenGate enables the exchange and manipulation of data at the transaction level among multiple, heterogeneous platforms across the enterprise. It moves committed transactions with transaction integrity and minimal overhead on your existing infrastructure. Its modular architecture gives you the flexibility to extract and replicate selected data records, transactional changes, and changes to DDL (data definition language) across a variety of topologies.

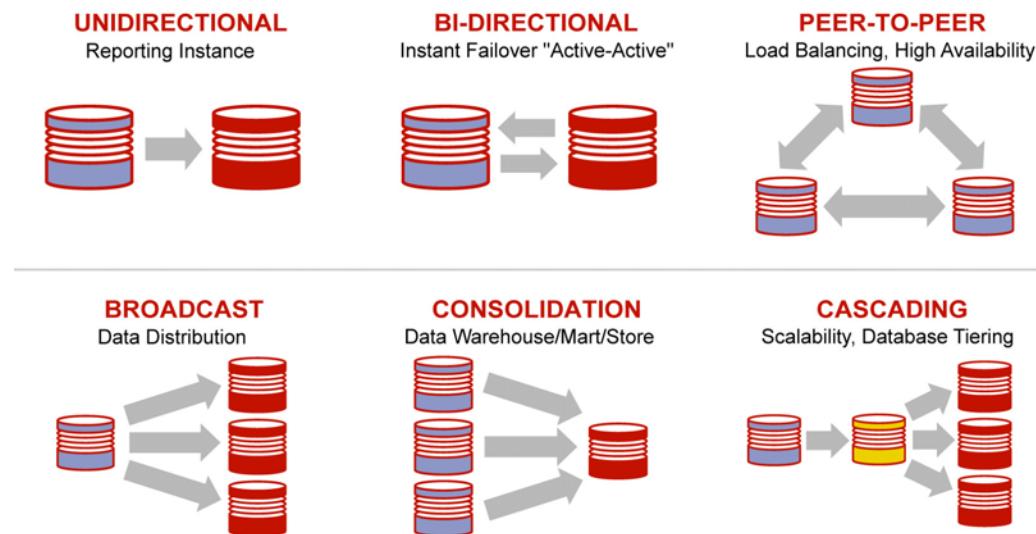
---

**Note:** Support for DDL, certain topologies, and capture or delivery configurations varies by the database type. See the Oracle GoldenGate installation and configuration documentation for your database for detailed information about supported features and configurations.

---

With this flexibility, and the filtering, transformation, and custom processing features of Oracle GoldenGate, you can support numerous business requirements:

- Business continuance and high availability.
- Initial load and database migration.
- Data integration.
- Decision support and data warehousing.

**Figure 1–1 Oracle GoldenGate Supported Topologies**

These are the Oracle GoldenGate supported topologies: A unidirectional topology replicates data in one direction to a single target database. The bi-directional and peer-to-peer topologies replicate data among two or more peer databases to support high availability and load balancing. The broadcast and cascading topologies support direct or phased data distribution from one source to many targets. The consolidation topology supports data centralization in a central database from many remote databases, such as to maintain a data warehouse.

\*\*\*\*\*

**Table 1–1 Supported Processing Methods**

Database	Log-Based Extraction (capture)	Non-Log-Based Extraction* (capture)	Replication (delivery)
DB2 for i	n/a	n/a	X
DB2 for Linux, UNIX, Windows	X	n/a	X
DB2 for z/OS	X	n/a	X
Oracle	X	n/a	X
MySQL	X	n/a	X
SQL/MX	X	n/a	X
SQL Server	X	n/a	X
Sybase	X	n/a	X
Teradata	n/a	X	X
TimesTen*	n/a	n/a	X

\* Non-Log-Based Extraction uses a capture module that communicates with the Oracle GoldenGate API to send change data to Oracle GoldenGate.

For full information about processing methodology, supported topologies and functionality, and configuration requirements, see the Oracle GoldenGate documentation for your database.

## 1.2 Overview of the Oracle GoldenGate Architecture

Oracle GoldenGate can be configured for the following purposes:

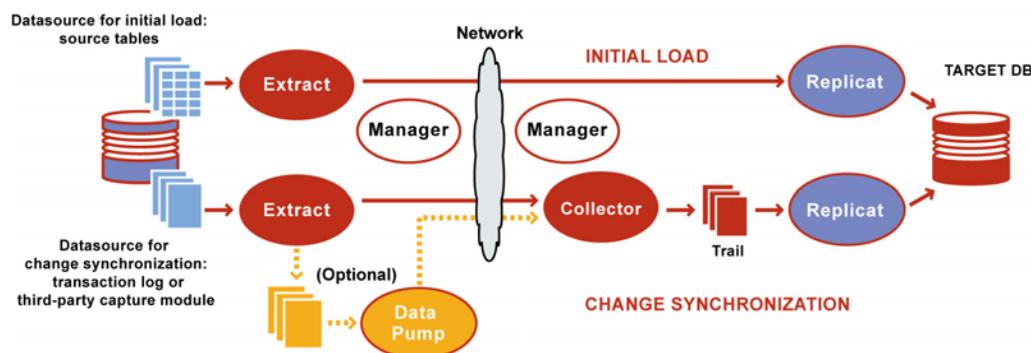
- A static extraction of data records from one database and the loading of those records to another database.
- Continuous extraction and replication of transactional Data Manipulation Language (DML) operations and data definition language (DDL) changes (for supported databases) to keep source and target data consistent.
- Extraction from a database and replication to a file outside the database.

Oracle GoldenGate is composed of the following components:

- Extract
- Data pump
- Replicat
- Trails or extract files
- Checkpoints
- Manager
- Collector

**Figure 1–2** illustrates the logical architecture of Oracle GoldenGate for initial data loads and for the synchronization of DML and DDL operations. This is the basic configuration. Variations of this model are recommended depending on business needs.

**Figure 1–2 Oracle GoldenGate Logical Architecture**



This graphic shows the Oracle GoldenGate architecture for the Oracle GoldenGate initial load method and for the replication of ongoing data changes. In the initial load, the desired rows are selected from the source database and sent to Replicat to populate the target tables, placing the two databases in a synchronized state. In change synchronization mode, the Extract process captures transactional changes and then either sends the data to the target or else persists it to an optional local trail that is read by a data pump process that sends the data to the target. On the target, the Collector process receives the data and writes it to a local trail, from which the Replicat process gets the data and applies it to the target database.

\*\*\*\*\*

## 1.2.1 Overview of Extract

The Extract process is the extraction (capture) mechanism of Oracle GoldenGate. Extract runs on a source system or on a downstream database, or both, depending on the database and the implementation requirements.

You can configure Extract in one of the following ways:

- **Initial loads:** For initial data loads, Extract extracts (captures) a current, static set of data directly from their source objects.
- **Change synchronization:** To keep source data synchronized with another set of data, Extract captures DML and DDL operations after the initial synchronization has taken place.

Extract captures from a data source that can be one of the following:

- Source tables, if the run is an initial load.
- The database recovery logs or transaction logs (such as the Oracle redo logs or SQL/MX audit trails). The actual method of capturing from the logs varies depending on the database type. For example, Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle offers an *integrated capture* mode, in which Extract interacts directly with a database logmining server that mines the Oracle transaction stream. See "About Integrated Capture" in *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database* for more information about integrated capture.
- A third-party capture module. This method provides a communication layer that passes data and metadata from an external API to the Extract API. The database vendor or a third-party vendor provides the components that extract the data operations and pass them to Extract.

When configured for change synchronization, Extract captures the DML and DDL operations that are performed on objects in the Extract configuration. Extract stores these operations until it receives commit records or rollbacks for the transactions that contain them. When a rollback is received, Extract discards the operations for that transaction. When a commit is received, Extract persists the transaction to disk in a series of files called a *trail*, where it is queued for propagation to the target system. All of the operations in each transaction are written to the trail as a sequentially organized transaction unit. This design ensures both speed and data integrity.

---

**Note:** Extract ignores operations on objects that are not in the Extract configuration, even though the same transaction may also include operations on objects that are in the Extract configuration.

---

Multiple Extract processes can operate on different objects at the same time. For example, two Extract processes can extract and transmit in parallel to two Replicat processes (with two persistence trails) to minimize target latency when the databases are large. To differentiate among different Extract processes, you assign each one a group name (see [Section 1.4, "Overview of Groups"](#)).

## 1.2.2 Overview of Data Pumps

A data pump is a secondary Extract group within the source Oracle GoldenGate configuration. If a data pump is not used, Extract must send the captured data operations to a remote trail on the target. In a typical configuration with a data pump, however, the primary Extract group writes to a trail on the source system. The data pump reads this trail and sends the data operations over the network to a remote trail

on the target. The data pump adds storage flexibility and also serves to isolate the primary Extract process from TCP/IP activity.

In general, a data pump can perform data filtering, mapping, and conversion, or it can be configured in *pass-through mode*, where data is passively transferred as-is, without manipulation. Pass-through mode increases the throughput of the data pump, because all of the functionality that looks up object definitions is bypassed.

In most business cases, you should use a data pump. Some reasons for using a data pump include the following:

- **Protection against network and target failures:** In a basic Oracle GoldenGate configuration, with only a trail on the target system, there is nowhere on the source system to store the data operations that Extract continuously extracts into memory. If the network or the target system becomes unavailable, Extract could run out of memory and abend. However, with a trail and data pump on the source system, captured data can be moved to disk, preventing the abend of the primary Extract. When connectivity is restored, the data pump captures the data from the source trail and sends it to the target system(s).
- **You are implementing several phases of data filtering or transformation.** When using complex filtering or data transformation configurations, you can configure a data pump to perform the first transformation either on the source system or on the target system, or even on an intermediary system, and then use another data pump or the Replicat group to perform the second transformation.
- **Consolidating data from many sources to a central target.** When synchronizing multiple source databases with a central target database, you can store extracted data operations on each source system and use data pumps on each of those systems to send the data to a trail on the target system. Dividing the storage load between the source and target systems reduces the need for massive amounts of space on the target system to accommodate data arriving from multiple sources.
- **Synchronizing one source with multiple targets.** When sending data to multiple target systems, you can configure data pumps on the source system for each target. If network connectivity to any of the targets fails, data can still be sent to the other targets.

### 1.2.3 Overview of Replicat

The Replicat process runs on the target system, reads the trail on that system, and then reconstructs the DML or DDL operations and applies them to the target database.

Replicat uses dynamic SQL to compile a SQL statement once, and then execute it many times with different bind variables.

You can configure Replicat in one of the following ways:

- **Initial loads:** For initial data loads, Replicat can apply a static data copy to target objects or route it to a high-speed bulk-load utility.
- **Change synchronization:** When configured for change synchronization, Replicat applies the replicated source operations to the target objects using a native database interface or ODBC, depending on the database type.

You can use multiple Replicat processes with one or more Extract processes and data pumps in parallel to increase throughput. To preserve data integrity, each set of processes handles a different set of objects. To differentiate among Replicat processes, you assign each one a group name (see [Section 1.4, "Overview of Groups"](#)).

Rather than use multiple Replicat processes, you can configure one Replicat in coordinated or integrated mode.

- Coordinated mode is supported on all databases that Oracle GoldenGate supports. In coordinated mode, Replicat is threaded. One coordinator thread spawns and coordinates one or more threads that execute replicated SQL operations in parallel. A coordinated Replicat uses one parameter file and is monitored and managed as one unit. See [Section 14.7, "Creating an Online Replicat Group"](#) for more information.
- Integrated mode is supported for Oracle versions 11.2.0.4 or later. In integrated mode, Replicat leverages the apply processing functionality that is available within the Oracle database. Within a single Replicat configuration, multiple inbound server child processes known as *apply servers* apply transactions in parallel while preserving the original transaction atomicity. See *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database* for more information about integrated mode.

You can delay Replicat so that it waits a specific amount of time before applying the replicated operations to the target database. A delay may be desirable, for example, to prevent the propagation of errant SQL, to control data arrival across different time zones, or to allow time for other planned events to occur. The length of the delay is controlled by the DEFERAPPLYINTERVAL parameter.

Various parameters control the way that Replicat converts source transactions to target transactions. These parameters include BATCHSQL, GROUPTRANSOPS, and MAXTRANSOPS. For more information about these and other Replicat parameters, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 1.2.4 Overview of Trails

To support the continuous extraction and replication of database changes, Oracle GoldenGate stores records of the captured changes temporarily on disk in a series of files called a *trail*. A trail can exist on the source system, an intermediary system, the target system, or any combination of those systems, depending on how you configure Oracle GoldenGate. On the local system it is known as an *extract trail* (or *local trail*). On a remote system it is known as a *remote trail*.

By using a trail for storage, Oracle GoldenGate supports data accuracy and fault tolerance (see [Section 1.2.6, "Overview of Checkpoints"](#)). The use of a trail also allows extraction and replication activities to occur independently of each other. With these processes separated, you have more choices for how data is processed and delivered. For example, instead of extracting and replicating changes continuously, you could extract changes continuously but store them in the trail for replication to the target later, whenever the target application needs them.

### 1.2.4.1 Processes that Write to, and Read, a Trail

The primary Extract and the data-pump Extract write to a trail. Every online Extract process must be linked to a trail. Only one primary Extract process can write to a given local trail. All local trails must have different names.

Multiple data pump Extract processes can each write to a trail of the same name, but the physical trails themselves must reside on different remote systems, such as in a data-distribution topology. For example, a data pump named 1pump and a data pump named 2pump can both reside on sys01 and write to a remote trail named aa. Data pump 1pump can write to trail aa on sys02, while data pump 2pump can write to trail aa on sys03.

Processes that read the trail are:

- Data-pump Extract: Extracts DML and DDL operations from a local trail that is linked to a previous Extract (typically the primary Extract), performs further processing if needed, and transfers the data to a trail that is read by the next Oracle GoldenGate process downstream (typically Replicat, but could be another data pump if required).
- Replicat: Reads the trail and applies replicated DML and DDL operations to the target database.

#### **1.2.4.2 Trail Creation and Maintenance**

The trail files themselves are created as needed during processing, but you specify a two-character name for the trail when you add it to the Oracle GoldenGate configuration with the ADD RMTTRAIL or ADD EXTTRAIL command. By default, trails are stored in the dirdat sub-directory of the Oracle GoldenGate directory.

Trail files are aged automatically to allow processing to continue without interruption for file maintenance. As each new file is created, it inherits the two-character trail name appended with a unique, six-digit sequence number from 000000 through 999999 (for example c:\ggs\dirdat\tr000001). When the sequence number reaches 999999, the numbering starts over at 000000, and previous trail files are overwritten. Trail files can be purged on a routine basis by using the Manager parameter PURGEOLDEXTRACTS.

You can create more than one trail to separate the data from different objects or applications. You link the objects that are specified in a TABLE or SEQUENCE parameter to a trail that is specified with an EXTTRAIL or RMTTRAIL parameter in the Extract parameter file.

To maximize throughput, and to minimize I/O load on the system, extracted data is sent into and out of a trail in large blocks. Transactional order is preserved.

See [Appendix C, "About the Oracle GoldenGate Trail"](#) for more information about the trail and the records it contains.

#### **1.2.5 Overview of Extract Files**

In some configurations, Oracle GoldenGate stores extracted data in an *extract file* instead of a trail. The extract file can be a single file, or it can be configured to roll over into multiple files in anticipation of limitations on file size that are imposed by the operating system. In this sense, it is similar to a trail, except that checkpoints are not recorded. The file or files are created automatically during the run. The same versioning features that apply to trails also apply to extract files.

#### **1.2.6 Overview of Checkpoints**

*Checkpoints* store the current read and write positions of a process to disk for recovery purposes. Checkpoints ensure that data changes that are marked for synchronization actually are captured by Extract and applied to the target by Replicat, and they prevent redundant processing. They provide fault tolerance by preventing the loss of data should the system, the network, or an Oracle GoldenGate process need to be restarted. For complex synchronization configurations, checkpoints enable multiple Extract or Replicat processes to read from the same set of trails.

Checkpoints work with inter-process acknowledgments to prevent messages from being lost in the network. Oracle GoldenGate has a proprietary guaranteed-message delivery technology.

Extract creates checkpoints for its positions in the data source and in the trail. Because Extract only captures committed transactions, it keeps track of the operations in all open transactions, in the event that any of them are committed. This requires Extract to record a checkpoint where it is currently reading in a transaction log, plus the position of the start of the oldest open transaction, which can be in the current or any preceding log.

To control the amount of transaction log that must be re-processed after an outage in an Oracle database, Extract also persists the current state and data of processing to disk at specific intervals, including the state and data (if any) of long-running transactions. If Extract stops after one of these intervals, it can recover from a position within the previous interval or at the last checkpoint, instead of having to return to the log position where the oldest open long-running transaction first appeared. See the BR parameter in *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information.

Replicat creates checkpoints for its position in the trail. Replicat stores these checkpoints in a table, known as the *checkpoint table*, in the target database and also in a checkpoint file on disk. The checkpoint table is stored with a user-specified name and location. The checkpoint file is stored in the dirchk sub-directory of the Oracle GoldenGate directory.

At the completion of each transaction, Replicat writes information about that transaction to a row in the checkpoint table, linking the transaction with a unique position in a specific trail file. Replicat also writes a checkpoint to the checkpoint file when it completes a transaction. At regular intervals, Replicat also writes its current read position to the checkpoint file. These positions are typically not at a transaction boundary, but at some point within a transaction. The interval length is controlled by the CHECKPOINTSECS parameter.

Because the checkpoint table is part of the database, and benefits from the database recovery system, it provides a more efficient recovery point for Replicat. The last checkpoint in the checkpoint file may not be the most recent transaction boundary. It could be the middle of a transaction not yet applied by Replicat or an earlier transaction that was already applied. The checkpoint table ensures that Replicat starts at the correct transaction boundary, so that each transaction is applied only once. The information in the checkpoint table can be used for recovery in some cases, but is primarily used for purposes, such as for the INFO commands in GGSCI.

Regular backups of the Oracle GoldenGate environment, including the trails, should match your database backup, recovery, and retention policies. Restoring the database (and with it the checkpoint table) to an earlier period of time causes Replicat to reposition to an earlier checkpoint that matches that time. If the required trail files for this time period are already aged off the system, they must be restored from backup. To understand how trails are maintained and aged, see "[Overview of Trails](#)" on page 1-6.

Checkpoints are not required for non-continuous types of configurations, such as a batch load or initial load. If there is a failure, these processes can be started again from the original start point.

See [Appendix E](#) for additional information about checkpoints and the checkpoint table.

## 1.2.7 Overview of Manager

Manager is the control process of Oracle GoldenGate. Manager must be running on each system in the Oracle GoldenGate configuration before Extract or Replicat can be started, and Manager must remain running while those processes are running so that

resource management functions are performed. Manager performs the following functions:

- Start Oracle GoldenGate processes
- Start dynamic processes
- Maintain port numbers for processes
- Perform trail management
- Create event, error, and threshold reports

One Manager process can control many Extract or Replicat processes. On Windows systems, Manager can run as a service. See [Chapter 3, "Configuring Manager and Network Communications"](#) for more information about the Manager process and configuring TCP/IP connections.

### 1.2.8 Overview of Collector

Collector is a process that runs in the background on the target system when continuous, online change synchronization is active. Collector does the following:

- Upon a connection request from a remote Extract to Manager, scan and bind to an available port and then send the port number to Manager for assignment to the requesting Extract process.
- Receive extracted database changes that are sent by Extract and write them to a trail file. Manager starts Collector automatically when a network connection is required, so Oracle GoldenGate users do not interact with it. Collector can receive information from only one Extract process, so there is one Collector for each Extract that you use. Collector terminates when the associated Extract process terminates.

---

**Note:** Collector can be run manually, if needed. This is known as a *static* Collector (as opposed to the regular, *dynamic* Collector). Several Extract processes can share one static Collector; however, a one-to-one ratio is optimal. A static Collector can be used to ensure that the process runs on a specific port. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information about the static Collector. See [Chapter 3, "Configuring Manager and Network Communications"](#) for more information about how Manager assigns ports.

---

By default, Extract initiates TCP/IP connections from the source system to Collector on the target, but Oracle GoldenGate can be configured so that Collector initiates connections from the target. Initiating connections from the target might be required if, for example, the target is in a trusted network zone, but the source is in a less trusted zone.

## 1.3 Overview of Process Types

Depending on the requirement, Oracle GoldenGate can be configured with the following processing types.

- An *online* Extract or Replicat process runs until stopped by a user. Online processes maintain recovery checkpoints in the trail so that processing can resume after interruptions. You use online processes to continuously extract and replicate

- DML and DDL operations (where supported) to keep source and target objects synchronized. The EXTRACT and REPLICAT parameters apply to this process type.
- A *source-is-table* (also known as in *initial-load Extract*) Extract process extracts a current set of static data directly from the source objects in preparation for an initial load to another database. This process type does not use checkpoints. The SOURCEISTABLE parameter applies to this process type.
  - A *special-run* Replicat process applies data within known begin and end points. You use a special Replicat run for initial data loads, and it also can be used with an online Extract to apply data changes from the trail in batches, such as once a day rather than continuously. This process type does not maintain checkpoints, because the run can be started over with the same begin and end points. The SPECIALRUN parameter applies to this process type.
  - A *remote task* is a special type of initial-load process in which Extract communicates directly with Replicat over TCP/IP. Neither a Collector process nor temporary disk storage in a trail or file is used. The task is defined in the Extract parameter file with the RMTTASK parameter.

## 1.4 Overview of Groups

To differentiate among multiple Extract or Replicat processes on a system, you define processing *groups*. For example, to replicate different sets of data in parallel, you would create two Replicat groups.

A processing group consists of a process (either Extract or Replicat), its parameter file, its checkpoint file, and any other files associated with the process. For Replicat, a group may also include an associated checkpoint table. You define groups by using the ADD EXTRACT and ADD REPLICAT commands in the Oracle GoldenGate command interface, GGSCI.

All files and checkpoints relating to a group share the name that is assigned to the group itself. Any time that you issue a command to control or view processing, you supply a group name or multiple group names by means of a wildcard.

## 1.5 Overview of the Commit Sequence Number (CSN)

When working with Oracle GoldenGate, you might need to refer to a *Commit Sequence Number*, or CSN. A CSN is an identifier that Oracle GoldenGate constructs to identify a transaction for the purpose of maintaining transactional consistency and data integrity. It uniquely identifies a point in time in which a transaction commits to the database.

The CSN can be required to position Extract in the transaction log, to reposition Replicat in the trail, or for other purposes. It is returned by some conversion functions and is included in reports and certain GGSCI output.

See [Appendix D, "About the Commit Sequence Number"](#) for more information about the CSN and a list of CSN values per database.

---

# Oracle GoldenGate Globalization Support

This chapter describes Oracle GoldenGate globalization support, which enables the processing of data in its native language encoding.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Preserving the Character Set](#)
- [Using Unicode and Native Characters](#)

## 2.1 Preserving the Character Set

In order to process the data in its native language encoding, Oracle GoldenGate takes into consideration the character set of the database and the operating system locale, if applicable.

### 2.1.1 Character Set of Database Structural Metadata

Oracle GoldenGate processes catalog, schema, table and column names in their native language as determined by the character set encoding of the source and target databases. This processing is extended to the parameter files and command interpreter, where they are processed according to the operating system locale. These objects appear in their localized format throughout the client interface, on the console, and in files.

### 2.1.2 Character Set of Character-type Data

The Oracle GoldenGate apply process (Replicat) supports the conversion of data from one character set to another when the data is contained in character column types. Character-set conversion support is limited to column-to-column mapping as performed with the COLMAP or USEDEFAULTS clauses of a TABLE or MAP statement. It is not supported by the column-conversion functions, by SQLEXEC, or by the TOKENS feature.

See [Chapter 12, "Mapping and Manipulating Data"](#) for more information about character sets, conversion between them, and data mapping.

### 2.1.3 Character Set of Database Connection

The Extract and Replicat processes use a session character set when connecting to the database. For Oracle databases, the session character set is set to the same as the database character set by both Extract and Replicat. For Sybase, Teradata and MySQL, the session character set is taken from the SESSIONCHARSET option of SOURCEDB and TARGETDB, or from the SESSIONCHARSET parameter set globally in the GLOBALS file. For other database types, it is obtained programmatically. In addition, Oracle GoldenGate

processes use a session character set for communication and data transfer between Oracle GoldenGate and the database, such as for SQL queries, fetches, and applying data.

#### 2.1.4 Character Set of Text Input and Output

Oracle GoldenGate supports text input and output in the default character set of the host operating system for the following:

- Console
- Command-line input and output
- FORMATASCII, FORMATSQ, FORMATXML parameters, text files such as parameter files, data-definitions files, error log, process reports, discard files, and other human-readable files that are used by Oracle GoldenGate users to configure, run, and monitor the Oracle GoldenGate environment.

In the event that the platform does not support a required character set as the default in the operating system, you can use the following parameters to specify a character set:

- CHARSET parameter to specify a character set to be used by processes to read their parameter files.
- CHARSET option of the DEFSFILE parameter to generate a data-definitions file in a specific character set.

The GGSCI command console always operates in the character set of the local operating system for both keyboard and OBEY file input and console output.

## 2.2 Using Unicode and Native Characters

Oracle GoldenGate supports the use of an escape sequence to represent characters in Unicode or in the native character encoding of the Windows, UNIX, and Linux operating systems. You can use an escape sequence if the operating system does not support the required character, or for any other purpose when needed. For more information about this support, see [Section 12.5.3, "Support for Escape Sequences."](#)

---

## Configuring Manager and Network Communications

This chapter describes how to configure the Manager process and specify ports for local and remote network communications.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Overview of the Manager Process](#)
- [Assigning Manager a Port for Local Communication](#)
- [Maintaining Ports for Remote Connections through Firewalls](#)
- [Choosing an Internet Protocol](#)
- [Recommended Manager Parameters](#)
- [Creating the Manager Parameter File](#)
- [Starting Manager](#)
- [Stopping Manager](#)

### 3.1 Overview of the Manager Process

To configure and run Oracle GoldenGate, a Manager process must be running on all Oracle GoldenGate source and target systems, and any intermediary systems if used in your configuration. Manager is the controller process that instantiates the Oracle GoldenGate processes, allocates port numbers, and performs file maintenance.

Together, the Manager process and its child processes, and their related programs and files comprise an Oracle GoldenGate instance. The Manager process performs the following functions:

- Start Oracle GoldenGate processes
- Start dynamic processes
- Start the Collector process
- Manage the port numbers for processes. (All Oracle GoldenGate ports are configurable.)
- Perform trail management
- Create event, error, and threshold reports

There is one Manager per Oracle GoldenGate installation. One Manager can support multiple Oracle GoldenGate extraction and replication processes.

## 3.2 Assigning Manager a Port for Local Communication

The Manager process in each Oracle GoldenGate installation requires a dedicated port for communication between itself and other local Oracle GoldenGate processes. To specify this port, use the `PORT` parameter in the Manager parameter file. Follow these guidelines:

- The default port number for Manager is 7809. You must specify either the default port number (recommended, if available) or a different one of your choice.
- The port must be unreserved and unrestricted.
- Each Manager instance on a system must use a different port number.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information about `PORT`.

## 3.3 Maintaining Ports for Remote Connections through Firewalls

If a firewall is being used at an Oracle GoldenGate target location, additional ports are required on the target system to receive dynamic TCP/IP communications from remote Oracle GoldenGate processes. These ports are:

- One port for *each* Collector process that is started by the local Manager to receive propagated transaction data from remote online Extract processes. When an Extract process sends data to a target, the Manager on the target starts a dedicated Collector process.
- One port for *each* Replicat process that is started by the local Manager as part of a remote task. A remote task is used for initial loads and is specified with the `RMTTASK` parameter. This port is used to receive incoming requests from the remote Extract process. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information about `RMTTASK`.
- Some extra ports in case they are needed for expansion of the local Oracle GoldenGate configuration.
- Ports for the other Oracle GoldenGate products if they interact with the local Oracle GoldenGate instance, as stated in the documentation of those products.

To specify these ports, use the `DYNAMICPORTLIST` parameter in the Manager parameter file. Follow these guidelines:

- You can specify up to 5000 ports in any combination of the following formats:  
7830, 7833, 7835  
7830-7835  
7830-7835, 7839
- The ports must be unreserved and unrestricted.
- Each Manager instance on a system must use a different port list.

Although not a required parameter, `DYNAMICPORTLIST` is strongly recommended for best performance. The Collector process is responsible for finding and binding to an available port, and having a known list of qualified ports speeds this process. In the absence of `DYNAMICPORTLIST` (or if not enough ports are specified with it), Collector tries to use port 7840 for remote requests. If 7840 is not available, Collector increments by one until it finds an available port. This can delay the acceptance of the remote request. If Collector runs out of ports in the `DYNAMICPORTLIST` list, the following occurs:

- Manager reports an error in its process report and in the Oracle GoldenGate ggserr log.
- Collector retries based on the rules in the Oracle GoldenGate tcperrs file. For more information about the tcperrs file, see [Section 15.5, "Handling TCP/IP Errors"](#).

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information about DYNAMICPORTLIST.

## 3.4 Choosing an Internet Protocol

By default, Oracle GoldenGate selects a socket in the following order of priority to ensure the best chance of connection success:

- IPv6 dual-stack
- IPv4 if IPv6 dual-stack is not available
- IPv6

If your network has IPv6 network devices that do not support dual-stack mode, you can use the USEIPV6 parameter to force Oracle GoldenGate to use IPv6 for all connections. This is a GLOBALS parameter that applies to all processes of an Oracle GoldenGate instance. When USEIPV6 is used, the entire network must be IPv6 compatible to avoid connection failures. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information.

## 3.5 Recommended Manager Parameters

The following parameters are optional, but recommended, for the Manager process.

- AUTOSTART: Starts Extract and Replicat processes when Manager starts. This parameter is required in a cluster configuration, and is useful when Oracle GoldenGate activities must begin immediately at system startup. (Requires Manager to be part of the startup routine.) You can use multiple AUTOSTART statements in the same parameter file. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information.
- AUTORESTART: Starts Extract and Replicat processes again after abnormal termination. This parameter is required in a cluster configuration, but is also useful in any configuration to ensure continued processing. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information.
- PURGEOLDEXTRACTS: Purges trail files when Oracle GoldenGate is finished processing them. Without PURGEOLDEXTRACTS, no purging is performed and trail files can consume significant disk space. For best results, use PURGEOLDEXTRACTS as a Manager parameter, not as an Extract or Replicat parameter. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information.
- STARTUPVALIDATIONDELAY | STARTUPVALIDATIONDELAYCSECS: Sets a delay time after which Manager validates the run status of a process. Startup validation makes Oracle GoldenGate users aware of processes that fail before they can generate an error message or process report. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information.

## 3.6 Creating the Manager Parameter File

To configure Manager with required port information and optional parameters, create a parameter file by following these steps. See ["Getting Started with the Oracle GoldenGate Process Interfaces"](#) on page 4-1 for more information about Oracle GoldenGate parameter files.

---

**Note:** If Oracle GoldenGate resides in a cluster, configure the Manager process within the cluster application as directed by the vendor's documentation, so that Oracle GoldenGate fails over properly with other applications. For more information about installing Oracle GoldenGate in a cluster, see the Oracle GoldenGate documentation for your database.

---

1. From the Oracle GoldenGate directory, run the GGSCI program to open the Oracle GoldenGate Software Command Interface (GGSCI).

2. In GGSCI, issue the following command to edit the Manager parameter file.

```
EDIT PARAMS MGR
```

3. Add the parameters that you want to use for the Manager process, each on one line.

4. Save, then close the file.

The following is a sample Manager parameter file on a UNIX system using required and recommended parameters.

**Example 3-1 Sample manager file on a UNIX system**

```
PORT 7809
DYNAMICPORTLIST 7810-7820, 7830
AUTOSTART ER t*
AUTORESTART ER t*, RETRIES 4, WAITMINUTES 4
STARTUPVALIDATIONDELAY 5
USERIDALIAS mgr1
PURGEOLDEXTRACTS /ogg/dirdat/tt*, USECHECKPOINTS, MINKEEPHOURS 2
```

## 3.7 Starting Manager

Manager must be running before you start other Oracle GoldenGate processes. You can start Manager from:

- The command line of the operating system. See ["Starting Manager from the Command Shell of the Operating System"](#) for instructions.
- The GGSCI command interface. See ["Starting Manager from GGSCI"](#) for instructions.
- The Services applet on a Windows system if Manager is installed as a service. See the Windows documentation or your system administrator.
- The Cluster Administrator tool if the system is part of a Windows cluster. This is the recommended way to bring the Manager resource online. See the cluster documentation or your system administrator.
- The cluster software of a UNIX or Linux cluster. Refer to the documentation provided by the cluster vendor to determine whether to start Manager from the cluster or by using GGSCI or the command line of the operating system.

### 3.7.1 Starting Manager from the Command Shell of the Operating System

To start Manager from the command shell of the operating system, issue the following command.

```
mgr paramfile parameter_file [reportfile report_file]
```

The *reportfile* argument is optional and can be used to store the Manager process report in a location other than the default of the *dirrpt* directory in the Oracle GoldenGate installation location.

### 3.7.2 Starting Manager from GGSCI

To start Manager from GGSCI, run GGSCI from the Oracle GoldenGate directory, and then issue the following command.

```
START MANAGER
```

---

**Note:** When starting Manager from the command line or GGSCI on Windows Server 2008 with User Account Control enabled, you will receive a UAC prompt requesting you to allow or deny the program to run.

---

## 3.8 Stopping Manager

Manager runs indefinitely or until stopped by a user. In general, Manager should remain running when there are synchronization activities being performed. Manager performs important monitoring and maintenance functions, and processes cannot be started unless Manager is running.

### 3.8.1 Stopping Manager on UNIX and Linux

On UNIX and Linux (including USS on z/OS), Manager must be stopped by using the STOP MANAGER command in GGSCI.

```
STOP MANAGER [!]
```

Where:

! stops Manager without user confirmation.

In a UNIX or Linux cluster, refer to the documentation provided by the cluster vendor to determine whether Manager should be stopped from the cluster or by using GGSCI.

### 3.8.2 Stopping Manager on Windows

On Windows, you can stop Manager from the Services applet (if Manager is installed as a service). See the Windows documentation or your system administrator.

If Manager is not installed as a service, you can stop it with the STOP MANAGER command in GGSCI.

```
STOP MANAGER [!]
```

In a Windows cluster, you must take the Manager resource offline from the Cluster Administrator. If you attempt to stop Manager from the GGSCI interface, the cluster monitor interprets it as a resource failure and attempts to bring the resource online again. Multiple start requests through GGSCI eventually will exceed the start

threshold of the Manager cluster resource, and the cluster monitor will mark the Manager resource as failed.

---

# Getting Started with the Oracle GoldenGate Process Interfaces

This chapter describes how Oracle GoldenGate users provide instructions to the processes through the GGSCI (Oracle GoldenGate Software Command Interface), batch and shell scripts, and parameter files.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Using the GGSCI Command-line Interface](#)
- [Controlling Oracle GoldenGate Processes](#)
- [Automating Commands](#)
- [Using Oracle GoldenGate Parameter Files](#)
- [Specifying Object Names in Oracle GoldenGate Input](#)

## 4.1 Using the GGSCI Command-line Interface

GGSCI is the Oracle GoldenGate command-line interface. You can use GGSCI to issue the complete range of commands that configure, control, and monitor Oracle GoldenGate.

To start GGSCI, change directories to the Oracle GoldenGate installation directory, and then run the `ggsci` executable file.

For more information about Oracle GoldenGate commands, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

### 4.1.1 Using Wildcards in Command Arguments

You can use wildcards with certain Oracle GoldenGate commands to control multiple Extract and Replicat groups as a unit. The wildcard symbol that is supported by Oracle GoldenGate is the asterisk (\*). An asterisk represents any number of characters. For example, to start all Extract groups whose names contain the letter X, issue the following command.

```
START EXTRACT *X*
```

### 4.1.2 Globalization Support for the Command Interface

All command input and related console output are rendered in the default character set of the local operating system. To specify characters that are not compatible with the character set of the local operating system, use Unicode notation. For example, the

following Unicode notation is equivalent to the name of a table that has the Euro symbol as its name:

```
ADD TRANSLATE \u20AC1
```

For more information, see [Section 12.5.3](#) for more information about using Unicode notation.

---

**Note:** Oracle GoldenGate group names are case-insensitive.

---

### 4.1.3 Using Command History

The execution of multiple commands is made easier with the following tools:

- Use the HISTORY command to display a list of previously executed commands.
- Use the ! command to execute a previous command again without editing it.
- Use the FC command to edit a previous command and then execute it again.

### 4.1.4 Storing and Calling Frequently Used Command Sequences

You can automate a frequently-used series of commands by using an OBEY file and the OBEY command. The OBEY file takes the character set of the local operating system. To specify a character that is not compatible with that character set, use Unicode notation. See [Section 12.5.3](#) for more information about using Unicode notation.

#### To use OBEY

1. Create and save a text file that contains the commands, one command per line. This is your OBEY file. The name can be anything supported by the operating system. You can nest other OBEY files within an OBEY file.
2. Run GGSCI.
3. (Optional) If using an OBEY file that contains nested OBEY files, issue the following command. This command enables the use of nested OBEY files for the current session of GGSCI and is required whenever using nested OBEY files. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information.

```
ALLOWNESTED
```

4. In GGSCI, call the OBEY file by using the OBEY command.

```
OBEY file_name
```

Where:

*file\_name* is the relative or fully qualified name of the OBEY file.

The following example illustrates an OBEY command file for use with the OBEY command. It creates and starts Extract and Replicat groups and retrieves processing information.

#### **Example 4-1 OBEY command file**

```
ADD EXTRACT myext, TRANLOG, BEGIN now
START EXTRACT myext

ADD REPLICAT myrep, EXTTRAIL /ggs/dirdat/aa
START REPLICAT myrep
```

```
INFO EXTRACT myext, DETAIL
INFO REPLICAT myrep, DETAIL
```

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information about the OBEY command.

## 4.2 Controlling Oracle GoldenGate Processes

The standard way to control Oracle GoldenGate processes is through the GGSCI interface. Typically, the first time that Oracle GoldenGate processes are started in a production setting is during the initial synchronization process (also called *instantiation* process). However, you will need to stop and start the processes at various points as needed to perform maintenance, upgrades, troubleshooting, or other tasks.

These instructions show basic syntax. Additional syntax may be available and is documented in *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

### 4.2.1 Controlling Manager

Manager should not be stopped unless you want to stop replication processing.

#### To stop Manager

1. From the Oracle GoldenGate directory, run GGSCI.
2. In GGSCI, issue the following command.

```
{START | STOP [!] } MANAGER
```

Where:

The ! bypasses the prompt that confirms the intent to shut down Manager.

---

**Note:** When starting Manager from the command line or GGSCI on Windows Server 2008 with User Account Control enabled, you will receive a UAC prompt requesting you to allow or deny the program to run.

---

### 4.2.2 Controlling Extract and Replicat

This section contains basic directions for controlling Extract and Replicat processes. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for additional command options.

#### To start Extract or Replicat

```
START {EXTRACT | REPLICAT} group_name
```

Where:

*group\_name* is the name of the Extract or Replicat group or a wildcard set of groups (for example, \* or fin\*).

#### To stop Extract or Replicat gracefully

```
STOP {EXTRACT | REPLICAT} group_name
```

Where:

*group\_name* is the name of the Extract or Replicat group or a wildcard set of groups (for example, \* or fin\*).

**To stop Replicat forcefully**

```
STOP REPLICAT group_name !
```

The current transaction is aborted and the process stops immediately. You cannot stop Extract forcefully.

**To kill a process that STOP cannot stop**

```
KILL {EXTRACT | REPLICAT} group_name
```

Killing a process does not shut it down gracefully, and checkpoint information can be lost.

**To control multiple processes at once**

```
command ER wildcard specification
```

Where:

- *command* is: KILL, START, or STOP
- *wildcard specification* is a wildcard specification for the names of the process groups that you want to affect with the command. The command affects every Extract and Replicat group that satisfies the wildcard. Oracle GoldenGate supports up to 100,000 wildcard entries.

## 4.2.3 Deleting Extract and Replicat

This section contains basic directions for deleting Extract and Replicat processes. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for additional command options.

**To delete an Extract group**

1. Run GGSCI.
2. Issue the DBLOGIN command as the Extract database user (or a user with the same privileges). You can use either of the following commands, depending on whether a local credential store exists.

```
DBLOGIN [SOURCEDB dsn] {USERID user, PASSWORD password [encryption_options] |  
USERIDALIAS alias [DOMAIN domain]}
```

3. Stop the Extract process.

```
STOP EXTRACT group_name
```

4. Issue the following command.

```
DELETE EXTRACT group_name
```

5. (Oracle) Unregister the Extract group from the database.

```
UNREGISTER EXTRACT group_name  
{DATABASE [CONTAINER (container[, ...])] | LOGRETENTION}
```

**To delete a Replicat group**

1. Stop the Replicat process.

```
STOP REPLICAT group_name
```

2. Issue one of the following commands from GGSCI to log into the database.

```
DBLOGIN [SOURCEDB dsn] {USERID user, PASSWORD password [encryption_options] |  
USERIDALIAS alias [DOMAIN domain]}
```

Where:

- `SOURCEDB dsn` supplies the data source name, if required as part of the connection information.
- `USERID user, PASSWORD password` specifies an explicit database login credential.
- `USERIDALIAS alias [DOMAIN domain]` specifies an alias and optional domain of a credential that is stored in a local credential store.
- `encryption_options` is one of the options that encrypt the password.

3. Issue the following command to delete the group.

```
DELETE REPLICAT group_name
```

Deleting a Replicat group preserves the checkpoints in the checkpoint table (if being used). Deleting a process group also preserves the parameter file. You can create the same group again, using the same parameter file, or you can delete the parameter file to remove the group's configuration permanently.

## 4.3 Automating Commands

Oracle GoldenGate supports the issuing of commands through scripts or jobs. This section describes these options for UNIX- or Linux-based platforms and the IBMi platform.

On a UNIX or Linux system, or within a runtime environment that supports UNIX or Linux applications, you can issue Oracle GoldenGate commands from a script such as a startup script, shutdown script, or failover script by running GGSCI and calling an input file. The script file must be encoded in the operating system character set. Unicode notation can be used for characters that are not supported by the operating system character set. Before creating a script, see [Section 4.1.2, "Globalization Support for the Command Interface"](#).

### To input a script

Use the following syntax from the command line of the operating system.

```
ggsci < input_file
```

Where:

- The angle bracket (<) character pipes the file into the GGSCI program.
- `input_file` is a text file, known as an OBEY file, containing the commands that you want to issue, in the order they are to be issued.

For detailed documentation of Oracle GoldenGate commands, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

---

**Note:** To stop the Manager process from a batch file, make certain to add the ! argument to the end of the STOP MANAGER command. Otherwise, GGSCI issues a prompt that requires a response and causes the process to enter into a loop. See [Section 3.8](#) for more information about stopping Manager.

---

### 4.3.1 Issuing Commands Through the IBM i CLI

Oracle GoldenGate for IBM DB2 for i includes a set of native IBM i commands that enables the operation of the most common Oracle GoldenGate programs from the IBM i command-line interface (CLI). Because these commands are native, they do not need to be run from a PASE environment. With this support, it is possible to issue commands interactively or by using the typical job submission tools such as SBMJOB to operate Oracle GoldenGate non-interactively.

The commands are as follows and correspond to the Oracle GoldenGate programs of the same name. They reside in the Oracle GoldenGate installation library.

DEFGEN

EXTRACT

GGSCI

KEYGEN

LOGDUMP

MGR

REPLICAT

For more information about these commands, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 4.4 Using Oracle GoldenGate Parameter Files

Most Oracle GoldenGate functionality is controlled by means of parameters specified in parameter files. A parameter file is a plain text file that is read by an associated Oracle GoldenGate process. Oracle GoldenGate uses two types of parameter files: a GLOBALS file and runtime parameter files.

### 4.4.1 Globalization Support for Parameter Files

Oracle GoldenGate creates parameter files in the default character set of the local operating system. In the event that the local platform does not support a required character set as the default in the operating system, you can use the CHARSET parameter either globally or per-process to specify a character set for parameter files.

To avoid issues caused by character-set incompatibilities, create or edit a parameter file on the server where the associated process will be running. Avoid creating it on one system (such as your Windows laptop) and then transferring the file to the UNIX server where Oracle GoldenGate is installed and where the operating system character set is different. Oracle GoldenGate provides some tools to help with character set incompatibilities if you must create the parameter file on a different system:

- You can use the CHARSET parameter to specify a compatible character set for the parameter file. This parameter must be placed on the first line of the parameter file and allows you to write the file in the specified character set. After the file is transferred to the other system, do not edit the file on that system.
- You can use Unicode notation to substitute for characters that are not compatible with the character set of the operating system where the file will be used. See [Section 12.5.3](#) for more information about Unicode notation.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information about the CHARSET parameter.

## 4.4.2 Working with the GLOBALS File

The GLOBALS file stores parameters that relate to the Oracle GoldenGate instance as a whole. This is in contrast to runtime parameters, which are coupled with a specific process such as Extract. The parameters in the GLOBALS file apply to all processes in the Oracle GoldenGate instance, but can be overridden by specific process parameters. A GLOBALS parameter file may or may not be required for your Oracle GoldenGate environment.

When used, a GLOBALS file must exist before starting any Oracle GoldenGate processes, including GGSCI. The GGSCI program reads the GLOBALS file and passes the parameters to processes that need them.

### To create a GLOBALS file

- From the Oracle GoldenGate installation location, run GGSCI and enter the following command, or open a file in a text editor.

```
EDIT PARAMS ./GLOBALS
```

---

**Note:** The . / portion of this command must be used, because the GLOBALS file must reside at the root of the Oracle GoldenGate installation file.

---

- In the file, enter the GLOBALS parameters, one per line.
- Save the file. If you used a text editor, save the file as GLOBALS (uppercase, without a file extension) at the root of the Oracle GoldenGate installation directory. If you created the file correctly in GGSCI, the file is saved that way automatically. Do not move this file.
- Exit GGSCI. You must start from a new GGSCI session before issuing commands or starting processes that reference the GLOBALS file.

## 4.4.3 Working with Runtime Parameters

Runtime parameters give you control over the various aspects of Oracle GoldenGate synchronization, such as:

- Data selection, mapping, transformation, and replication
- DDL and sequence selection, mapping, and replication (where supported)
- Error resolution
- Logging
- Status and error reporting
- System resource usage
- Startup and runtime behavior

There can be only one active parameter file for the Manager process or an Extract or Replicat group; however, you can use parameters in other files by using the OBEY parameter. See [Section 4.4.8](#) for more information about simplifying the use of parameter files.

There are two types of parameters: global (not to be confused with GLOBALS parameters) and object-specific:

- Global parameters apply to all database objects that are specified in a parameter file. Some global parameters affect process behavior, while others affect such things as memory utilization and so forth. USERIDALIAS in [Example 4-2](#) and [Example 4-3](#) is an example of a global parameter. In most cases, a global parameter can appear anywhere in the file before the parameters that specify database objects, such as the TABLE and MAP statements in [Example 4-2](#) and [Example 4-3](#). A global parameter should be listed only once in the file. When listed more than once, only the *last* instance is active, and all other instances are ignored.
- Object-specific parameters enable you to apply different processing rules for different sets of database objects. GETINSERTS and IGNOREINSERTS in [Example 4-3](#) are examples of object-specific parameters. Each precedes a MAP statement that specifies the objects to be affected. Object-specific parameters take effect in the order that each one is listed in the file.

[Example 4-2](#) and [Example 4-3](#) are examples of basic parameter files for Extract and Replicat. Comments are preceded by double hyphens.

#### ***Example 4-2 Sample Extract Parameter File***

```
-- Extract group name
EXTRACT capt
-- Extract database user login, with alias to credentials in the credential store.
USERIDALIAS ogg1
-- Remote host to where captured data is sent in encrypted format:
RMTHOSTOPTIONS sysb, MGRPORT 7809, ENCRYPT AES192 KEYNAME mykey
-- Encryption specification for trail data
ENCRYPTHTRAIL AES192
-- Remote trail on the remote host
RMTTRAIL /ggs/dirdat/aa
-- TABLE statements that identify data to capture.
TABLE FIN.*;
TABLE SALES.*;
```

The preceding example reflects a case-insensitive Oracle database, where the object names are specified in the TABLE statements in capitals. For a case-insensitive Oracle database, it makes no difference how the names are entered in the parameter file (upper, lower, mixed case). For other databases, the case of the object names may matter. See [Section 4.5](#) for more information about specifying object names.

#### ***Example 4-3 Sample Replicat Parameter File***

```
-- Replicat group name
REPLICAT deliv
-- Replicat database user login, with alias to credentials in the credential store
USERIDALIAS ogg2
-- File containing definitions of source objects
SOURCEDEFS /ggs/dirdef/defs
-- Error handling rules
REPERROR DEFAULT, ABEND
-- Ignore INSERT operations
IGNOREINSERTS
-- MAP statement to map source objects to target objects and
-- specify column mapping
MAP "fin"."accTAB", TARGET "fin"."accTAB",
COLMAP ("Account" = "Acct",
"Balance" = "Bal",
"Branch" = "Branch");
-- Get INSERT operations
```

```

GETINSERTS
-- MAP statement to map source objects to target objects and
-- filter to apply only the 'NY' branch data.
MAP "fin"."teller", TARGET "fin"."tellTAB",
WHERE ("Branch" = 'NY');

```

Note the use of single and double quote marks in the Replicat example in [Example 4-3](#). For databases that require quote marks to enforce case-sensitive object names, such as Oracle, you must enclose case-sensitive object names within double quotes in the parameter file as well. For other case-sensitive databases, specify the names as they are stored in the database. For more information about specifying names and literals, see [Section 4.5](#).

#### 4.4.4 Creating a Parameter File

Oracle recommends using GGSCI when writing the parameter file in the character set of the operating system, but if using the `CHARSET` parameter and writing the file in a different character set, use a text editor instead of GGSCI. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information about the `CHARSET` parameter.

[Section 4.4.4.1, "Creating a Parameter File in GGSCI"](#)

[Section 4.4.4.2, "Creating a Parameter File with a Text Editor"](#)

##### 4.4.4.1 Creating a Parameter File in GGSCI

To create a parameter file, use the `EDIT PARAMS` command within the GGSCI user interface or use a text editor directly. When you use GGSCI, you are using a standard text editor, but your parameter file is saved automatically with the correct file name and in the correct directory.

When you create a parameter file with `EDIT PARAMS` in GGSCI, it is saved to the `dirprm` sub-directory of the Oracle GoldenGate directory. You can create a parameter file in a directory other than `dirprm`, but you also must specify the full path name with the `PARAMS` option of the `ADD EXTRACT` or `ADD REPLICAT` command when you create your process groups. Once paired with an Extract or Replicat group, a parameter file must remain in its original location for Oracle GoldenGate to operate properly once processing has started.

The `EDIT PARAMS` command launches the following text editors within the GGSCI interface:

- Notepad on Microsoft Windows systems
- The vi editor on UNIX and Linux systems. DB2 for i only supports vi when connected with SSH or xterm. For more information, see [Section 4.4.4.2](#).

---

**Note:** You can change the default editor through the GGSCI interface by using the `SET EDITOR` command. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

---

1. From the directory where Oracle GoldenGate is installed, run GGSCI.
2. In GGSCI, issue the following command to open the default text editor.

`EDIT PARAMS group_name`

Where:

*group\_name* is either `mgr` (for the Manager process) or the name of the Extract or Replicat group for which the file is being created. The name of an Extract or Replicat parameter file must match that of the process group.

The following creates or edits the parameter file for an Extract group named `extora`.

```
EDIT PARAMS extora
```

The following creates or edits the parameter file for the Manager process.

```
EDIT PARAMS MGR
```

3. Using the editing functions of the text editor, enter as many comment lines as you want to describe this file, making certain that each comment line is preceded with two hyphens (--) .
4. On non-commented lines, enter the Oracle GoldenGate parameters, starting a new line for each parameter statement.

Oracle GoldenGate parameters have the following syntax:

```
PARAMETER_NAME argument [, option] [&]
```

Where:

- `PARAMETER_NAME` is the name of the parameter.
- `argument` is a required argument for the parameter. Some parameters take arguments, but others do not. Commas between arguments are optional.

```
EXTRACT myext
USERIDALIAS ogg1
RMTHOSTOPTIONS sysb, MGRPORT 8040, ENCRYPT AES192 KEYNAME mykey
ENCRYPTIONTRAIL AES 192
RMTTRAIL /home/ggs/dirdat/c1, PURGE
CUSEREXIT userexit.dll MyUserExit, INCLUDEUPDATEBEFORES, PASSTHRU, &
    PARAMS "init.properties"
TABLE myschema.mytable;
```

- `[, option]` is an optional argument.
- `[&]` is required at the end of each line in a multi-line parameter statement, as in the `CUSEREXIT` parameter statement in the previous example. The exceptions are the following, which can accept, but do not require, the ampersand because they terminate with a semicolon:
  - `MAP`
  - `TABLE`
  - `SEQUENCE`
  - `FILE`
  - `QUERY`

---

**Note:** The `RMTHOST` and `RMTHOSTOPTIONS` parameters can be specified together; the `RMTHOST` parameter is *not* required for `RMTHOSTOPTIONS` if the dynamic IP assignment is properly configured. When `RMTHOSTOPTIONS` is used, the `MGRPORT` option is ignored.

---

5. Save and close the file.

#### 4.4.4.2 Creating a Parameter File with a Text Editor

You can create a parameter file outside GGSCI by using a text editor, but make certain to:

- Save the parameter file with the name of the Extract or Replicat group that owns it, or save it with the name `mgr` if the Manager process owns it. Use the `.prm` file extension. For example: `extfin.prm` and `mgr.prm`.
- Save the parameter file in the `dirprm` directory of the Oracle GoldenGate installation directory.
- For DB2 for i systems, you can edit parameter files from a 5250 terminal using SEU or EDTF. If you use SEU, you must copy the file using the `CPYTOSTMF` command, specify an encoding of CCSID 1208, and line endings of \*LF. If editing with EDTF from F15 (services) ensure that you change the CCSID of the file to 1208 and the EOL option to \*LF.

Alternatively, you can use the `Rfile` command from the IBM Portable Application Solutions Environment for i.

#### 4.4.5 Verifying a Parameter File

You can check the syntax of parameters in an Extract or Replicat parameter file for accuracy. This process can be used with Extract or Replicat.

##### To verify parameter syntax

1. Include the `CHECKPARAMS` parameter in the parameter file.
2. Start the associated process by issuing the `START EXTRACT` or `START REPLICAT` command in GGSCI.

```
START {EXTRACT | REPLICAT} group_name
```

The process audits the syntax, writes the results to the report file or the screen, and then stops.

3. Do either of the following:
  - If the syntax is correct, remove the `CHECKPARAMS` parameter before starting the process to process data.
  - If the syntax is wrong, correct it based on the findings in the report. You can run another test to verify the changes, if desired. Remove `CHECKPARAMS` before starting the process to process data.

For more information about the report file, see [Chapter 18](#).

For more information about `CHECKPARAMS`, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

#### 4.4.6 Viewing a Parameter File

You can view a parameter file directly from the command shell of the operating system, or you can view it from the GGSCI user interface. To view the file from GGSCI, use the `VIEW PARAMS` command.

```
VIEW PARAMS group_name
```

Where:

*group\_name* is either `mgr` (for Manager) or the name of the Extract or Replicat group that is associated with the parameter file.

---

**Caution:** Do not use `VIEW PARAMS` to view an existing parameter file that is in a character set other than that of the local operating system (such as one where the `CHARSET` option was used to specify a different character set). The contents may become corrupted. View the parameter file from outside GGSCI.

---

If the parameter file was created in a location other than the `dirprm` sub-directory of the Oracle GoldenGate directory, specify the full path name as shown in the following example.

```
VIEW PARAMS c:\lpparms\replp.prm
```

#### 4.4.7 Changing a Parameter File

An Oracle GoldenGate process must be stopped before changing its parameter file, and then started again after saving the parameter file. Changing parameter settings while a process is running can have unexpected results, especially if you are adding tables or changing mapping or filtering rules.

---

**Caution:** Do not use the `EDIT PARAMS` command to view or edit an existing parameter file that is in a character set other than that of the local operating system (such as one where the `CHARSET` option was used to specify a different character set). The contents may become corrupted. View the parameter file from outside GGSCI.

---

##### To change parameters:

1. Stop the process by issuing the following command in GGSCI. To stop Manager in a Windows cluster, use the Cluster Administrator.

```
STOP {EXTRACT | REPLICAT | MANAGER} group_name
```

2. Open the parameter file by using a text editor or the `EDIT PARAMS` command in GGSCI.

```
EDIT PARAMS mgr
```

3. Make the edits, and then save the file.

4. Start the process by issuing the following command in GGSCI. Use the Cluster Administrator if starting Manager in a Windows cluster.

```
START {EXTRACT | REPLICAT | MANAGER} group_name
```

#### 4.4.8 Simplifying the Creation of Parameter Files

You can reduce the number of times that a parameter must be specified by using the following time-saving tools.

- [Using Wildcards](#)
- [Using OBEY](#)
- [Using Macros](#)
- [Using Parameter Substitution](#)

#### 4.4.8.1 Using Wildcards

For parameters that accept object names, you can use asterisk (\*) and question mark (?) wildcards. The use of wildcards reduces the work of specifying numerous object names or all objects within a given schema. For more information about using wildcards, see [Section 4.5.6](#).

#### 4.4.8.2 Using OBEY

You can create a library of text files that contain frequently used parameter settings, and then you can call any of those files from the active parameter file by means of the OBEY parameter. The syntax for OBEY is:

OBEY *file\_name*

Where:

*file\_name* is the relative or full path name of the file.

Upon encountering an OBEY parameter in the active parameter file, Oracle GoldenGate processes the parameters from the referenced file and then returns to the active file to process any remaining parameters. OBEY is not supported for the GLOBALS parameter file.

If using the CHARSET parameter in a parameter file that includes an OBEY parameter, the referenced parameter file does not inherit the CHARSET character set. The CHARSET character set is used to read wildcarded object names in the referenced file, but you must use an escape sequence (\uX) for all other multibyte specifications in the referenced file.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information about OBEY.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information about CHARSET.

#### 4.4.8.3 Using Macros

You can use macros to automate multiple uses of a parameter statement. See [Section 17.2, "Using Oracle GoldenGate Macros to Simplify and Automate Work."](#)

#### 4.4.8.4 Using Parameter Substitution

You can use parameter substitution to assign values to Oracle GoldenGate parameters automatically at run time, instead of assigning static values when you create the parameter file. That way, if values change from run to run, you can avoid having to edit the parameter file or maintain multiple files with different settings. You can simply export the required value at runtime. Parameter substitution can be used for any Oracle GoldenGate process.

##### To use parameter substitution

1. For each parameter for which substitution is to occur, declare a runtime parameter instead of a value, and precede the runtime parameter name with a question mark (?) as shown in the following example.

```
SOURCEISFILE
EXTFILE ?EXTFILE
MAP ?TABNAME, TARGET ACCOUNT_TARG;
```

2. Before starting the Oracle GoldenGate process, use the shell of the operating system to pass the runtime values by means of an environment variable, as shown

in [Example 4–4](#) and [Example 4–5](#).

**Example 4–4 Parameter substitution on Windows**

```
C:\GGS> set EXTFILE=C:\ggs\extfile
C:\GGS> set TABNAME=PROD.ACCTS
C:\GGS> replicat paramfile c:\ggs\dirprm\parmfl
```

**Example 4–5 Parameter substitution on UNIX (Korn shell)**

```
$ EXTFILE=/ggs/extfile
$ export EXTFILE
$ TABNAME=PROD.ACCTS
$ export TABNAME
$ replicat paramfile ggs/dirprm/parmfl
```

UNIX is case-sensitive, so the parameter declaration in the parameter file must be the same case as the shell variable assignments.

#### 4.4.9 Getting Information about Oracle GoldenGate Parameters

For more information about Oracle GoldenGate parameters, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

### 4.5 Specifying Object Names in Oracle GoldenGate Input

The following rules apply when specifying object names in parameter files (such as in TABLE and MAP statements), column-conversion functions, commands, and in other input.

[Supported Database Object Names](#)

[Qualifying Database Object Names](#)

[Specifying Case-Sensitive Database Object Names](#)

[Using Wildcards in Database Object Names](#)

[Differentiating Case-sensitive Column Names from Literals](#)

#### 4.5.1 Specifying Filesystem Path Names in Parameter Files on Windows Systems

On Windows systems, if the name of any directory in a filesystem path name begins with a number, the path must be specified with forward slashes, not backward slashes, when listing that path in Oracle GoldenGate input, such as parameter files or commands. This requirement prevents Oracle GoldenGate from interpreting the name as an octal escape sequence. For example, the following paths contain a directory named \2014 that will be interpreted as the octal sequence \201:

```
C:\ogg\2014\install\dirdat\aa
C:\ogg\install\2014\dirdat\aa
```

The preceding path can be used with forward slashes as follows:

```
C:/ogg/2014/install/dirdat/aa
C:/ogg/install/2014/dirdat/aa
```

For more information, see [Section 12.5.3, "Support for Escape Sequences."](#)

## 4.5.2 Supported Database Object Names

Object names in parameter files, command, and other input can be any length and in any supported character set. For supported character sets, see [Appendix A](#).

Oracle GoldenGate supports most characters in object and column names. Specify object names in double quote marks if they contain special characters such as white spaces or symbols.

The following lists of supported and non-supported characters covers all databases supported by Oracle GoldenGate; a given database platform may or may not support all listed characters.

### 4.5.2.1 Supported Special Characters

Oracle GoldenGate supports all characters that are supported by the database, including the following special characters. Object names that contain these special characters must be enclosed within double quotes in parameter files.

Character	Description
/	Forward slash (See <a href="#">Section 4.5.3, "Specifying Names that Contain Slashes"</a> )
*	Asterisk (Must be escaped by a backward slash when used in parameter file, as in: \*)
?	Question mark (Must be escaped by a backward slash when used in parameter file, as in: \?)
@	At symbol (Supported, but is often used as a resource locator by databases. May cause problems in object names)
#	Pound symbol
\$	Dollar symbol
%	Percent symbol (Must be %% when used in parameter file)
^	Caret symbol
( )	Open and close parentheses
_	Underscore
-	Dash
	Space

### 4.5.2.2 Non-supported Special Characters

The following characters are not supported in object names and non-key column names.

Character	Description
\	Backward slash (Must be \\ when used in parameter file)
{ }	Begin and end curly brackets (braces)
[ ]	Begin and end brackets
=	Equal symbol
+	Plus sign
!	Exclamation point
~	Tilde

Character	Description
	Pipe
&	Ampersand
:	Colon
;	Semi-colon
,	Comma
'	Single quotes
""	Double quotes
'	Accent mark (Diacritical mark)
.	Period
<	Less-than symbol (or beginning angle bracket)
>	Greater-than symbol (or ending angle bracket)

### 4.5.3 Specifying Names that Contain Slashes

If a table name contains a forward-slash character (/) in any part of its name, that name component must be enclosed within double quotes unless the object name is from an IBM i platform . The following are some examples:

```
"c/d"
"/a".b
a."b/"
```

If the name contains a forward slash that is not enclosed within double quotes, Oracle GoldenGate treats it as a name that originated on the IBM i platform (from a DB2 for i database). The forward slash in the name is interpreted as a separator character.

### 4.5.4 Qualifying Database Object Names

Object names must be fully qualified in the parameter file. This means that every name specification must be qualified, not only those supplied as input to Oracle GoldenGate parameter syntax, but also names in a SQL procedure or query that is supplied as SOLEEXEC input, names in user exit input, and all other input supplied in the parameter file.

Oracle GoldenGate supports two-part and three-part object names, as appropriate for the database.

#### 4.5.4.1 Two-part Names

Most databases require only two-part names to be specified, in the following format:

*owner.object*  
For example: HR.EMP

Where:

*owner* is a schema or database, depending on how the database defines a logical namespace that contains database objects. *object* is a table or other supported database object.

The databases for which Oracle GoldenGate supports two-part names are as follows, shown with their appropriate two-part naming convention:

- DB2 for i: *schema.object* and *library/file(member)*

- DB2 LUW: *schema.object*
- DB2 on z/OS: *schema.object*
- MySQL: *database.object*
- Oracle (non-CDB databases): *schema.object*
- PostgreSQL: *schema.object*
- SQL/MX: *schema.object*. Two-part SQL names are supported by default. On a source SQL/MX system, the source catalog must be specified with the SOURCEDB parameter, and only one catalog can be accessed per Extract process. On a target system, the target catalog must be specified with the TARGETDB parameter, and only one catalog can be accessed per Replicat process. The USERID portion of those statements specifies the default schema. Multiple Extract and Replicat processes are required to support multiple source and target catalogs. For more information, see *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for NonStop SQL/MX*.
- SQL Server: *schema.object*
- Sybase: *schema.object*
- Teradata: *database.object*
- TimesTen: *user.object*

#### 4.5.4.2 Three-part Names

Oracle GoldenGate supports three-part names for the following databases:

- Oracle container databases (CDB)
- Informix Dynamix Server
- NonStop SQL/MX

Three-part names are required to capture from a source Oracle container database because one Extract group can capture from more than one container. Thus, the name of the container, as well as the schema, must be specified for each object or objects in an Extract TABLE statement.

Specify a three-part Oracle CDB name as follows:

*container.schema.object*  
For example: PDB1.HR.EMP

For more information about Oracle container databases, see *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide*.

Three-part name support is disabled by default for SQL/MX databases, so that existing parameter files from pre-12c versions of Oracle GoldenGate remain valid without syntax changes. (See [Section 4.5.4.1](#)) To enable three-part name support, use the ENABLECATALOGNAMES parameter in the GLOBALS file. When three-part names are supported, one Extract group can capture from multiple source catalogs. See [Section 4.4.2, "Working with the GLOBALS File"](#) for more information about the GLOBALS file.

Specify a three-part SQL/MX name as follows:

*catalog.schema.object*  
For example: catalog1.HR.EMP

#### 4.5.4.3 Applying Data from Multiple Containers or Catalogs

To apply data captured from multiple source containers or catalogs to a target Oracle container database or SQL/MX database, both three- and two-part names are required. In the MAP portion of the MAP statement, each source object must be associated with a container or catalog, just as it was in the TABLE statement. This enables you (and Replicat) to properly map data from multiple source containers or catalogs to the appropriate target objects. In the TARGET portion of the MAP statement, however, only two-part names are required. This is because Replicat can connect to only one target container or catalog at a time, and *schema.owner* is a sufficient qualifier. Multiple Replicat groups are required to support multiple target containers or catalogs. Specify the target container or catalog with the TARGETDB parameter.

#### 4.5.4.4 Specifying a Default Container or Catalog

You can use the SOURCECATALOG parameter to specify a default catalog for any subsequent TABLE, MAP, (or Oracle SEQUENCE) specifications in the parameter file. The following example shows the use of SOURCECATALOG to specify the default Oracle PDB named pdb2 for schema2 and schema3 objects, and the default PDB named pdb3 for schema4 objects. The objects in pdb1 are specified with a fully qualified three-part name, which does not require a default catalog to be specified. This example would be identical to a SQL/MX example if you substitute a catalog name for the names that begin with pdb.

```
TABLE pdb1.schema1.table*;
SOURCECATALOG pdb2
TABLE schema2.table*;
TABLE schema3.table*;
SOURCECATALOG pdb3
TABLE schema4.table*;
```

#### 4.5.5 Specifying Case-Sensitive Database Object Names

Oracle GoldenGate supports case-sensitive names. Follow these rules when specifying case-sensitive objects.

- Specify object names from a case-sensitive database in the same case that is used to store them in the host database. Keep in mind that, in some database types, different levels of the database can have different case-sensitivity, such as case-sensitive schema but case-insensitive table. If the database requires quotes to enforce case-sensitivity, put quotes around each object that is case-sensitive in the qualified name.

Correct: TABLE "Sales" ."ACCOUNT"

Incorrect: TABLE "Sales.ACOUNT"

- Oracle GoldenGate converts case-insensitive names to the case in which they are stored when required for mapping purposes.

Table 4-1 provides an overview of the support for case-sensitivity in object names, per supported database. Refer to the database documentation for details on this type of support.

**Table 4–1 Case Sensitivity of Object Names Per Database**

<b>Database</b>	<b>Requires quotes to enforce case-sensitivity?</b>	<b>Unquoted object name</b>	<b>Quoted object name</b>
DB2	Yes. Differentiates between case-sensitive and case-insensitive by use of quotes.	Case-insensitive, stores in upper case	Case-sensitive, stores in mixed case
MySQL (Case-sensitive database)	No <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Always case-sensitive, stores in mixed case</li> <li>▪ The names of columns, triggers, and procedures are case-insensitive</li> </ul>	No effect	No effect
Oracle	Yes. Differentiates between case-sensitive and case-insensitive by use of quotes.	Case-insensitive, stores in upper case	Case-sensitive, stores in mixed case
PostgreSQL	Yes. Differentiates between case-sensitive and case-insensitive by use of quotes.	Case-insensitive, stores in lower case	Case-sensitive, stores in mixed case
SQL/MX	Yes. Differentiates between case-sensitive and case-insensitive by use of quotes.	Case-insensitive, stores in upper case	Case-sensitive, stores in mixed case
▪ SQL Server ▪ Sybase (Database created as case-sensitive)	No <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Always case-sensitive, stores in mixed case</li> </ul>	No effect	No effect
▪ SQL Server ▪ Sybase (Database created as case-insensitive)	No <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Always case-insensitive, stores in mixed case</li> </ul>	No effect	No effect
Teradata	No <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Always case-insensitive, stores in mixed case</li> </ul>	No effect	No effect
TimesTen	No <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Always case-insensitive, stores in upper case</li> </ul>	Case-insensitive, stores in upper case	Case-insensitive, stores in upper case

**Note:** For all supported databases, passwords are always treated as case-sensitive regardless of whether the associated object name is quoted or unquoted.

#### 4.5.6 Using Wildcards in Database Object Names

You can use wildcards for any part of a fully qualified object name, if supported for the specific database. These name parts can be the following: the container, database, or catalog name, the owner (schema or database name), and table or sequence name.

For specifics on how object names and wildcards are supported, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and configuration guide for that database.

Where appropriate, Oracle GoldenGate parameters permit the use of two wildcard types to specify multiple objects in one statement:

- A question mark (?) replaces one character. For example in a schema that contains tables named TAB $n$ , where  $n$  is from 0 to 9, a wildcard specification of HQ.TAB? returns HQ.TAB0, HQ.TAB1, HQ.TAB2, and so on, up to HQ.TAB9, but no others. This wildcard is not supported for the DB2 LUW database nor for DEFGEN. This wildcard can only be used to specify source objects in a TABLE or MAP parameter. It cannot be used to specify target objects in the TARGET clause of TABLE or MAP.
- An asterisk (\*) represents any number of characters (including zero sequence). For example, the specification of HQ.T\* could return such objects as HQ.TOTAL, HQ.T123, and HQ.T. This wildcard is valid for all database types throughout all Oracle GoldenGate commands and parameters where a wildcard is allowed.
- In TABLE and MAP statements, you can combine the asterisk and question-mark wildcard characters in source object names only.

#### 4.5.6.1 Rules for Using Wildcards for Source Objects

For source objects, you can use the asterisk alone or with a partial name. For example, the following source specifications are valid:

- TABLE HQ.\*;
- TABLE PDB\*.HQ.\*;
- MAP HQ.T\_\*;
- MAP HQ.T\_\*, TARGET HQ.\*;

The TABLE, MAP and SEQUENCE parameters take the case-sensitivity and locale of the database into account for wildcard resolution. For databases that are created as case-sensitive or case-insensitive, the wildcard matches the exact name and case. For example, if the database is case-sensitive, SCHEMA.TABLE is matched to SCHEMA.TABLE, Schema.Table is matched to Schema.Table, and so forth. If the database is case-insensitive, the matching is not case-sensitive.

For databases that can have both case-sensitive and case-insensitive object names in the same database instance, with the use of quote marks to enforce case-sensitivity, the wildcarding works differently. When used alone for a source name in a TABLE statement, an asterisk wildcard matches any character, whether or not the asterisk is within quotes. The following statements produce the same results:

```
TABLE hr.*;  
TABLE hr.**;
```

Similarly, a question mark wildcard used alone matches any single character, whether or not it is within quotes. The following produce the same results:

```
TABLE hr.?  
TABLE hr.?";
```

If a question mark or asterisk wildcard is used with other characters, case-sensitivity is applied to the non-wildcard characters, but the wildcard matches both case-sensitive and case-insensitive names.

- The following TABLE statements capture any table name that begins with lower-case abc. The quoted name case is preserved and a case-sensitive match is

applied. It captures table names that include "abcA" and "abca" because the wildcard matches both case-sensitive and case-insensitive characters.

```
TABLE hr."abc*";
TABLE hr."abc?";
```

- The following TABLE statements capture any table name that begins with upper-case ABC, because the partial name is case-insensitive (no quotes) and is stored in upper case by this database. However, because the wildcard matches both case-sensitive and case-insensitive characters, this example captures table names that include ABCA and "ABCa".

```
TABLE hr.abc*;
TABLE hr.abc?;
```

#### 4.5.6.2 Rules for Using Wildcards for Target Objects

When using wildcards in the TARGET clause of a MAP statement, the target objects must exist in the target database. (The exception is when DDL replication is being used, which allows new schemas and their objects to be replicated as they are created.)

For target objects, only an asterisk can be used. If an asterisk wildcard is used with a partial name, Replicat replaces the wildcard with the entire name of the corresponding source object. Therefore, specifications such as the following are *incorrect*:

```
TABLE HQ.T_*, TARGET RPT.T_*);
MAP HQ.T_*, TARGET RPT.T_*;
```

The preceding mappings produce incorrect results, because the wildcard in the target specification is replaced with T\_TEST (the name of a source object), making the whole target name T\_T\_TESTn. The following illustrates the incorrect results:

- HQ.T\_TEST1 maps to RPT.T\_T\_TEST1
- HQ.T\_TEST2 maps to RPT.T\_T\_TEST2
- (The same pattern applies to all other HQ.T\_TESTn mappings.)

The following examples show the correct use of asterisk wildcards.

```
MAP HQ.T_*, TARGET RPT.*;
```

The preceding example produces the following correct results:

- HQ.T\_TEST1 maps to RPT.T\_TEST1
- HQ.T\_TEST2 maps to RPT.T\_TEST2
- (The same pattern applies to all other HQ.T\_TESTn mappings.)

#### 4.5.6.3 Fallback Name Mapping

Oracle GoldenGate has a fallback mapping mechanism in the event that a source name cannot be mapped to a target name. If an exact match cannot be found on the target for a case-sensitive source object, Replicat tries to map the source name to the same name in upper or lower case (depending on the database type) on the target. Fallback name mapping is controlled by the NAMEMATCH parameters. For more information, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

#### 4.5.6.4 Wildcard Mapping from Pre-11.2.1 Trail Version

If Replicat is configured to read from a trail file that is a version prior to Oracle GoldenGate 11.2.1, the target mapping is made in the following manner to provide backward compatibility.

- Quoted object names are case-sensitive.
- Unquoted object names are case-insensitive.

The following maps a case-sensitive table name "abc" to target "abc". This only happens with a trail that was written by pre-11.2.1 Extract for SQL Server databases with a case-sensitive configuration and for Sybase. Note that in this example, if the target database is Oracle, DB2 or SQL/MX, fallback name mapping is performed if the target database does not contain case-sensitive "abc" but does have table ABC. (See [Section 4.5.6.3](#).)

```
MAP hq."abc", TARGET hq.*;
```

The following example maps a case-insensitive table name abc to target table name ABC. Previous releases of Oracle GoldenGate stored case-insensitive object names to the trail in upper case; thus the target table name is always upper cased. For case-insensitive name conversion, the comparison is in uppercase, A to Z characters only, in US-ASCII without taking locale into consideration.

```
MAP hq.abc, TARGET hq.*;
```

#### 4.5.6.5 Asterisks or Question Marks as Literals in Object Names

If the name of an object itself includes an asterisk or a question mark, the entire name must be escaped and placed within double quotes, as in the following example:

```
TABLE HT. "\?ABC";
```

#### 4.5.6.6 How Wildcards are Resolved

By default, when an object name is wildcarded, the resolution for that object occurs when the first row from the source object is processed. (By contrast, when the name of an object is stated explicitly, its resolution occurs at process startup.) To change the rules for resolving wildcards, use the WILDCARDRESOLVE parameter. The default is DYNAMIC.

#### 4.5.6.7 Excluding Objects from a Wildcard Specification

You can combine the use of wildcard object selection with explicit object exclusion by using the EXCLUDEWILDCARDOBJECTSONLY, CATALOGEXCLUDE, SCHEMAEXCLUDE, MAPEXCLUDE, and TABLEEXCLUDE parameters. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for descriptions and syntax.

### 4.5.7 Differentiating Case-sensitive Column Names from Literals

By default, Oracle GoldenGate follows SQL-92 rules for specifying column names and literals. In Oracle GoldenGate parameter files, conversion functions, user exits, and commands, case-sensitive column names must be enclosed within double quotes if the database requires quotes around a name to support case-sensitivity. For example:

```
"columnA"
```

Case-sensitive column names in databases that do not require quotes to enforce case-sensitivity must be specified as they are stored in the database. For example:

```
ColumnA
```

Literals must be enclosed within single quotes. In the following example, `Product_Code` is a case-sensitive column name in an Oracle database, and the other strings are literals.

```
@CASE ("Product_Code", 'CAR', 'A car', 'TRUCK', 'A truck')
```

For backward compatibility with parameter files from Oracle GoldenGate versions that are older than version 12c, you can use the `NOUSEANSISQLQUOTES` parameter to change the default mode (this parameter was deprecated in 12c). `NOUSEANSISQLQUOTES` directs Oracle GoldenGate to treat strings within double quotes as literals. When `NOUSEANSISQLQUOTES` is used, there is no support for case-sensitive object names, whether or not they are within single or double quotes. The following example shows how the `@CASE` function would work when `NOUSEANSISQLQUOTES` is used. In this case, `PRODUCT_CODE` is the column name and the other strings are literals:

```
@CASE (PRODUCT_CODE, "CAR", "A car", "TRUCK", "A truck")
```



# 5

---

## Using Oracle GoldenGate for Live Reporting

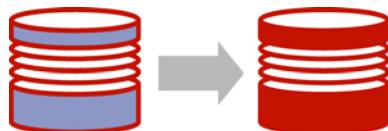
This chapter describes the usage of Oracle GoldenGate for live reporting.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Overview of the Reporting Configuration](#)
- [Creating a Standard Reporting Configuration](#)
- [Creating a Reporting Configuration with a Data Pump on the Source System](#)
- [Creating a Reporting Configuration with a Data Pump on an Intermediary System](#)
- [Creating a Cascading Reporting Configuration](#)

### 5.1 Overview of the Reporting Configuration

The most basic Oracle GoldenGate configuration is a one-to-one configuration that replicates in one direction: from a source database to a target database that is used only for data retrieval purposes such as reporting and analysis. Oracle GoldenGate supports like-to-like or heterogeneous transfer of data, with capabilities for filtering and conversion on either system in the configuration (support varies by database platform).



This graphic represents a reporting configuration, where data is replicated in one direction to another database for reporting purposes.

\*\*\*\*\*  
Oracle GoldenGate supports different reporting topologies that enable you to custom-configure the processes based on your requirements for scalability, availability, and performance. This section contains things to take into consideration when choosing a reporting configuration.

#### 5.1.1 Filtering and Conversion

Data filtering and data conversion both add overhead, and these activities are sometimes prone to configuration errors. If Oracle GoldenGate must perform a large amount of filtering and conversion, consider using one or more data pumps to handle this work. You can use Replicat for this purpose, but you would be sending more data across the network that way, as it will be unfiltered. You can split filtering and

conversion between the two systems by dividing it between the data pump and Replicat.

To filter data, you can use:

- A FILTER or WHERE clause in a TABLE statement (Extract) or in a MAP statement (Replicat)
- A SQL query or procedure
- User exits

To transform data, you can use:

- The Oracle GoldenGate conversion functions
  - A user exit from the Extract or Replicat process that applies rules from an external transformation solution, then returns the manipulated data to Oracle GoldenGate
  - Replicat to deliver data directly to an ETL solution or other transformation engine
- For more information about Oracle GoldenGate's filtering and conversion support, see:

- [Chapter 12, "Mapping and Manipulating Data"](#)
- [Chapter 17, "Customizing Oracle GoldenGate Processing"](#)

### 5.1.2 Read-only vs. High Availability

The Oracle GoldenGate live reporting configuration supports a read-only target. See [Chapter 9, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Active-Active High Availability"](#) if the target in this configuration will also be used for transactional activity in support of high availability.

### 5.1.3 Additional Information

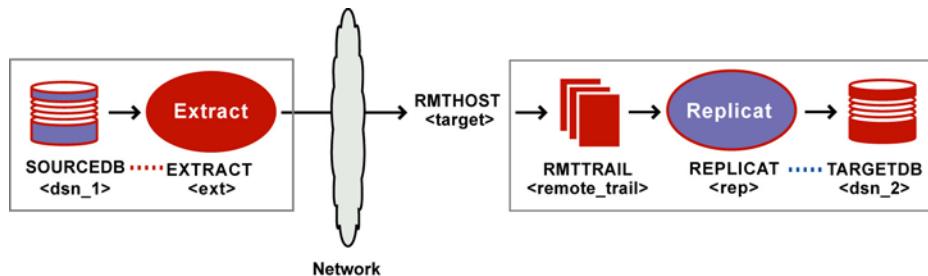
The following documentation provides additional information of relevance to configuring Oracle GoldenGate.

- For additional system requirements, process configuration, and database setup requirements, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and configuration document for your database type. These guides are listed under ["Related Documents"](#) in the [Preface](#) of this book.
- For detailed instructions on configuring Oracle GoldenGate change capture and delivery groups, see [Chapter 14, "Configuring Online Change Synchronization."](#)
- For additional tuning options for Oracle GoldenGate, see [Chapter 19, "Tuning the Performance of Oracle GoldenGate."](#)
- For complete syntax and descriptions of the Oracle GoldenGate commands and parameters, see [Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX](#).

## 5.2 Creating a Standard Reporting Configuration

In the standard Oracle GoldenGate configuration, one Extract group sends captured data over TCP/IP to a trail on the target system, where it is stored until processed by one Replicat group.

Refer to [Figure 5–1](#) for a visual representation of the objects you will be creating.

**Figure 5–1 Configuration Elements for Creating a Standard Reporting Configuration**

This graphic shows the objects you create in a standard reporting configuration which includes an Extract group sending data over TCP-IP to a trail on a target system, where it is stored until processed by a Replicat group.

\*\*\*\*\*

## 5.2.1 Source System

Configure the Manager process and Extract group on the source system.

### To configure the Manager process

On the source, configure the Manager process according to the instructions in Chapter 3, "Configuring Manager and Network Communications."

### To configure the Extract group

1. On the source, use the ADD EXTRACT command to create an Extract group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *ext*.

```
ADD EXTRACT ext, {TRANLOG | INTEGRATED TRANLOG}, BEGIN time [option[, ...]]
```

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other ADD EXTRACT options that may be required for your installation.

2. On the source, use the ADD RMTTRAIL command to specify a remote trail to be created on the target system.

```
ADD RMTTRAIL remote_trail, EXTRACT ext
```

Use the EXTRACT argument to link this trail to the Extract group.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for additional ADD RMTTRAIL options.

3. On the source, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the Extract group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

```
-- Identify the Extract group:  
EXTRACT ext  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_1] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Log all of the supplementally logged columns if using integrated Replicat  
LOGALLSUPCOLS  
-- Valid for Oracle. Specify the name or IP address of the target system and  
-- optional encryption across TCP/IP:  
RMTHOSTOPTIONS target, MGRPORT port_number, ENCRYPT encryption_options
```

```
-- Specify the remote trail and encryption algorithm on the target system:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
RMTTRAIL remote_trail  
-- Specify tables and sequences to be captured:  
SEQUENCE [container.|catalog.]owner.sequence;  
TABLE [container.|catalog.]owner.table;
```

## 5.2.2 Target System

Configure the Manager process and Replicat group on the target system.

### To configure the Manager process

1. On the target, configure the Manager process according to the instructions in [Chapter 3, "Configuring Manager and Network Communications"](#).
2. In the Manager parameter file, use the PURGEOLDEXTRACTS parameter to control the purging of files from the local trail.

### To configure the Replicat group

1. On the target, create a Replicat checkpoint table (unless using Oracle integrated Replicat). See [Section 14.3, "Creating a Checkpoint Table"](#) for instructions. All Replicat groups can use the same checkpoint table.
2. On the target, use the ADD REPLICAT command to create a Replicat group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *rep*.

```
ADD REPLICAT rep  
[, INTEGRATED | COORDINATED [MAXTHREADS number]]  
, EXTTRAIL remote_trail  
, BEGIN time
```

Use the EXTTRAIL argument to link the Replicat group to the remote trail.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other options that may be required for your installation.

3. On the target, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the Replicat group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

```
-- Identify the Replicat group:  
REPLICAT rep  
-- State whether or not source and target definitions are identical:  
SOURCEDEFS full_pathname | ASSUMETARGETDEFS  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[TARGETDB dsn_2] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Specify error handling rules:  
REPERROR (error, response)  
-- Specify tables for delivery and threads if using coordinated Replicat:  
MAP [container.|catalog.]owner.table, TARGET owner.table[, DEF template]  
[, THREAD (thread_ID)]  
[, THREADRANGE (thread_range[, column_list])]  
;
```

---

**Note:** For DB2 for i, you may need to use the ADD TRANDATA command on the target tables if they are not already journaled. Alternatively, you could use the STRJRNPF command to assign the tables to the appropriate journal. If the target tables are not required to be replicated by Oracle GoldenGate, the IMAGES (\*AFTER) option can be used with STRJRNPF. Since Oracle GoldenGate operates using transactions, all tables must be journaled to support transactions and this is not the default with DB2 for i.

---

## 5.3 Creating a Reporting Configuration with a Data Pump on the Source System

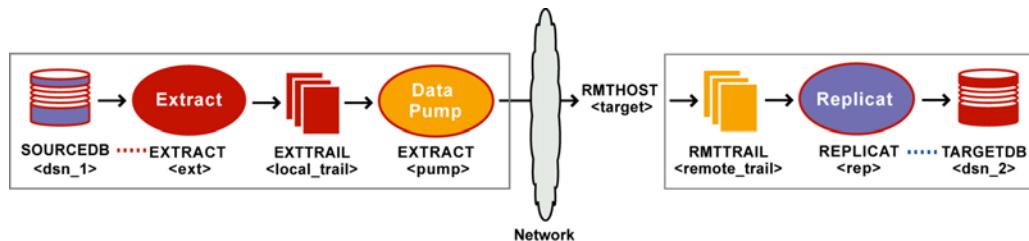
You can add a data pump on the source system to isolate the primary Extract from TCP/IP functions, to add storage flexibility, and to offload the overhead of filtering and conversion processing from the primary Extract.

In this configuration, the primary Extract writes to a local trail on the source system. A local data pump reads that trail and moves the data to a remote trail on the target system, which is read by Replicat.

You can, but are not required to, use a data pump to improve the performance and fault tolerance of Oracle GoldenGate.

Refer to [Figure 5–2](#) for a visual representation of the objects you will be creating.

**Figure 5–2 Configuration Elements for Replicating to One Target with a Data Pump**



This graphic shows replicating to one target with a data pump. The primary Extract writes to a local trail on the source system. A local data pump reads that trail and moves the data to a remote trail on the target system, which is read by Replicat.

\*\*\*\*\*

### 5.3.1 Source System

Configure the Manager process and Extract group on the source system.

#### To configure the Manager process

1. On the source, configure the Manager process according to the instructions in [Chapter 3, "Configuring Manager and Network Communications."](#)
2. In the Manager parameter file, use the PURGEOLDEXTRACTS parameter to control the purging of files from the local trail.

#### To configure the primary Extract group

1. On the source, use the ADD EXTRACT command to create an Extract group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *ext*.

```
ADD EXTRACT ext, {TRANLOG | INTEGRATED TRANLOG}, BEGIN time [option[, ...]]
```

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other ADD EXTRACT options that may be required for your installation.

2. On the source, use the ADD EXTTRAIL command to create a local trail. The primary Extract writes to this trail, and the data-pump Extract reads it.

```
ADD EXTTRAIL local_trail, EXTRACT ext
```

Use the EXTRACT argument to link this trail to the primary Extract group. The primary Extract group writes to this trail, and the data pump group reads it.

3. On the source, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the primary Extract group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

```
-- Identify the Extract group:  
EXTRACT ext  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_1] [,USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Log all scheduling columns if using integrated Replicat  
LOGALLSUPCOLS  
-- Specify the local trail that this Extract writes to and  
-- encryption algorithm:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
EXTTRAIL local_trail  
-- Specify tables and sequences to be captured:  
SEQUENCE [container.]catalog.owner.sequence;  
TABLE [container.]catalog.owner.table;
```

### To configure the data pump Extract group

1. On the source, use the ADD EXTRACT command to create a data pump group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *pump*.

```
ADD EXTRACT pump, EXTTRAILSOURCE local_trail, BEGIN time
```

Use EXTTRAILSOURCE as the data source option, and specify the name of the local trail.

2. On the source, use the ADD RMTTRAIL command to specify a remote trail that will be created on the target system.

```
ADD RMTTRAIL remote_trail, EXTRACT pump
```

Use the EXTRACT argument to link the remote trail to the data pump group. The linked data pump writes to this trail.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for additional ADD RMTTRAIL options.

3. On the source, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the data pump. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment.

```
-- Identify the data pump group:  
EXTRACT pump  
-- Specify database login information if using NOPASSTHRU:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_1] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Decrypt the data only if the data pump must process it.
```

```
-- DECRYPTTRAIL
-- Specify the name or IP address of the target system
-- and optional encryption of data over TCP/IP:
RMTHOSTOPTIONS target, MGRPORT port_number, ENCRYPT encryption_options
-- Specify the remote trail and encryption algorithm on the target system:
ENCRYPTIONTRAIL algorithm
RMTTRAIL remote_trail
-- Allow mapping, filtering, conversion or pass data through as-is:
[PASSTHRU | NOPASSTHRU]
-- Specify tables and sequences to be captured:
SEQUENCE [container.]catalog.[owner.sequence;
TABLE [container.]catalog.[owner.table;
```

---

**Note:** To use PASSTHRU mode, the names of the source and target objects must be identical. No column mapping, filtering, SQLLEXEC functions, transformation, or other functions that require data manipulation can be specified in the parameter file. You can combine normal processing with pass-through processing by pairing PASSTHRU and NOPASSTHRU with different TABLE statements.

---

### 5.3.2 Target System

Configure the Manager process and Replicat group on the target system.

#### To configure the Manager process

1. On the target, configure the Manager process according to the instructions in [Chapter 3, "Configuring Manager and Network Communications"](#).
2. In the Manager parameter file, use the PURGEOLDEXTRACTS parameter to control the purging of files from the local trail.

#### To configure the Replicat group

1. On the target, create a Replicat checkpoint table (unless using Oracle integrated Replicat). See [Section 14.3, "Creating a Checkpoint Table"](#) for instructions.
2. On the target, use the ADD REPLICAT command to create a Replicat group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *rep*.

```
ADD REPLICAT rep
[, INTEGRATED | COORDINATED [MAXTHREADS number]]
, EXTTRAIL remote_trail
, BEGIN time
```

Use the EXTTRAIL argument to link the Replicat group to the remote trail.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other options that may be required for your installation.

3. On the target, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the Replicat group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

```
-- Identify the Replicat group:
REPLICAT rep
-- State whether or not source and target definitions are identical:
SOURCEDEFS full_pathname | ASSUMETARGETDEFS
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:
```

```
[TARGETDB dsn_2] [, USERIDALIAS alias]
-- Specify error handling rules:
REPERROR (error, response)
-- Specify tables for delivery and threads if using coordinated Replicat:
MAP [container.|catalog.|owner.table, TARGET owner.table[, DEF template]
[, THREAD (thread_ID)]
[, THREADRANGE (thread_range[, column_list])]

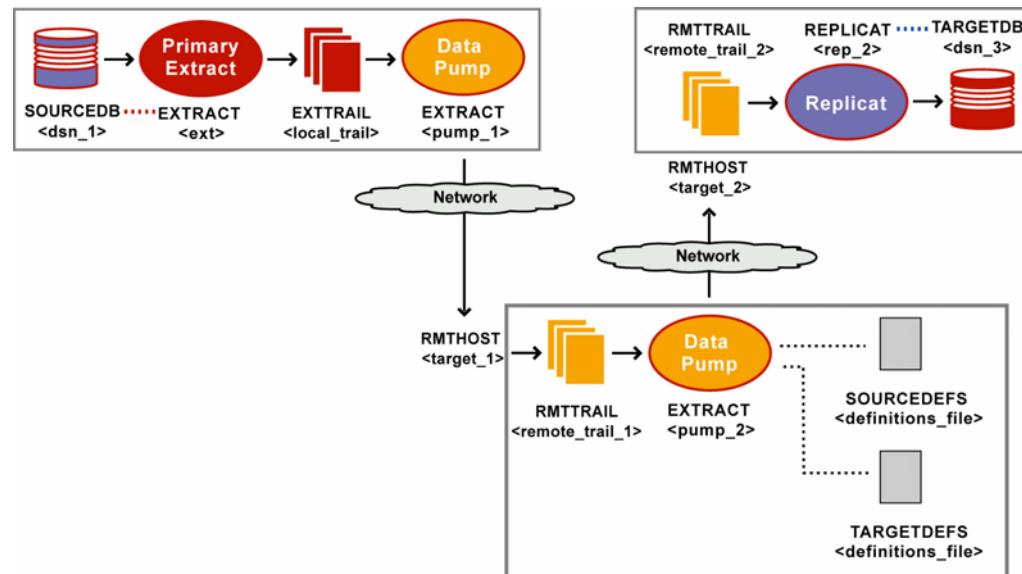
;
```

**Note:** For DB2 for i, you may need to use the ADD TRANDATA command on the target tables if they are not already journaled. Alternatively, you could use the STRJRNPF command to assign the tables to the appropriate journal. If the target tables are not required to be replicated by Oracle GoldenGate, the IMAGES (\*AFTER) option can be used with STRJRNPF. Since Oracle GoldenGate operates using transactions, all tables must be journaled to support transactions and this is not the default with DB2 for i.

## 5.4 Creating a Reporting Configuration with a Data Pump on an Intermediary System

You can use an intermediary system as a transfer point between the source and target systems. In this configuration, a data pump on the source system sends captured data to a remote trail on the intermediary system. A data pump on the intermediary system reads the trail and sends the data to a remote trail on the target. A Replicat on the target reads the remote trail and applies the data to the target database.

**Figure 5–3 Configuration Elements for Replication through an Intermediary System**



This graphic shows replication through an intermediary system. Extract sends the data to a local trail. A data pump on the same system reads the trail and sends it to a remote trail on an intermediary system. A data pump on the intermediary system reads the trail and sends the data to a remote trail on the target. A Replicat on the target reads the remote trail and applies the data to the target database.

\*\*\*\*\*

When considering this topology, take note of the following:

- This configuration is practical if the source and target systems are in different networks and there is no direct connection between them. You can transfer the data through an intermediary system that can connect to both systems.
- This configuration can be used to add storage flexibility to compensate for deficiencies on the source or target.
- This configuration can be used to perform data filtering and conversion if the character sets on all systems are identical. If character sets differ, the data pump cannot perform conversion between character sets, and you must configure Replicat to perform the conversion and transformation on the target.
- To use the data pump on the intermediary system to perform data conversion and transformation, assuming character sets are identical, you must create a source definitions file and a target definitions file with the DEFGEN utility and then transfer both files to the intermediary system. See [Chapter 13, "Associating Replicated Data with Metadata"](#) for more information about definitions files and conversion.
- This configuration is a form of cascaded replication. However, in this configuration, data is not applied to a database on the intermediary system. See [Section 5.5, "Creating a Cascading Reporting Configuration"](#) to include a database on the intermediary system in the Oracle GoldenGate configuration.

### 5.4.1 Source System

Refer to Figure 10 for a visual representation of the objects you will be creating.

#### To configure the Manager process

1. On the source, configure the Manager process according to the instructions in [Chapter 3, "Configuring Manager and Network Communications"](#).
2. In the Manager parameter file, use the PURGEOLDEXTRACTS parameter to control the purging of files from the trail.

#### To configure the primary Extract group on the source

1. On the source, use the ADD EXTRACT command to create an Extract group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *ext*.

```
ADD EXTRACT ext, {TRANLOG | INTEGRATED TRANLOG}, BEGIN time [option[, ...]]
```

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other ADD EXTRACT options that may be required for your installation.

2. On the source, use the ADD EXTTRAIL command to create a local trail. The primary Extract writes to this trail, and the data-pump Extract reads it.

```
ADD EXTTRAIL local_trail, EXTRACT ext
```

Use the EXTRACT argument to link this trail to the primary Extract group. The primary Extract group writes to this trail, and the data-pump group reads it.

3. On the source, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the primary Extract group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

```
-- Identify the Extract group:  
EXTRACT ext  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_1] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Log all scheduling columns if using integrated Replicat  
LOGALLSUPCOLS  
-- Specify the local trail that this Extract writes to and  
-- encryption algorithm:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
EXTTRAIL local_trail  
-- Specify tables and sequences to be captured:  
SEQUENCE [container.|catalog.]owner.sequence;  
TABLE [container.|catalog.]owner.table;
```

### To configure the data pump on the source

1. On the source, use the ADD EXTRACT command to create a data pump group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *pump\_1*.

```
ADD EXTRACT pump_1, EXTTRAILSOURCE local_trail, BEGIN time
```

Use EXTTRAILSOURCE as the data source option, and specify the name of the local trail.

2. On the source, use the ADD RMTTRAIL command to specify a remote trail that will be created on the intermediary system.

```
ADD RMTTRAIL remote_trail_1, EXTRACT pump_1
```

Use the EXTRACT argument to link the remote trail to the *pump\_1* data pump group. The linked data pump writes to this trail.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for additional ADD RMTTRAIL options.

3. On the source, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the *pump\_1* data pump. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment.

```
-- Identify the data pump group:  
EXTRACT pump_1  
-- Specify database login information:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_1] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Decrypt the data only if the data pump must process it.  
-- DECRYPTTRAIL  
-- Specify the name or IP address of the intermediary system  
-- and optional encryption of data over TCP/IP:  
RMTHOSTOPTIONS target_1, MGRPORT port_number, ENCRYPT encryption_options  
-- Specify remote trail and encryption algorithm on intermediary system:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
RMTTRAIL remote_trail_1  
-- Allow mapping, filtering, conversion or pass data through as-is:  
[PASSTHRU | NOPASSTHRU]  
-- Specify tables and sequences to be captured:  
SEQUENCE [container.|catalog.]owner.sequence;  
TABLE [container.|catalog.]owner.table;
```

---

**Note:** To use PASSTHRU mode, the names of the source and target objects must be identical. No column mapping, filtering, SQLEXEC functions, transformation, or other functions that require data manipulation can be specified in the parameter file. You can combine normal processing with pass-through processing by pairing PASSTHRU and NOPASSTHRU with different TABLE statements.

---

## 5.4.2 Intermediary System

Configure the Manager process and data pump on the intermediary system.

### To configure the Manager process on the intermediary system

1. On the intermediary system, configure the Manager process according to the instructions in [Chapter 3, "Configuring Manager and Network Communications"](#).
2. In the Manager parameter file, use the PURGEOLDEXTRACTS parameter to control the purging of files from the trail.

### To configure the data pump on the intermediary system

1. On the intermediary system, use the ADD EXTRACT command to create a data-pump group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *pump\_2*.

```
ADD EXTRACT pump_2, EXTTRAILSOURCE local_trail_1, BEGIN time
```

Use EXTTRAILSOURCE as the data source option, and specify the name of the trail that you created on this system

2. On the intermediary system, use the ADD RMTTRAIL command to specify a remote trail on the target system.

```
ADD RMTTRAIL remote_trail_2, EXTRACT pump_2
```

Use the EXTRACT argument to link the remote trail to the *pump\_2* data pump. The linked data pump writes to this trail.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for additional ADD RMTTRAIL options.

3. On the intermediary system, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the *pump\_2* data pump. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment.

```
-- Identify the data pump group:  
EXTRACT pump_2  
-- Note that no database login parameters are required in this case.  
-- State whether or not source and target definitions are identical:  
SOURCEDEFS full_pathname | ASSUMETARGETDEFS  
-- Specify the target definitions file if SOURCEDEFS was used:  
TARGETDEFS full_pathname  
-- Decrypt the data only if the data pump must process it.  
-- DECRYPTTRAIL  
-- Specify the name or IP address of the target system  
-- and optional encryption of data over TCP/IP:  
RMTHOSTOPTIONS target_2, MGRPORT port_number, ENCRYPT encryption_options  
-- Specify the remote trail and encryption algorithm on the target system:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
RMTTRAIL remote_trail_2  
-- Allow mapping, filtering, conversion or pass data through as-is;  
[PASSTHRU | NOPASSTHRU]
```

```
-- Specify tables and sequences to be captured:  
SEQUENCE [container.|catalog.|owner.sequence;  
TABLE [container.|catalog.|owner.table;
```

- Use SOURCEDEFS and TARGETDEFS to specify the definitions files if the data pump will perform conversion and transformation.
- Use NOPASSTHRU (the default) if the data pump will perform conversion and transformation. Otherwise, use PASSTHRU.

### 5.4.3 Target System

Configure the Manager process and Replicat group on the target system.

#### To configure the Manager process on the target

1. On the target system, configure the Manager process according to the instructions in [Chapter 3, "Configuring Manager and Network Communications"](#).
2. In the Manager parameter file, use the PURGEOLDEXTRACTS parameter to control the purging of files from the trail.

#### To configure the Replicat group on the target

1. On the target, create a Replicat checkpoint table (unless using Oracle integrated Replicat). See [Section 14.3, "Creating a Checkpoint Table"](#) for instructions.
2. On the target, use the ADD REPLICAT command to create a Replicat group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *rep*.

```
ADD REPLICAT rep  
[, INTEGRATED | COORDINATED [MAXTHREADS number]]  
, EXTTRAIL remote_trail_2,  
, BEGIN time
```

Use the EXTTRAIL argument to link the Replicat group to the trail on this system.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other options that may be required for your installation.

3. On the target, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the Replicat group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

```
-- Identify the Replicat group:  
REPLICAT rep  
-- State whether or not source and target definitions are identical:  
SOURCEDEFS full_pathname | ASSUMETARGETDEFS  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[TARGETDB dsn_2] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Specify error handling rules:  
REPERROR (error, response)  
-- Specify tables for delivery and threads if using coordinated Replicat:  
MAP [container.|catalog.|owner.table, TARGET owner.table[], DEF template]  
[, THREAD (thread_ID)]  
[, THREADRANGE (thread_range[, column_list])]  
;
```

---

**Note:** For DB2 for i, you may need to use the ADD TRANDATA command on the target tables if they are not already journaled. Alternatively, you can use the STRJRNPF command to assign the tables to the appropriate journal. If the target tables are not required to be replicated by Oracle GoldenGate, the IMAGES (\*AFTER) option can be used with STRJRNPF. Since Oracle GoldenGate operates using transactions, all tables must be journaled to support transactions and this is not the default with DB2 for i.

---

## 5.5 Creating a Cascading Reporting Configuration

Oracle GoldenGate supports cascading synchronization, where Oracle GoldenGate propagates data changes from the source database to a second database, and then on to a third database. In this configuration:

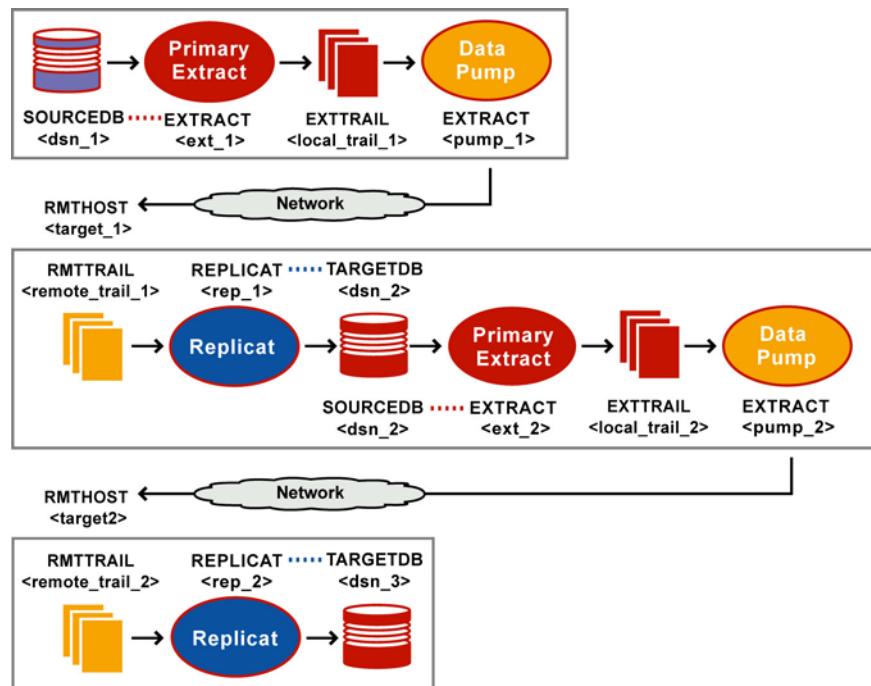
- A primary Extract on the source writes captured data to a local trail, and a data pump sends the data to a remote trail on the second system in the cascade.
- On the second system, Replicat applies the data to the local database.
- Another primary Extract on that same system captures the data from the local database and writes it to a local trail.
- A data pump sends the data to a remote trail on the third system in the cascade, where it is applied to the local database by another Replicat.

---

**Note:** See [Section 5.4, "Creating a Reporting Configuration with a Data Pump on an Intermediary System"](#) if you do not need to apply the replicated changes to a database on the secondary system.

---

**Figure 5–4 Cascading Configuration**



This graphic shows a cascading reporting configuration. Extract writes to a local trail on the source system. A data pump on that system reads the local trail and sends it to a remote trail on an intermediary system. Replicat on that system applies the data to a database, and then an Extract captures it again and writes it to a local trail. A data pump on that system reads the trail and sends it to a remote trail on the target system, where Replicat applies the data to the target database.

\*\*\*\*\*

Use this configuration if:

- One or more of the target systems does not have a direct connection to the source, but the second system can connect in both directions.
- You want to limit network activity from the source system.
- You are sending data to two or more servers that are very far apart geographically, such as from Chicago to Los Angeles and then from Los Angeles to servers throughout China.

When considering this topology, take note of the following:

- This configuration can be used to perform data filtering and conversion if the character sets on all systems are identical. If character sets differ, a data pump cannot perform conversion between character sets, and you must configure Replicat to perform the conversion and transformation on the target.
- To use the data pump on the second system to perform data conversion and transformation, assuming character sets are identical, you must create a source definitions file on the first system with the DEFGEN utility and then transfer it to the second system. Additionally, you must create a source definitions file on the second system and transfer it to the third system. See [Chapter 13, "Associating Replicated Data with Metadata"](#) for more information about definitions files and conversion.
- On the second system, you must configure the Extract group to capture Replicat activity and to ignore local business application activity. The Extract parameters that control this behavior are IGNOREAPPLOPS and GETREPLICATES.

## 5.5.1 Source System

Refer to [Figure 5–4](#) for a visual representation of the objects you will be creating.

### To configure the Manager process on the source

1. On the source, configure the Manager process according to the instructions in [Chapter 3, "Configuring Manager and Network Communications"](#).
2. In the Manager parameter file, use the PURGEOLDEXTRACTS parameter to control the purging of files from the trail.

### To configure the primary Extract group on the source

1. On the source, use the ADD EXTRACT command to create an Extract group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *ext\_1*.

```
ADD EXTRACT ext_1, {TRANLOG | INTEGRATED TRANLOG}, BEGIN time [option[, ...]]
```

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other ADD EXTRACT options that may be required for your installation.

2. On the source, use the ADD EXTTRAIL command to create a local trail.

```
ADD EXTTRAIL local_trail_1, EXTRACT ext_1
```

Use the EXTRACT argument to link this trail to the *ext\_1* Extract group.

3. On the source, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the *ext\_1* Extract group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

```
-- Identify the Extract group:  
EXTRACT ext_1  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_1][, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Log all scheduling columns if using integrated Replicat  
LOGALLSUPCOLS  
-- Specify the local trail that this Extract writes to  
-- and encryption algorithm:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
EXTTRAIL local_trail  
-- Specify tables and sequences to be captured:  
SEQUENCE [container.]catalog.owner.sequence;  
TABLE [container.]catalog.owner.table;
```

### To configure the data pump on the source

1. On the source, use the ADD EXTRACT command to create a data pump group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *pump\_1*.

```
ADD EXTRACT pump_1, EXTTRAILSOURCE local_trail_1, BEGIN time
```

Use EXTTRAILSOURCE as the data source option, and specify the name of the local trail.

2. On the source, use the ADD RMTTRAIL command to specify a remote trail that will be created on the second system in the cascade.

```
ADD RMTTRAIL remote_trail_1, EXTRACT pump_1
```

Use the EXTRACT argument to link the remote trail to the *pump\_1* data pump group. The linked data pump writes to this trail.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for additional ADD RMTTRAIL options.

3. On the source, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the *pump\_1* data pump. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment.

```
-- Identify the data pump group:  
EXTRACT pump_1  
-- Specify database login information if using NOPASSTHROUGH:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_1][, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Decrypt the data only if the data pump must process it.  
-- DECRYPTTRAIL  
-- Specify the name or IP address of second system in cascade  
-- and optional encryption of data over TCP/IP:  
RMTHOSTOPTIONS target_1, MGRPORT port_number, ENCRYPT encryption_options  
-- Specify the remote trail and encryption algorithm on the second system:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
RMTTRAIL remote_trail_1  
-- Allow mapping, filtering, conversion or pass data through as-is.  
[PASSTHRU | NOPASSTHRU]  
-- Specify tables and sequences to be captured:
```

---

```
SEQUENCE [container.|catalog.]owner.sequence;
TABLE [container.|catalog.]owner.table;
```

---

**Note:** To use PASSTHRU mode, the names of the source and target objects must be identical. No column mapping, filtering, SQLEXEC functions, transformation, or other functions that require data manipulation can be specified in the parameter file. You can combine normal processing with pass-through processing by pairing PASSTHRU and NOPASSTHRU with different TABLE statements.

---

## 5.5.2 Second System in the Cascade

Configure the Manager process, Replicat group, and data pump on the second system in the cascade.

### To configure the Manager process on the second system

1. On the second system, configure the Manager process according to the instructions in [Chapter 3, "Configuring Manager and Network Communications"](#).
2. In the Manager parameter file, use the PURGEOLDEXTRACTS parameter to control the purging of files from the trail.

### To configure the Replicat group on the second system

1. Create a Replicat checkpoint table (unless using Oracle integrated Replicat). See [Section 14.3, "Creating a Checkpoint Table"](#) for instructions.
2. On the second system, use the ADD REPLICAT command to create a Replicat group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *rep\_1*.

```
ADD REPLICAT rep_1
[, INTEGRATED | COORDINATED [MAXTHREADS number]]
, EXTTRAIL remote_trail_1,
, BEGIN time
```

Use the EXTTRAIL option to link the *rep\_1* group to the remote trail *remote\_trail\_1* that is on the local system.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other options that may be required for your installation.

3. On the second system, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the Replicat group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

```
-- Identify the Replicat group:
REPLICAT rep_1
-- State whether or not source and target definitions are identical:
SOURCEDEFS full_pathname | ASSUMETARGETDEFS
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:
[TARGETDB dsn_2] [, USERIDALIAS alias]
-- Specify error handling rules:
REPERROR (error, response)
-- Specify tables for delivery and threads if using coordinated Replicat:
MAP [container.|catalog.]owner.table, TARGET owner.table[, DEF template]
[, THREAD (thread_ID)]
[, THREADRANGE (thread_range[, column_list])]
```

```
;
```

---

**Note:** For DB2 for i, you may need to use the ADD TRANDATA command on the target tables if they are not already journaled. Alternatively, you could use the STRJRNPF command to assign the tables to the appropriate journal. If the target tables are not required to be replicated by Oracle GoldenGate, the IMAGES (\*AFTER) option can be used with STRJRNPF. Since Oracle GoldenGate operates using transactions, all tables must be journaled to support transactions and this is not the default with DB2 for i.

---

### To configure an Extract group on the second system

1. On the source, use the ADD EXTRACT command to create an Extract group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *ext\_2*.

```
ADD EXTRACT ext_2, {TRANLOG | INTEGRATED TRANLOG}, BEGIN time [option[, ...]]
```

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other ADD EXTRACT options that may be required for your installation.

2. On the second system, use the ADD EXTTRAIL command to specify a local trail that will be created on the third system.

```
ADD EXTTRAIL local_trail_2, EXTRACT ext_2
```

Use the EXTRACT argument to link this local trail to the *ext\_2* Extract group.

3. On the second system, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the *ext\_2* Extract group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

```
-- Identify the Extract group:  
EXTRACT ext_2  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_2][, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Log all scheduling columns if using integrated Replicat  
LOGALLSUPCOLS  
-- Specify the local trail that this Extract writes to  
-- and encryption algorithm:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
EXTTRAIL local_trail_2  
-- Ignore local DML, capture Replicat DML:  
IGNOREAPLOPS, GETREPLICATES  
-- Specify tables and sequences to be captured:  
SEQUENCE [container.]catalog.owner.sequence;  
TABLE [container.]catalog.owner.table;
```

---

**Note:** If replicating DDL operations, IGNOREAPLOPS, GETREPLICATES functionality is controlled by the DDLOPTIONS parameter.

---

### To configure the data pump on the second system

1. On the second system, use the ADD EXTRACT command to create a data pump group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *pump\_2*.

```
ADD EXTRACT pump_2, EXTTRAILSOURCE local_trail_2, BEGIN time
```

Use EXTTRAILSOURCE as the data source option, and specify the name of the local trail.

2. On the second system, use the ADD RMTTRAIL command to specify a remote trail that will be created on the third system in the cascade.

```
ADD RMTTRAIL remote_trail_2, EXTRACT pump_2
```

Use the EXTRACT argument to link the remote trail to the *pump\_2* data pump group. The linked data pump writes to this trail.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for additional ADD RMTTRAIL options.

3. On the second system, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the *pump\_2* data pump. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment.

```
-- Identify the data pump group:  
EXTRACT pump_2  
-- Specify database login information if using NOPASSTHRU:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_2] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Decrypt the data only if the data pump must process it.  
-- DECRYPTTRAIL  
-- Specify the name or IP address of third system in cascade  
-- and optional encryption of data over TCP/IP:  
RMTHOSTOPTIONS target_2, MGRPORT port_number, ENCRYPT encryption_options  
-- Specify the remote trail and encryption algorithm on the third system:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
RMTTRAIL remote_trail_2  
-- Allow mapping, filtering, conversion or pass data through as-is:  
[PASSTHRU | NOPASSTHRU]  
-- Specify tables and sequences to be captured:  
SEQUENCE [container.|catalog.]owner.sequence;  
TABLE [container.|catalog.]owner.table;
```

---

**Note:** To use PASSTHRU mode, the names of the source and target objects must be identical. No column mapping, filtering, SQL EXEC functions, transformation, or other functions that require data manipulation can be specified in the parameter file. You can combine normal processing with pass-through processing by pairing PASSTHRU and NOPASSTHRU with different TABLE statements.

---

### 5.5.3 Third System in the Cascade

Configure the Manager process and Replicat group on the third system in the cascade.

#### To configure the Manager process

1. On the third system, configure the Manager process according to the instructions in [Chapter 3, "Configuring Manager and Network Communications"](#).
2. In the Manager parameter file, use the PURGEOLDEXTRACTS parameter to control the purging of files from the trail.

### To configure the Replicat group

1. On the third system, create a Replicat checkpoint table (unless using Oracle integrated Replicat). See [Section 14.3, "Creating a Checkpoint Table"](#) for instructions.
2. On the third system, use the ADD REPLICAT command to create a Replicat group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *rep\_2*.

```
ADD REPLICAT rep_2
[ , INTEGRATED | COORDINATED [MAXTHREADS number] ]
, EXTTRAIL remote_trail_2,
, BEGIN time
```

Use the EXTTRAIL option to link the *rep\_2* group to the *remote\_trail\_2* trail.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other options that may be required for your installation.

3. On the third system, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the Replicat group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

```
-- Identify the Replicat group:
REPLICAT rep_2
-- State whether or not source and target definitions are identical:
SOURCEDEFS full_pathname | ASSUMETARGETDEFS
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:
[TARGETDB dsn_3][, USERIDALIAS alias]
-- Specify error handling rules:
REPERROR (error, response)
-- Specify tables for delivery and threads if using coordinated Replicat:
MAP [container.|catalog.]owner.table, TARGET owner.table[, DEF template]
[, THREAD (thread_ID)]
[, THREADRANGE (thread_range[, column_list])]

;
```

---

**Note:** For DB2 for i, you may need to use the ADD TRANDATA command on the target tables if they are not already journaled. Alternatively, you could use the STRJRNPF command to assign the tables to the appropriate journal. If the target tables are not required to be replicated by Oracle GoldenGate, the IMAGES (\*AFTER) option can be used with STRJRNPF. Since Oracle GoldenGate operates using transactions, all tables must be journaled to support transactions and this is not the default with DB2 for i.

---



# 6

---

## Using Oracle GoldenGate for Real-time Data Distribution

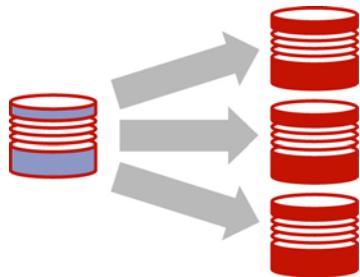
This chapter describes the usage of Oracle GoldenGate for real-time data distribution.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Overview of the Data-distribution Configuration](#)
- [Considerations for a Data-distribution Configuration](#)
- [Creating a Data Distribution Configuration](#)

### 6.1 Overview of the Data-distribution Configuration

A data distribution configuration is a one-to-many configuration. Oracle GoldenGate supports synchronization of a source database to any number of target systems. Oracle GoldenGate supports like-to-like or heterogeneous transfer of data, with capabilities for filtering and conversion on any system in the configuration (support varies by database platform).



This simple graphic shows a high-level representation of a data distribution configuration where a source database is synchronized to multiple target systems.

\*\*\*\*\*

### 6.2 Considerations for a Data-distribution Configuration

These sections describe considerations for a data-distribution configuration.

#### 6.2.1 Fault Tolerance

For a data distribution configuration, the use of data pumps on the source system ensures that if network connectivity to any of the targets fails, the captured data still can be sent to the other targets. Use a primary Extract group and one data-pump Extract group for each target.

## 6.2.2 Filtering and Conversion

You can use any process to perform filtering and conversion. However, using the data pumps to perform filtering operations removes that processing overhead from the primary Extract group, and it reduces the amount of data that is sent across the network. See [Chapter 12, "Mapping and Manipulating Data"](#) for filtering and conversion options.

## 6.2.3 Read-only vs. High Availability

The data distribution configuration supports read-only targets. See [Chapter 9, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Active-Active High Availability"](#) if any target in this configuration will also be used for transactional activity in support of high availability.

## 6.2.4 Additional Information

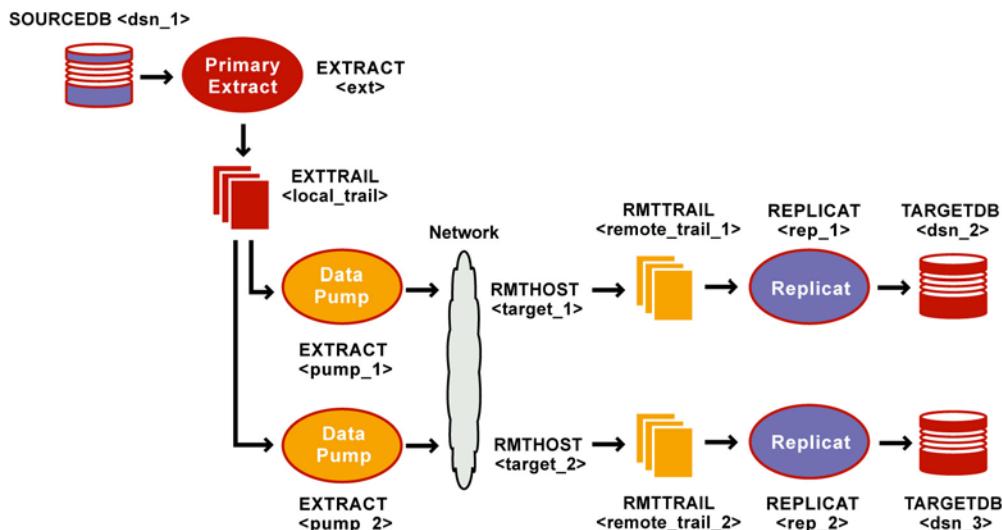
The following documentation provides additional information of relevance to configuring Oracle GoldenGate.

- For additional system requirements, process configuration, and database setup requirements, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and configuration document for your database type. These guides are listed under "[Related Documents](#)" in the [Preface](#) of this book.
- For detailed instructions on configuring Oracle GoldenGate change capture and delivery groups, see [Chapter 14, "Configuring Online Change Synchronization."](#)
- For additional tuning options for Oracle GoldenGate, see [Chapter 19, "Tuning the Performance of Oracle GoldenGate."](#)
- For complete syntax and descriptions of the Oracle GoldenGate commands and parameters, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 6.3 Creating a Data Distribution Configuration

Refer to [Figure 6–1](#) for a visual representation of the objects you will be creating.

**Figure 6–1 Oracle GoldenGate Configuration Elements for Data Distribution**



This graphic shows a data distribution configuration. On the source system, a primary Extract writes data to a local trail. In this example, there are two data pumps on the source system which read the local trail. Each data pump sends data to a remote trail on a different target system. A Replicat on each target reads the remote trail and applies the data to the target database.

---

### 6.3.1 Source System

Configure the Manager process and primary Extract on the source system.

#### To configure the Manager process

1. On the source, configure the Manager process. See [Chapter 3, "Configuring Manager and Network Communications"](#) for instructions.
2. In the Manager parameter file, use the PURGEOLDEXTRACTS parameter to control the purging of files from the local trail.

#### To configure the primary Extract

1. On the source, use the ADD EXTRACT command to create an Extract group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *ext*.

```
ADD EXTRACT ext, {TRANLOG | INTEGRATED TRANLOG}, BEGIN time [option[, . . .]]
```

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other ADD EXTRACT options that may be required for your installation.

2. On the source, use the ADD EXTTRAIL command to create a local trail.

```
ADD EXTTRAIL local_trail, EXTRACT ext
```

Use the EXTRACT argument to link this trail to the primary Extract group. The primary Extract group writes to this trail, and the data pump groups read it.

3. On the source, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the primary Extract group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

```
-- Identify the Extract group:  
EXTRACT ext  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_1][, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Log all scheduling columns if using integrated Replicat  
LOGALLSUPCOLS  
-- Specify the local trail that this Extract writes to  
-- and encryption algorithm:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
EXTTRAIL local_trail  
-- Specify tables and sequences to be captured:  
SEQUENCE [container.]catalog.owner.sequence;  
TABLE [container.]catalog.owner.table;
```

Use EXTTRAIL to specify the local trail.

### To configure the data pump Extract groups

- On the source, use the ADD EXTRACT command to create a data pump for each target system. For documentation purposes, these groups are called *pump\_1* and *pump\_2*.

```
ADD EXTRACT pump_1, EXTTRAILSOURCE local_trail, BEGIN time
ADD EXTRACT pump_2, EXTTRAILSOURCE local_trail, BEGIN time
```

Use EXTTRAILSOURCE as the data source option, and supply the name of the local trail.

- On the source, use the ADD RMTTRAIL command to specify a remote trail that will be created on each of the target systems.

```
ADD RMTTRAIL remote_trail_1, EXTRACT pump_1
ADD RMTTRAIL remote_trail_2, EXTRACT pump_2
```

Use the EXTRACT argument to link each remote trail to a different data pump group. The linked data pump writes to this trail.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for additional ADD RMTTRAIL options.

- On the source, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for each of the data pumps. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment.

Parameter file for *pump\_1*:

```
-- Identify the data pump group:
EXTRACT pump_1
-- Specify database login information if using NOPASSTHRU:
[SOURCEDB dsn_1] [, USERIDALIAS alias]
-- Decrypt the data only if the data pump must process it.
-- DECRYPTTRAIL
-- Specify the name or IP address of the first target system
-- and optional encryption of data over TCP/IP:
RMTHOSTOPTIONS target_1, MGRPORT port_number, ENCRYPT encryption_options
-- Specify remote trail and encryption algorithm on first target system:
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm
RMTTRAIL remote_trail_1
-- Allow mapping, filtering, conversion or pass data through as-is:
[PASSTHRU | NOPASSTHRU]
-- Specify tables and sequences to be captured:
SEQUENCE [container.|catalog.]owner.sequence;
TABLE [container.|catalog.]owner.table;
```

Parameter file for *pump\_2*:

```
-- Identify the data pump group:
EXTRACT pump_2
-- Specify database login information if using NOPASSTHRU:
[SOURCEDB dsn_1] [, USERIDALIAS alias]
-- Decrypt the data only if the data pump must process it.
-- DECRYPTTRAIL
-- Specify the name or IP address of the second target system
-- and optional encryption of data over TCP/IP:
RMTHOSTOPTIONS target_2, MGRPORT port_number, ENCRYPT encryption_options
-- Specify remote trail and encryption algorithm on second target system:
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm
RMTTRAIL remote_trail_2
-- Allow mapping, filtering, conversion or pass data through as-is:
```

```
[PASSTHRU | NOPASSTHRU]
-- Specify tables and sequences to be captured:
SEQUENCE [container.|catalog.]owner.sequence;
TABLE [container.|catalog.]owner.table;
```

## 6.3.2 Target Systems

Configure the Manager process and Replicat groups on the target systems.

### To configure the Manager process

1. On each target, configure the Manager process. See [Chapter 3, "Configuring Manager and Network Communications"](#) for instructions.
2. In each Manager parameter file, use the PURGEOLDEXTRACTS parameter to control the purging of files from the trail.

### To configure the Replicat groups

1. On each target, create a Replicat checkpoint table (unless using Oracle integrated Replicat). See [Section 14.3, "Creating a Checkpoint Table"](#) for instructions.
2. On each target, use the ADD REPLICAT command to create a Replicat group for the remote trail on that system. For documentation purposes, these groups are called *rep\_1* and *rep\_2*.

Command on *target\_1*:

```
ADD REPLICAT rep_1
[, INTEGRATED | COORDINATED [MAXTHREADS number]]
, EXTRAIL remote_trail_1, BEGIN time
```

Command on *target\_2*:

```
ADD REPLICAT rep_2
[, INTEGRATED | COORDINATED [MAXTHREADS number]]
, EXTRAIL remote_trail_2, BEGIN time
```

Use the EXTRAIL argument to link the Replicat group to the correct trail.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other options that may be required for your installation.

3. On each target, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the Replicat group. Use the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

Parameter file for *rep\_1*:

```
-- Identify the Replicat group:
REPLICAT rep_1
-- State whether or not source and target definitions are identical:
SOURCEDEFS full_pathname | ASSUMETARGETDEFS
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:
[TARGETDB dsn_2][, USERIDALIAS alias]
-- Specify error handling rules:
REPERROR (error, response)
-- Specify tables for delivery and threads if using coordinated Replicat:
MAP [container.|catalog.]owner.table, TARGET owner.table[, DEF template]
[, THREAD (thread_ID)]
[, THREADRANGE (thread_range[, column_list])];
;
```

Parameter file for *rep\_2*:

```
-- Identify the Replicat group:  
REPLICAT rep_2  
-- State whether or not source and target definitions are identical:  
SOURCEDEFS full_pathname | ASSUMETARGETDEFS  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[TARGETDB dsn_3] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Specify error handling rules:  
REPERROR (error, response)  
-- Specify tables for delivery and threads if using coordinated Replicat:  
MAP [container.|catalog.]owner.table, TARGET owner.table[, DEF template]  
[, THREAD (thread_ID)]  
[, THREADRANGE (thread_range[, column_list])]  
;
```

You can use any number of MAP statements for any given Replicat group. All MAP statements for a given Replicat group must specify the same objects that are contained in the trail that is linked to the group.

# Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Real-time Data Warehousing

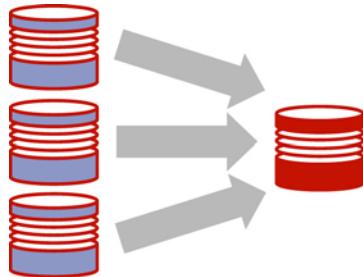
This chapter describes how to configure Oracle GoldenGate for real-time data warehousing.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Overview of the Data Warehousing Configuration](#)
- [Considerations for a Data Warehousing Configuration](#)
- [Creating a Data Warehousing Configuration](#)

## 7.1 Overview of the Data Warehousing Configuration

A data warehousing configuration is a many-to-one configuration. Multiple source databases send data to one target warehouse database. Oracle GoldenGate supports like-to-like or heterogeneous transfer of data, with capabilities for filtering and conversion on any system in the configuration (support varies by database platform).



This graphic shows a high-level representation of a many-to-one, data warehousing configuration, where multiple source databases send data to one target warehouse database.

\*\*\*\*\*

## 7.2 Considerations for a Data Warehousing Configuration

This section describes considerations for a data warehousing configuration.

### 7.2.1 Isolation of Data Records

This configuration assumes that each source database contributes different records to the target system. If the same record exists in the same table on two or more source systems and can be changed on any of those systems, conflict resolution routines are needed to resolve conflicts when changes to that record are made on both sources at

the same time and replicated to the target table. See [Chapter 9, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Active-Active High Availability"](#) for more information about resolving conflicts.

### 7.2.2 Data Storage

You can divide the data storage between the source systems and the target system to reduce the need for massive amounts of disk space on the target system. This is accomplished by using a data pump on each source, rather than sending data directly from each Extract across the network to the target.

- A primary Extract writes to a local trail on each source.
- A data-pump Extract on each source reads the local trail and sends it across TCP/IP to a dedicated Replicat group.

### 7.2.3 Filtering and Conversion

If not all of the data from a source system will be sent to the data warehouse, you can use the data pump to perform the filtering. This removes that processing overhead from the primary Extract group, and it reduces the amount of data that is sent across the network. See [Chapter 12, "Mapping and Manipulating Data"](#) for filtering and conversion options.

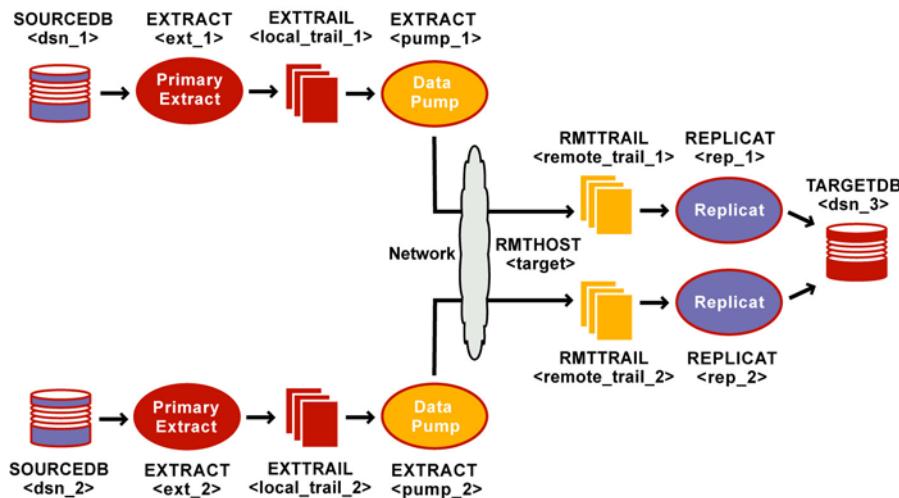
### 7.2.4 Additional Information

The following documentation provides additional information of relevance to configuring Oracle GoldenGate.

- For additional system requirements, process configuration, and database setup requirements, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and configuration document for your database type. These guides are listed under ["Related Documents"](#) in the [Preface](#) of this book.
- For detailed instructions on configuring Oracle GoldenGate change capture and delivery groups, see [Chapter 14, "Configuring Online Change Synchronization."](#)
- For additional tuning options for Oracle GoldenGate, see [Chapter 19, "Tuning the Performance of Oracle GoldenGate."](#)
- For complete syntax and descriptions of the Oracle GoldenGate commands and parameters, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 7.3 Creating a Data Warehousing Configuration

Refer to [Figure 7-1](#) for a visual representation of the objects you will be creating.

**Figure 7-1 Configuration for Data Warehousing**

This graphic shows a configuration for data warehousing. A primary Extract on each of two source systems writes data to a local trail on the local system that is read by a data pump on that system. Each data pump sends the data to dedicated remote trail on a single target system that houses the data warehouse. A Replicat for each trail reads the data and applies it to the database.

\*\*\*\*\*

### 7.3.1 Source Systems

Configure the Manager process and primary Extract groups for the source systems.

#### To configure the Manager process

1. On each source, configure the Manager process according to the instructions in Chapter 3, "Configuring Manager and Network Communications."
2. In each Manager parameter file, use the PURGEOLDEXTRACTS parameter to control the purging of files from the trail on the local system.

#### To configure the primary Extract groups

1. On each source, use the ADD EXTRACT command to create a primary Extract group. For documentation purposes, these groups are called *ext\_1* and *ext\_2*.

Command on *source\_1*:

```
ADD EXTRACT ext_1, {TRANLOG | INTEGRATED TRANLOG}, BEGIN time [option[, ...]]
```

Command on *source\_2*:

```
ADD EXTRACT ext_2, {TRANLOG | INTEGRATED TRANLOG}, BEGIN time [option[, ...]]
```

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other ADD EXTRACT options that may be required for your installation.

2. On each source, use the ADD EXTTRAIL command to create a local trail.

Command on *source\_1*:

```
ADD EXTTRAIL local_trail_1, EXTRACT ext_1
```

Command on *source\_2*:

```
ADD EXTTRAIL local_trail_2, EXTRACT ext_2
```

Use the EXTRACT argument to link each Extract group to the local trail on the same system. The primary Extract writes to this trail, and the data-pump reads it.

3. On each source, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the primary Extract. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

Parameter file for *ext\_1*:

```
-- Identify the Extract group:  
EXTRACT ext_1  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_1] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Log all scheduling columns if using integrated Replicat  
LOGALLSUPCOLS  
-- Specify the local trail that this Extract writes to  
-- and the encryption algorithm:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
EXTTRAIL local_trail_1  
-- Specify tables and sequences to be captured:  
SEQUENCE [container.|catalog.]owner.sequence;  
TABLE [container.|catalog.]owner.table;
```

Parameter file for *ext\_2*:

```
-- Identify the Extract group:  
EXTRACT ext_2  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_2] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Log all scheduling columns if using integrated Replicat or CDR  
LOGALLSUPCOLS  
-- Specify the local trail that this Extract writes to  
-- and the encryption algorithm:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
EXTTRAIL local_trail_2  
-- Specify tables and sequences to be captured:  
SEQUENCE [container.|catalog.]owner.sequence;  
TABLE [container.|catalog.]owner.table;
```

### To configure the data pumps

1. On each source, use the ADD EXTRACT command to create a data pump Extract group. For documentation purposes, these pumps are called *pump\_1* and *pump\_2*.

Command on *source\_1*:

```
ADD EXTRACT pump_1, EXTTRAILSOURCE local_trail_1, BEGIN time
```

Command on *source\_2*:

```
ADD EXTRACT pump_2, EXTTRAILSOURCE local_trail_2, BEGIN time
```

Use EXTTRAILSOURCE as the data source option, and specify the name of the trail on the local system

2. On each source, use the ADD RMTTRAIL command to create a remote trail on the target.

Command on *source\_1*:

```
ADD RMTTRAIL remote_trail_1, EXTRACT pump_1
```

Command on *source\_2*:

```
ADD RMTTRAIL remote_trail_2, EXTRACT pump_2
```

Use the EXTRACT argument to link each remote trail to a different data pump. The data pump writes to this trail over TCP/IP, and a Replicat reads from it.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for additional ADD RMTTRAIL options.

3. On each source, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the data pump group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment.

Parameter file for *pump\_1*:

```
-- Identify the data pump group:  
EXTRACT pump_1  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_1] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Decrypt the data only if the data pump must process it.  
-- DECRYPTTRAIL  
-- Specify the name or IP address of the target system  
-- and optional encryption of data over TCP/IP:  
RMTHOSTOPTIONS target, MGRPORT port_number, ENCRYPT encryption_options  
-- Specify the remote trail and encryption algorithm on the target system:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
RMTTRAIL remote_trail_1  
-- Allow mapping, filtering, conversion or pass data through as-is:  
[PASSTHRU | NOPASSTHRU]  
-- Specify tables and sequences to be captured:  
SEQUENCE [container.|catalog.]owner.sequence;  
TABLE [container.|catalog.]owner.table;
```

Parameter file for *pump\_2*:

```
-- Identify the data pump group:  
EXTRACT pump_1  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_2] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Decrypt the data only if the data pump must process it.  
-- DECRYPTTRAIL  
-- Specify the name or IP address of the target system  
-- and optional encryption of data over TCP/IP:  
RMTHOSTOPTIONS target, MGRPORT port_number, ENCRYPT encryption_options  
-- Specify the remote trail and encryption algorithm on the target system:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
RMTTRAIL remote_trail_2  
-- Allow mapping, filtering, conversion or pass data through as-is:  
[PASSTHRU | NOPASSTHRU]  
-- Specify tables and sequences to be captured:  
SEQUENCE [container.|catalog.]owner.sequence;  
TABLE [container.|catalog.]owner.table;
```

Use NOPASSTHRU if the data pump will be filtering or converting data, and also use the SOURCEDB and USERIDALIAS parameters as appropriate for the database, to enable definitions lookups. If the data pump will not be filtering or converting data, use PASSTHRU to bypass the lookups.

## 7.3.2 Target System

Configure the Manager process and primary Replicat groups for the target system.

### To configure the Manager process

1. Configure the Manager process. See [Chapter 3, "Configuring Manager and Network Communications"](#) for instructions.
2. In the Manager parameter file, use the PURGEOLDEXTRACTS parameter to control the purging of files from the trail.

### To configure the Replicat groups

1. On the target, create a Replicat checkpoint table (unless using Oracle integrated Replicat). See [Section 14.3, "Creating a Checkpoint Table"](#) for instructions.
2. On the target, use the ADD REPLICAT command to create a Replicat group for each remote trail that you created. For documentation purposes, these groups are called *rep\_1* and *rep\_2*.

Command to add *rep\_1*:

```
ADD REPLICAT rep_1
[, INTEGRATED | COORDINATED [MAXTHREADS number]]
, EXTTRAIL remote_trail_1, BEGIN time
```

Command to add *rep\_2*:

```
ADD REPLICAT rep_2
[, INTEGRATED | COORDINATED [MAXTHREADS number]]
, EXTTRAIL remote_trail_2, BEGIN time
```

Use the EXTTRAIL argument to link the Replicat group to the trail.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other options that may be required for your installation.

3. On the target, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for each Replicat group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

Parameter file for *rep\_1*:

```
-- Identify the Replicat group:
REPLICAT rep_1
-- State whether or not source and target definitions are identical:
SOURCEDEFS full_pathname | ASSUMETARGETDEFS
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:
[TARGETDB dsn_3] [, USERIDALIAS alias]
-- Specify error handling rules:
REPERROR (error, response)
-- Specify tables for delivery and threads if using coordinated Replicat:
MAP [container.|catalog.|owner.table, TARGET owner.table[, DEF template]
[, THREAD (thread_ID)]
[, THREADRANGE (thread_range[, column_list])]
;
```

Parameter file for *rep\_1*:

```
-- Identify the Replicat group:
REPLICAT rep_2
-- State whether or not source and target definitions are identical:
```

```
SOURCEDEFS full_pathname | ASSUMETARGETDEFS
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:
[TARGETDB dsn_3] [, USERIDALIAS alias]
-- Specify error handling rules:
REPERROR (error, response)
-- Specify tables for delivery and threads if using coordinated Replicat:
MAP [container.catalog.owner.table, TARGET owner.table[, DEF template]
[, THREAD (thread_ID)]
[, THREADRANGE (thread_range[, column_list])]]
;
```

You can use any number of MAP statements for any given Replicat group. All MAP statements for a given Replicat group must specify the same objects that are contained in the trail that is linked to the group.



# Configuring Oracle GoldenGate to Maintain a Live Standby Database

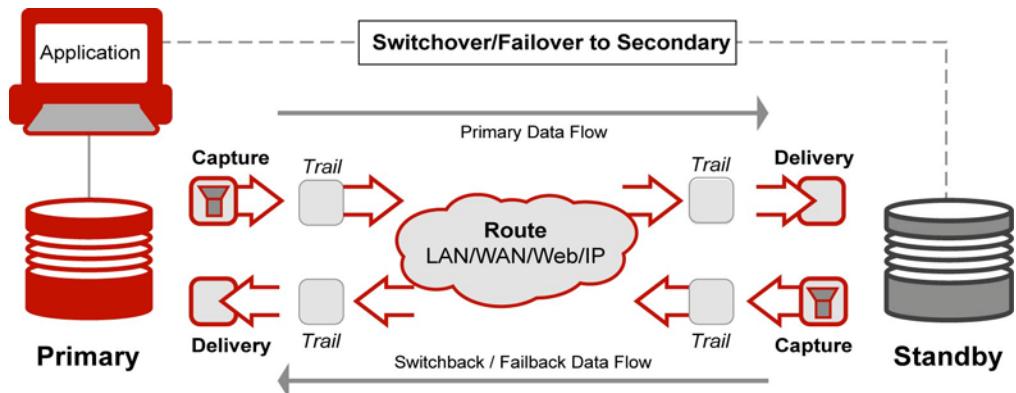
This chapter describes how to configure Oracle GoldenGate to maintain a live standby database.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Overview of a Live Standby Configuration](#)
- [Considerations for a Live Standby Configuration](#)
- [Creating a Live Standby Configuration](#)
- [Configuration from Standby to Active Source](#)
- [Moving User Activity in a Planned Switchover](#)
- [Moving User Activity in an Unplanned Failover](#)

## 8.1 Overview of a Live Standby Configuration

Oracle GoldenGate supports an active-passive bi-directional configuration, where Oracle GoldenGate replicates data from an active primary database to a full replica database on a live standby system that is ready for failover during planned and unplanned outages.



This graphic is a high-level representation that shows an active-passive bi-directional configuration. The active Oracle GoldenGate instance is on the primary system and the passive Oracle GoldenGate instance is on the standby system.

In this configuration, there is an inactive Oracle GoldenGate Extract group and an inactive data pump on the live standby system. Both of those groups remain stopped

until just before user applications are switched to the live standby system in a switchover or failover. When user activity moves to the standby, those groups begin capturing transactions to a local trail, where the data is stored on disk until the primary database can be used again.

In the case of a failure of the primary system, the Oracle GoldenGate Manager and Replicat processes work in conjunction with a database instantiation taken from the standby to restore parity between the two systems after the primary system is recovered. At the appropriate time, users are moved back to the primary system, and Oracle GoldenGate is configured in ready mode again, in preparation for future failovers.

## 8.2 Considerations for a Live Standby Configuration

These sections describe considerations for a live standby configuration.

### 8.2.1 Trusted Source

The primary database is the *trusted source*. This is the database that is the *active source* during normal operating mode, and it is the one from which the other database is derived in the initial synchronization phase and in any subsequent resynchronizations. Maintain frequent backups of the trusted source data.

### 8.2.2 Duplicate Standby

In most implementations of a live standby, the source and target databases are identical in content and structure. Data mapping, conversion, and filtering typically are not appropriate practices in this kind of configuration, but Oracle GoldenGate does support such functionality if required by your business model. To support these functions, use the options of the TABLE and MAP parameters.

### 8.2.3 DML on the Standby System

If your applications permit, you can use the live standby system for reporting and queries, but not DML. If there will be active transactional applications on the live standby system that affect objects in the Oracle GoldenGate configuration, you should configure this as an active-active configuration. See [Chapter 9, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Active-Active High Availability"](#) for more information.

### 8.2.4 Oracle GoldenGate Processes

During normal operating mode, leave the primary Extract and the data pump on the live standby system stopped, and leave the Replicat on the active source stopped. This prevents any DML that occurs accidentally on the standby system from being propagated to the active source. Only the Extract, data pump, and Replicat that move data from the active source to the standby system can be active.

### 8.2.5 Backup Files

Make regular backups of the Oracle GoldenGate working directories on the primary and standby systems. This backup must include all of the files that are installed at the root level of the Oracle GoldenGate installation directory and all of the sub-directories within that directory. Having a backup of the Oracle GoldenGate environment means that you will not have to recreate your process groups and parameter files.

## 8.2.6 Failover Preparedness

Make certain that the primary and live standby systems are ready for immediate user access in the event of a planned switchover or an unplanned source failure. The following components of a high-availability plan should be made easily available for use on each system:

- Scripts that grant insert, update, and delete privileges.
- Scripts that enable triggers and cascaded delete constraints on the live standby system. (These may have been disabled during the setup procedures that were outlined in the Oracle GoldenGate installation and configuration document for your database type.)
- Scripts that switch over the application server, start applications, and copy essential files that are not part of the replication environment.
- A failover procedure for moving users to the live standby if the source system fails.

## 8.2.7 Sequential Values that are Generated by the Database

If database-generated values, such as Oracle sequences, are used as part of a key, the range of values must be different on each system, with no chance of overlap. If the application permits, you can add a location identifier to the value to enforce uniqueness.

For Oracle databases, Oracle GoldenGate can be configured to replicate sequences in a manner that ensures uniqueness on each database. To replicate sequences, use the `SEQUENCE` and `MAP` parameters. For more information, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

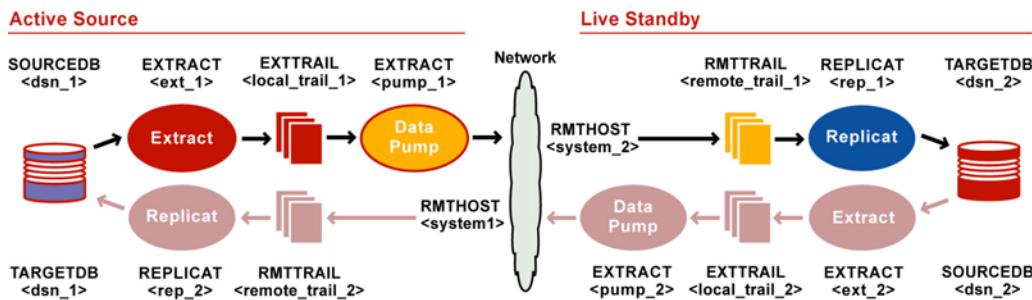
## 8.2.8 Additional Information

The following documentation provides additional information of relevance to configuring Oracle GoldenGate.

- For additional system requirements, process configuration, and database setup requirements, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and configuration document for your database type. These guides are listed under "[Related Documents](#)" in the [Preface](#) of this book.
- For detailed instructions on configuring Oracle GoldenGate change capture and delivery groups, see [Chapter 14, "Configuring Online Change Synchronization."](#)
- For additional tuning options for Oracle GoldenGate, see [Chapter 19, "Tuning the Performance of Oracle GoldenGate."](#)
- For complete syntax and descriptions of the Oracle GoldenGate commands and parameters, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 8.3 Creating a Live Standby Configuration

Refer to [Figure 8–1](#) for a visual representation of the objects you will be creating.

**Figure 8–1 Oracle GoldenGate configuration elements for live standby**

This graphic shows a live standby configuration. The active Oracle GoldenGate capture activity is on the active, or primary, source system. The active Extract writes to a local trail. A local data pump reads this trail and sends the data to a remote trail on the passive standby system. There, an active Replicat applies the data to the standby database. A passive Extract captures the changes through a local trail and data pump on that system, which sends the data to a remote trail on the active source for posting by a Replicat there.

\*\*\*\*\*

### 8.3.1 Prerequisites on Both Systems

Perform the following prerequisites on both systems.

1. Create a Replicat checkpoint table (unless using Oracle integrated Replicat). For instructions, see [Section 14.3, "Creating a Checkpoint Table."](#)
2. Configure the Manager process according to the instructions in [Chapter 3, "Configuring Manager and Network Communications."](#)

### 8.3.2 Configuration from Active Source to Standby

These steps configure Oracle GoldenGate to capture data from the primary database and replicate it to the standby database.

#### To configure the primary Extract group

Perform these steps on the active source.

1. On the source, use the ADD EXTRACT command to create an Extract group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *ext\_1*.

```
ADD EXTRACT ext_1, {TRANLOG | INTEGRATED TRANLOG}, BEGIN time [option[, ...]]
```

See [Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX](#) for detailed information about these and other ADD EXTRACT options that may be required for your installation.

2. Use the ADD EXTTRAIL command to add a local trail. For documentation purposes, this trail is called *local\_trail\_1*.

```
ADD EXTTRAIL local_trail_1, EXTRACT ext_1
```

For EXTRACT, specify the *ext\_1* group to write to this trail.

3. Use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the *ext\_1* group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database

environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

```
-- Identify the Extract group:  
EXTRACT ext_1  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_1] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Log all scheduling columns if using integrated Replicat  
LOGALLSUPCOLS  
-- Specify the local trail that this Extract writes to  
-- and the encryption algorithm:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
EXTTRAIL local_trail_1  
-- Specify sequences to be captured:  
SEQUENCE [container.]owner.sequence;  
-- Specify tables to be captured:  
TABLE [container.]owner.*;
```

### To configure the data pump

Perform these steps on the active source.

1. Use the ADD EXTRACT command to create a data pump group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *pump\_1*.

```
ADD EXTRACT pump_1, EXTTRAILSOURCE local_trail_1, BEGIN time
```

For EXTTRAILSOURCE, specify *local\_trail\_1* as the data source.

2. Use the ADD RMTTRAIL command to specify a remote trail that will be created on the standby system.

```
ADD RMTTRAIL remote_trail_1, EXTRACT pump_1
```

For EXTRACT, specify the *pump\_1* data pump to write to this trail.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for additional ADD RMTTRAIL options.

3. Use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the *pump\_1* group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment.

```
-- Identify the data pump group:  
EXTRACT pump_1  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_1] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Decrypt the data only if the data pump must process it.  
-- DECRYPTTRAIL  
-- Specify the name or IP address of the standby system  
-- and optional encryption of data over TCP/IP:  
RMTHOSTOPTIONS system_2, MGRPORT port_number, ENCRYPT encryption_options  
-- Specify the remote trail and encryption algorithm on the standby system:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
RMTTRAIL remote_trail_1  
-- Pass data through without mapping, filtering, conversion:  
PASSTHRU  
-- Specify sequences to be captured:  
SEQUENCE [container.]owner.sequence;  
-- Specify tables to be captured:  
TABLE [container.]owner.*;
```

---

**Note:** PASSTHRU mode is assumed because source and target data structures are usually identical in a live standby configuration. In this mode, no column mapping, filtering, SQLEXEC functions, transformation, or other data manipulation can be performed.

---

### To configure the Replicat group

Perform these steps on the live standby system.

1. Create a Replicat checkpoint table (unless using Oracle integrated Replicat). See [Section 14.3, "Creating a Checkpoint Table"](#) for instructions.
2. Use the ADD REPLICAT command to create a Replicat group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *rep\_1*.

```
ADD REPLICAT rep_1
[, INTEGRATED | COORDINATED [MAXTHREADS number]]
, EXTTRAIL remote_trail_1, BEGIN time
```

For EXTTRAIL, specify *remote\_trail\_1* as the trail that this Replicat reads.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other options that may be required for your installation.

3. Use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the *rep\_1* group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

```
-- Identify the Replicat group:
REPLICAT rep_1
-- State that source and target definitions are identical:
ASSUMETARGETDEFS
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:
[TARGETDB dsn_2][, USERIDALIAS alias]
-- Specify error handling rules:
REPERROR (error, response)
-- Specify tables for delivery and threads if using coordinated Replicat:
MAP [container.]catalog.owner.table, TARGET owner.table[, DEF template]
[, THREAD (thread_ID)]
[, THREADRANGE (thread_range[, column_list])]
;
```

## 8.4 Configuration from Standby to Active Source

These steps configure Oracle GoldenGate in passive mode. In this mode, the Oracle GoldenGate processes are ready, but not started, to capture data from the secondary database and replicate it to the primary database after a switchover of transaction activity to the secondary system.

---

**Note:** This is a reverse image of the configuration that you just created.

---

### To configure the primary Extract group

Perform these steps on the live standby system.

1. On the source, use the ADD EXTRACT command to create an Extract group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *ext\_2*.

---

```
ADD EXTRACT ext_2, {TRANLOG | INTEGRATED TRANLOG}, BEGIN time [option[, ...]]
```

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other ADD EXTRACT options that may be required for your installation.

2. Use the ADD EXTTRAIL command to add a local trail. For documentation purposes, this trail is called *local\_trail\_2*.

```
ADD EXTTRAIL local_trail_2, EXTRACT ext_2
```

For EXTRACT, specify the *ext\_2* group to write to this trail.

3. Use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the *ext\_2* group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

```
-- Identify the Extract group:  
EXTRACT ext_2  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_2] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Log all scheduling columns if using integrated Replicat  
LOGALLSUPCOLS  
-- Specify the local trail this Extract writes to and the encryption algorithm:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
EXTTRAIL local_trail_2  
-- Specify sequences to be captured:  
SEQUENCE [container.]owner.sequence;  
-- Specify tables to be captured:  
TABLE [container.]owner.*;
```

### To configure the data pump

Perform these steps on the live standby system.

1. Use the ADD EXTRACT command to create a data pump group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *pump\_2*.

```
ADD EXTRACT pump_2, EXTTRAILSOURCE local_trail_2, BEGIN time
```

For EXTTRAILSOURCE, specify *local\_trail\_2* as the data source.

2. Use the ADD RMTTRAIL command to add a remote trail *remote\_trail\_2* that will be created on the active source system.

```
ADD RMTTRAIL remote_trail_2, EXTRACT pump_2
```

For EXTRACT, specify the *pump\_2* data pump to write to this trail.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for additional ADD RMTTRAIL options.

3. Use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the *pump\_2* group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment.

```
-- Identify the data pump group:  
EXTRACT pump_2  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_2] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Decrypt the data only if the data pump must process it.  
-- DECRYPTTRAIL  
-- Specify the name or IP address of the active source system
```

```
-- and optional encryption of data over TCP/IP:  
RMTHOSTOPTIONS system_1, MGRPORT port_number, ENCRYPT encryption_options  
-- Specify remote trail and encryption algorithm on active source system:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
RMTTRAIL remote_trail_2  
-- Pass data through without mapping, filtering, conversion:  
PASSTHRU  
-- Specify sequences to be captured:  
SEQUENCE [container.]owner.sequence;  
-- Specify tables to be captured:  
TABLE [container.]owner.*;
```

### To configure the Replicat group

Perform these steps on the active source.

1. Use the ADD REPLICAT command to create a Replicat group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *rep\_2*.

```
ADD REPLICAT rep_2  
[, INTEGRATED | COORDINATED [MAXTHREADS number]]  
, EXTTRAIL remote_trail_1, BEGIN time
```

For EXTTRAIL, specify *remote\_trail\_2* as the trail that this Replicat reads.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other options that may be required for your installation.

2. Use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the *rep\_2* group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

```
-- Identify the Replicat group:  
REPLICAT rep_2  
-- State that source and target definitions are identical:  
ASSUMETARGETDEFS  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[TARGETDB dsn_1][, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Handle collisions between failback data copy and replication:  
HANDLECOLLISIONS  
-- Specify error handling rules:  
REPERROR (error, response)  
-- Specify tables for delivery and threads if using coordinated Replicat:  
MAP [container.|catalog.]owner.table, TARGET owner.table[, DEF template]  
[, THREAD (thread_ID)]  
[, THREADRANGE (thread_range[, column_list])]  
;
```

## 8.5 Moving User Activity in a Planned Switchover

This procedure moves user application activity from a primary database to a live standby system in a planned, graceful manner so that system maintenance and other procedures that do not affect the databases can be performed on the primary system.

### 8.5.1 Moving User Activity to the Live Standby

To move user activity to the live standby:

1. (Optional) If you need to perform system maintenance on the secondary system, you can do so now or at the specified time later in these procedures, after moving

users from the secondary system back to the primary system. In either case, be aware of the following risks if you must shut down the secondary system for any length of time:

- The local trail on the primary system could run out of disk space as data accumulates while the standby is offline. This will cause the primary Extract to abend.
  - If the primary system fails while the standby is offline, the data changes will not be available to be applied to the live standby when it is functional again, thereby breaking the synchronized state and requiring a full re-instantiation of the live standby.
2. On the **primary** system, stop the user applications, but leave the primary Extract and the data pump on that system running so that they capture any backlogged transaction data.
  3. On the **primary** system, issue the following command for the primary Extract until it returns "At EOF, no more records to process." This indicates that all transactions are now captured.

```
LAG EXTRACT ext_1
```

4. On the **primary** system, stop the primary Extract process

```
STOP EXTRACT ext_1
```

5. On the **primary** system, issue the following command for the data pump until it returns "At EOF, no more records to process." This indicates that the pump sent all of the captured data to the live standby.

```
LAG EXTRACT pump_1
```

6. On the **primary** system, stop the data pump.

```
STOP EXTRACT pump_1
```

7. On the **live standby** system, issue the STATUS REPLICAT command until it returns "At EOF (end of file)." This confirms that Replicat applied all of the data from the trail to the database.

```
STATUS REPLICAT rep_1
```

8. On the **live standby** system, stop Replicat.

```
STOP REPLICAT rep_1
```

9. On the **live standby** system, do the following:

- Run the script that grants insert, update, and delete permissions to the users of the business applications.
  - Run the script that enables triggers and cascade delete constraints.
  - Run the scripts that switch over the application server, start applications, and copy essential files that are not part of the replication environment.
10. On the **live standby** system, alter the primary Extract to begin capturing data based on the current timestamp. Otherwise, Extract will spend unnecessary time looking for operations that date back to the time that the group was created with the ADD EXTRACT command.

```
ALTER EXTRACT ext_2, BEGIN NOW
```

11. On the **live standby** system, start the primary Extract so that it is ready to capture transactional changes.

```
START EXTRACT ext_2
```

---

**Note:** Do not start the data pump on the **live standby** system, and do not start the Replicat on the **primary** system. Data must be stored in the local trail on the live standby until the primary database is ready for user activity again.

---

12. Switch user activity to the **live standby** system.
13. On the **primary system**, perform the system maintenance.

### 8.5.2 Moving User Activity Back to the Primary System

To move user activity back to the primary system:

1. On the **live standby** system, stop the user applications, but leave the primary Extract running so that it captures any backlogged transaction data.
2. On the **primary** system, start Replicat in preparation to receive changes from the live standby system.

```
START REPLICAT rep_2
```

3. On the **live standby** system, start the data pump to begin moving the data that is stored in the local trail across TCP/IP to the primary system.

```
START EXTRACT pump_2
```

4. On the **live standby** system, issue the following command for the primary Extract until it returns "At EOF, no more records to process." This indicates that all transactions are now captured.

```
LAG EXTRACT ext_2
```

5. On the **live standby** system, stop the primary Extract.

```
STOP EXTRACT ext_2
```

6. On the **live standby** system, issue the following command for the data pump until it returns "At EOF, no more records to process." This indicates that the pump sent all of the captured data to the primary system.

```
LAG EXTRACT pump_2
```

7. On the **live standby** system, stop the data pump.

```
STOP EXTRACT pump_2
```

8. On the **primary** system, issue the STATUS REPLICAT command until it returns "At EOF (end of file)." This confirms that Replicat applied all of the data from the trail to the database.

```
STATUS REPLICAT rep_2
```

9. On the **primary** system, stop Replicat.

```
STOP REPLICAT rep_2
```

10. On the **primary** system, do the following:
  - Run the script that grants insert, update, and delete permissions to the users of the business applications.
  - Run the script that enables triggers and cascade delete constraints.
  - Run the scripts that switch over the application server, start applications, and copy essential files that are not part of the replication environment.
11. On the **primary** system, alter the primary Extract to begin capturing data based on the current timestamp. Otherwise, Extract will spend unnecessary time looking for operations that were already captured and replicated while users were working on the standby system.

```
ALTER EXTRACT ext_1, BEGIN NOW
```

12. On the **primary** system, start the primary Extract so that it is ready to capture transactional changes.

```
START EXTRACT ext_1
```

13. Switch user activity to the **primary** system.
14. (Optional) If system maintenance must be done on the **live standby** system, you can do it now, before starting the data pump on the primary system. Note that captured data will be accumulating on the primary system while the standby is offline.

15. On the **primary** system, start the data pump.

```
START EXTRACT pump_1
```

16. On the **live standby** system, start Replicat.

```
START REPLICAT rep_1
```

## 8.6 Moving User Activity in an Unplanned Failover

These sections describe how to move user activity in an unplanned failover.

### 8.6.1 Moving User Activity to the Live Standby

This procedure does the following:

- Prepares the live standby for user activity.
- Ensures that all transactions from the primary system are applied to the live standby.
- Activates Oracle GoldenGate to capture transactional changes on the live standby.
- Moves users to the live standby system.

Perform these steps on the live standby system

#### To move users to the live standby

1. Issue the STATUS REPLICAT command until it returns "At EOF (end of file)" to confirm that Replicat applied all of the data from the trail to the database.

```
STATUS REPLICAT rep_1
```

2. Stop the Replicat process.

```
STOP REPLICAT rep_1
```

3. Run the script that grants insert, update, and delete permissions to the users of the business applications.
4. Run the script that enables triggers and cascade delete constraints.
5. Run the scripts that fail over the application server, start applications, and copy essential files that are not part of the replication environment.
6. Start the primary Extract process on the live standby.

```
START EXTRACT ext_2
```

7. Move the users to the standby system and let them start working.

---

**Note:** Do not start the data pump group on the standby. The user transactions must accumulate there until just before user activity is moved back to the primary system.

---

## 8.6.2 Moving User Activity Back to the Primary System

This procedure does the following:

- Recovers the Oracle GoldenGate environment.
- Makes a copy of the live standby data to the restored primary system.
- Propagates user transactions that occurred while the copy was being made.
- Reconciles the results of the copy with the propagated changes.
- Moves users from the standby system to the restored primary system.
- Prepares replication to maintain the live standby again.

Perform these steps after the recovery of the primary system is complete.

### To recover the source Oracle GoldenGate environment

1. On the **primary** system, recover the Oracle GoldenGate directory from your backups.
  2. On the **primary** system, run GGSCI.
  3. On the **primary** system, delete the primary Extract group.
- ```
DELETE EXTRACT ext_1
```
4. On the **primary** system, delete the local trail.
- ```
DELETE EXTTRAIL local_trail_1
```
5. On the **primary** system, add the primary Extract group again, using the same name so that it matches the parameter file that you restored from backup. For documentation purposes, this group is called *ext\_1*. This step initializes the Extract checkpoint from its state before the failure to a clean state.

```
ADD EXTRACT ext_1, {TRANLOG | INTEGRATED TRANLOG}, BEGIN time
[, THREADS n]
```

- For TRANLOG and INTEGRATED TRANLOG, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*. INTEGRATED TRANLOG enables integrated capture for an Oracle database.
6. On the **primary** system, add the local trail again, using the same name as before. For documentation purposes, this trail is called *local\_trail\_1*.

```
ADD EXTTRAIL local_trail_1, EXTRACT ext_1
```

- For EXTRACT, specify the *ext\_1* group to write to this trail.
7. On the **primary** system, start the Manager process.

```
START MANAGER
```

#### To copy the database from standby to primary system

1. On the **primary** system, run scripts to disable triggers and cascade delete constraints.
2. On the **standby** system, start making a hot copy of the database.
3. On the **standby** system, record the time at which the copy finishes.
4. On the **standby system**, stop user access to the applications. Allow all open transactions to be completed.

#### To propagate data changes made during the copy

1. On the **primary** system, start Replicat.

```
START REPLICAT rep_2
```

2. On the **live standby** system, start the data pump. This begins transmission of the accumulated user transactions from the standby to the trail on the primary system.

```
START EXTRACT pump_2
```

3. On the **primary** system, issue the INFO REPLICAT command until you see that it posted all of the data changes that users generated on the standby system during the initial load. Refer to the time that you recorded previously. For example, if the copy stopped at 12:05, make sure that change replication has posted data up to that point.

```
INFO REPLICAT rep_2
```

4. On the **primary** system, issue the following command to turn off the HANDLECOLLISIONS parameter and disable the initial-load error handling.

```
SEND REPLICAT rep_2, NOHANDLECOLLISIONS
```

5. On the **primary** system, issue the STATUS REPLICAT command until it returns "At EOF (end of file)" to confirm that Replicat applied all of the data from the trail to the database.

```
STATUS REPLICAT rep_2
```

6. On the **live standby** system, stop the data pump. This stops transmission of any user transactions from the standby to the trail on the primary system.

```
STOP EXTRACT pump_2
```

7. On the **primary** system, stop the Replicat process.

```
STOP REPLICAT rep_2
```

At this point in time, the primary and standby databases should be in a state of synchronization again.

**(Optional) To verify synchronization**

1. Use a compare tool, such as Oracle GoldenGate Veridata, to compare the source and standby databases for parity.
2. Use a repair tool, such as Oracle GoldenGate Veridata, to repair any out-of-sync conditions.

**To switch users to the primary system**

1. On the **primary** system, run the script that grants insert, update, and delete permissions to the users of the business applications.
2. On the **primary** system, run the script that enables triggers and cascade delete constraints.
3. On the **primary** system, run the scripts that fail over the application server, start applications, and copy essential files that are not part of the replication environment.
4. On the **primary** system, start the primary Extract process.

START EXTRACT ext\_1

5. On the **primary** system, allow users to access the applications.

---

# Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Active-Active High Availability

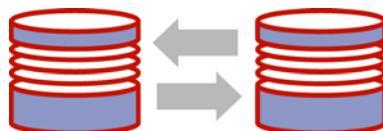
This chapter describes how to configure Oracle GoldenGate for active-active high availability.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Overview of an Active-active Configuration](#)
- [Considerations for an Active-Active Configuration](#)
- [Preventing Data Looping](#)
- [Managing Conflicts](#)
- [Additional Information](#)
- [Creating an Active-Active Configuration](#)

## 9.1 Overview of an Active-active Configuration

Oracle GoldenGate supports an active-active bi-directional configuration, where there are two systems with identical sets of data that can be changed by application users on either system. Oracle GoldenGate replicates transactional data changes from each database to the other to keep both sets of data current.



This graphic shows an active-active bi-directional configuration where two systems with identical sets of data replicate transactional data changes from each database to the other.

In a bi-directional configuration, there is a complete set of active Oracle GoldenGate processes on each system. Data captured by an Extract process on one system is propagated to the other system, where it is applied by a local Replicat process.

This configuration supports load sharing. It can be used for disaster tolerance if the business applications are identical on any two peers. Bidirectional synchronization is supported for all database types that are supported by Oracle GoldenGate.

Oracle GoldenGate supports active-active configurations for:

- DB2 on z/OS, LUW, and IBM i
- MySQL

- Oracle
- SQL/MX
- SQL Server
- Sybase
- Teradata

Oracle GoldenGate supports DDL replication in an Oracle active-active configuration. DDL support is available for Oracle and Teradata databases.

## 9.2 Considerations for an Active-Active Configuration

The following considerations apply in an active-active configuration. In addition, review the Oracle GoldenGate installation and configuration document for your type of database to see if there are any other limitations or requirements to support a bi-directional configuration.

### 9.2.1 TRUNCATES

Bi-directional replication of TRUNCATES is not supported, but you can configure these operations to be replicated in one direction, while data is replicated in both directions. To replicate TRUNCATES (if supported by Oracle GoldenGate for the database) in an active-active configuration, the TRUNCATES must originate only from one database, and only from the same database each time.

Configure the environment as follows:

- Configure all database roles so that they cannot execute TRUNCATE from any database other than the one that is designated for this purpose.
- On the system where TRUNCATE will be permitted, configure the Extract and Replicat parameter files to contain the GETTRUNCATES parameter.
- On the other system, configure the Extract and Replicat parameter files to contain the IGNORETRUNCATES parameter. No TRUNCATES should be performed on this system by applications that are part of the Oracle GoldenGate configuration.

### 9.2.2 Application Design

When using Active-Active replication, the time zones must be the same on both systems so that timestamp-based conflict resolution and detection can operate.

Active-active replication is not recommended for use with commercially available packaged business applications, unless the application is designed to support it. Among the obstacles that these applications present are:

- Packaged applications might contain objects and data types that are not supported by Oracle GoldenGate.
- They might perform automatic DML operations that you cannot control, but which will be replicated by Oracle GoldenGate and cause conflicts when applied by Replicat.
- You probably cannot control the data structures to make modifications that are required for active-active replication.

### 9.2.3 Keys

For accurate detection of conflicts, all records must have a unique, not-null identifier. If possible, create a primary key. If that is not possible, use a unique key or create a substitute key with a KEYCOLS option of the MAP and TABLE parameters. In the absence of a unique identifier, Oracle GoldenGate uses all of the columns that are valid in a WHERE clause, but this will degrade performance if the table contains numerous columns.

To maintain data integrity and prevent errors, the following must be true of the key that you use for any given table:

- contain the same columns in all of the databases where that table resides.
- contain the same values in each set of corresponding rows across the databases.

### 9.2.4 Triggers and Cascaded Deletes

Triggers and ON DELETE CASCADE constraints generate DML operations that can be replicated by Oracle GoldenGate. To prevent the local DML from conflicting with the replicated DML from these operations, do the following:

- Modify triggers to ignore DML operations that are applied by Replicat. If the target is an Oracle database, Replicat handles triggers without any additional configuration when in integrated mode. Parameter options are available for a nonintegrated Replicat for Oracle. See *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database*.
- Disable ON DELETE CASCADE constraints and use a trigger on the parent table to perform the required delete(s) to the child tables. Create it as a BEFORE trigger so that the child tables are deleted before the delete operation is performed on the parent table. This reverses the logical order of a cascaded delete but is necessary so that the operations are replicated in the correct order to prevent "table not found" errors on the target. (Note: For Oracle targets, if Replicat is in integrated mode, constraints are handled automatically without special configuration.)

---

**Note:** IDENTITY columns cannot be used with bidirectional configurations for Sybase. See other IDENTITY limitations for SQL Server in *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for SQL Server*.

---

### 9.2.5 Database-Generated Values

Do not replicate database-generated sequential values, such as Oracle sequences, in a bi-directional configuration. The range of values must be different on each system, with no chance of overlap. For example, in a two-database environment, you can have one server generate even values, and the other odd. For an  $n$ -server environment, start each key at a different value and increment the values by the number of servers in the environment. This method may not be available to all types of applications or databases. If the application permits, you can add a location identifier to the value to enforce uniqueness.

### 9.2.6 Database Configuration

One of the databases must be designated as the *trusted source*. This is the primary database and its host system from which the other database is derived in the initial synchronization phase and in any subsequent resynchronizations that become necessary. Maintain frequent backups of the trusted source data.

## 9.3 Preventing Data Looping

In a bidirectional configuration, SQL changes that are replicated from one system to another must be prevented from being replicated back to the first system. Otherwise, it moves back and forth in an endless loop, as in this example:

1. A user application updates a row on system A.
2. Extract extracts the row on system A and sends it to system B.
3. Replicat updates the row on system B.
4. Extract extracts the row on system B and sends it back to system A.
5. The row is applied on system A (for the second time).
6. This loop continues endlessly.

To prevent data loopback, you may need to provide instructions that:

- prevent the capture of SQL operations that are generated by Replicat, but enable the capture of SQL operations that are generated by business applications if they contain objects that are specified in the Extract parameter file.
- identify local Replicat transactions, in order for the Extract process to ignore them.

### 9.3.1 Preventing the Capture of Replicat Operations

Depending on which database you are using, you may or may not need to provide explicit instructions to prevent the capture of Replicat operations.

#### 9.3.1.1 Preventing the Capture of Replicat Transactions (Oracle)

To prevent the capture of SQL that is applied by Replicat to an Oracle database, there are different options depending on the Extract capture mode:

- When Extract is in classic or integrated capture mode, use the TRANLOGOPTIONS parameter with the EXCLUDETAG *tag* option. This parameter directs the Extract process to ignore transactions that are tagged with the specified redo tag. See [Section 9.3.2](#) to set the tag value.
- When Extract is in classic capture mode, use the Extract TRANLOGOPTIONS parameter with the EXCLUDEUSER or EXCLUDEUSERID option to exclude the user name or ID that is used by Replicat to apply transactions. Multiple EXCLUDEUSER statements can be used. The specified user is subject to the rules of the GETREPLICATES or IGNOREREPLICATES parameter. See [Section 9.3.1.3](#) for more information.

#### 9.3.1.2 Preventing Capture of Replicat Transactions (Teradata)

To prevent the capture of SQL that is applied by Replicat to a Teradata database, set the Replicat session to override Teradata replication. Use the following SQLEXEC statements at the root level of the Replicat parameter file:

```
SQLEXEC 'SET SESSION OVERRIDE REPLICATION ON;'  
SQLEXEC 'COMMIT;'
```

These SQLEXEC statements execute a procedure that sets the Replicat session automatically at startup.

### 9.3.1.3 Preventing Capture of Replicat Transactions (Other Databases)

To prevent the capture of SQL that is applied by Replicat to other database types (including Oracle, if Extract operates in classic capture mode), use the following parameters:

- `GETAPPLOPS | IGNOREAPPLOPS`: Controls whether or not data operations (DML) produced by business applications *except Replicat* are included in the content that Extract writes to a specific trail or file.
- `GETREPLICATES | IGNOREREPLICATES`: Controls whether or not DML operations produced by *Replicat* are included in the content that Extract writes to a specific trail or file.

## 9.3.2 Identifying Replicat Transactions

To configure Extract to identify Replicat transactions, follow the instructions for the database from which Extract will capture data.

### 9.3.2.1 DB2 on z/OS, LUW, IBM i, and Informix

Identify the Replicat user name by using the following parameter statement in the Extract parameter file.

```
TRANLOGOPTIONS EXCLUDEUSER user
```

This parameter statement marks all data transactions that are generated by this user as Replicat transactions. The user name is included in the transaction record that is read by Extract.

---

**Note:** With Informix, Oracle GoldenGate Replicat processes always perform a `DELETE` operation on the target database when the source operation (in the trail) is `TRUNCATE`.

---

### 9.3.2.2 MySQL and NonStop SQL/MX

Identify the name of the Replicat checkpoint table by using the following parameter statement in the Extract parameter file.

```
TRANLOGOPTIONS FILTERTABLE table_name
```

Replicat writes a checkpoint to the checkpoint table at the end of each of its transactions as part of its checkpoint procedure. (This is the table that is created with the `ADD CHECKPOINTTABLE` command.) Because every Replicat transaction includes a write to this table, it can be used to identify Replicat transactions in a bi-directional configuration. `FILTERTABLE` identifies the name of the checkpoint table, so that Extract ignores transactions that contain any operations on it.

---

**Note:** `PURGEDATA` is not supported for NonStop SQL/MX in a bidirectional configuration. Because `PURGEDATA/TRUNCATE` operations are DDL, they are implicit transactions, so Oracle GoldenGate cannot update the checkpoint table within that transaction.

---

### 9.3.2.3 Oracle

There are multiple ways to identify Replicat transaction in an Oracle environment. When Replicat is in classic or integrated mode, you use the following parameters:

- Use DBOPTIONS with the SETTAG option in the Replicat parameter file. Replicat tags the transactions being applied with the specified value, which identifies those transactions in the redo stream. The default SETTAG value is 00. Valid values are a single TAG value consisting of hexadecimal digits. For more information about tags, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.
- Use the TRANLOGOPTIONS parameter with the EXCLUDETAG option in the Extract parameter file. The logmining server associated with that Extract excludes redo that is tagged with the SETTAG value.

The following shows how SETTAG can be set in the Replicat parameter file:

```
DBOPTIONS SETTAG 0935
```

The following shows how EXCLUDETAG can be set in the Extract parameter file:

```
TRANLOGOPTIONS EXCLUDETAG 0935
```

If you are excluding multiple tags, each must have a separate TRANLOGOPTIONS EXCLUDETAG statement specified.

You can also use the transaction name or userid of the Replicat user to identify Replicat transactions. You can choose which of these to ignore when you configure Extract. See [Section 9.3.1.1](#).

For more information, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

#### 9.3.2.4 SQL Server

Identify the Replicat transaction name by using the following parameter statement in the Extract parameter file.

```
TRANLOGOPTIONS EXCLUDETRANS transaction_name
```

This parameter statement is only required if the Replicat transaction name is set to something other than the default of ggs\_repl.

#### 9.3.2.5 Sybase

Do any of the following:

- Identify a Replicat transaction name by using the following parameter statement in the Extract parameter file.

```
TRANLOGOPTIONS EXCLUDETRANS transaction_name
```

- Identify the Replicat user name by using the following parameter statement in the Extract parameter file.

```
TRANLOGOPTIONS EXCLUDEUSER user_name
```

EXCLUDEUSER marks all transactions generated by this user as Replicat transactions. The user name is included in the transaction record that is read by Extract.

- Do nothing and allow Replicat to use the default transaction name of ggs\_repl.

#### 9.3.2.6 Teradata

You do not need to identify Replicat transactions that are applied to a Teradata database.

### 9.3.3 Replicating DDL in a Bi-directional Configuration

Additional consideration must be taken when replicating DDL, currently supported for Oracle and Teradata. For more information, see the following:

- *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database*
- *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Teradata*

## 9.4 Managing Conflicts

Uniform conflict-resolution procedures must be in place on all systems in an active-active configuration. Conflicts should be identified immediately and handled with as much automation as possible; however, different business applications will present their own unique set of requirements in this area.

Because Oracle GoldenGate is an asynchronous solution, conflicts can occur when modifications are made to identical sets of data on separate systems at (or almost at) the same time. Conflicts occur when the timing of simultaneous changes results in one of these out-of-sync conditions:

- A **uniqueness conflict** occurs when Replicat applies an insert or update operation that violates a uniqueness integrity constraint, such as a PRIMARY KEY or UNIQUE constraint. An example of this conflict type is when two transactions originate from two different databases, and each one inserts a row into a table with the same primary key value.
- An **update conflict** occurs when Replicat applies an update that conflicts with another update to the same row. Update conflicts happen when two transactions that originate from different databases update the same row at nearly the same time. Replicat detects an update conflict when there is a difference between the old values (the before values) that are stored in the trail record and the current values of the same row in the target database.
- A **delete conflict** occurs when two transactions originate at different databases, and one deletes a row while the other updates or deletes the same row. In this case, the row does not exist to be either updated or deleted. Replicat cannot find the row because the primary key does not exist.

For example, UserA on DatabaseA updates a row, and UserB on DatabaseB updates the same row. If UserB's transaction occurs before UserA's transaction is synchronized to DatabaseB, there will be a conflict on the replicated transaction.

A more complicated example involves three databases and illustrates a more complex ordering conflict. Assume three databases A, B, and C. Suppose a user inserts a row at database A, which is then replicated to database B. Another user then modifies the row at database B, and the row modification is replicated to database C. If the row modification from B arrives at database C before the row insert from database A, C will detect a conflict.

Where possible, try to minimize or eliminate any chance of conflict. Some ways to do so are:

- Configure the applications to restrict which columns can be modified in each database. For example, you could limit access based on geographical area, such as by allowing different sales regions to modify only the records of their own customers. As another example, you could allow a customer service application on one database to modify only the NAME and ADDRESS columns of a customer table, while allowing a financial application on another database to modify only the

BALANCE column. In each of those cases, there cannot be a conflict caused by concurrent updates to the same record.

- Keep synchronization latency low. If UserA on DatabaseA and UserB on DatabaseB both update the same rows at about the same time, and UserA's transaction gets replicated to the target row before UserB's transaction is completed, conflict is avoided. See [Chapter 19, "Tuning the Performance of Oracle GoldenGate"](#) for suggestions on improving the performance of the Oracle GoldenGate processes.

To avoid conflicts, replication latency must be kept as low as possible. When conflicts are unavoidable, they must be identified immediately and resolved with as much automation as possible, either through the Oracle GoldenGate Conflict Detection and Resolution (CDR) feature, or through methods developed on your own. Custom methods can be integrated into Oracle GoldenGate processing through the SQLEXEC and user exit functionality. See [Chapter 10, "Configuring Conflict Detection and Resolution"](#) for more information about using Oracle GoldenGate to handle conflicts.

## 9.5 Additional Information

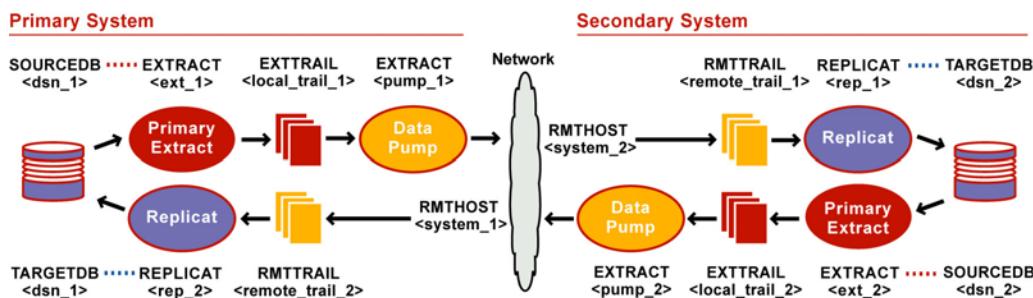
The following documentation provides additional information of relevance to configuring Oracle GoldenGate.

- For additional system requirements, process configuration, and database setup requirements, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and configuration document for your database type. These guides are listed under "[Related Documents](#)" in the [Preface](#) of this book.
- For detailed instructions on configuring Oracle GoldenGate change capture and delivery groups, see [Chapter 14, "Configuring Online Change Synchronization."](#)
- For additional tuning options for Oracle GoldenGate, see [Chapter 19, "Tuning the Performance of Oracle GoldenGate."](#)
- For complete syntax and descriptions of the Oracle GoldenGate commands and parameters, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 9.6 Creating an Active-Active Configuration

Refer to [Figure 9-1](#) for a visual representation of the objects you will be creating.

**Figure 9-1 Oracle GoldenGate Configuration for Active-active Synchronization**



This graphic shows the Oracle GoldenGate configuration for active-active synchronization. On both a primary system and a secondary system, there is a complete set of active Oracle GoldenGate processes. Extract on one system writes to a local trail, which is read by a data pump on that system. The data pump sends data to

a remote trail on the other system, which is read by a Replicat there to apply the data. The same processing is performed by another set of processes sending data in the other direction. Loopback and collisions are handled through configuration parameters.

---

### 9.6.1 Prerequisites on Both Systems

Perform these prerequisite tasks on both systems:

1. Create a Replicat checkpoint table (unless using Oracle integrated Replicat). See [Section 14.3, "Creating a Checkpoint Table"](#) for instructions.
2. Configure the Manager process. See [Chapter 3, "Configuring Manager and Network Communications"](#) for instructions.

### 9.6.2 Configuration from Primary System to Secondary System

These steps add the processes necessary to send data from the primary system to the secondary database.

#### To configure the primary Extract group

Perform these steps on the primary system.

1. Use the ADD EXTRACT command to create a primary Extract group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *ext\_1*.

```
ADD EXTRACT ext_1, {TRANLOG | INTEGRATED TRANLOG}, BEGIN time
```

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other ADD EXTRACT options that may be required for your installation.

2. Use the ADD EXTTRAIL command to add a local trail. For documentation purposes, this trail is called *local\_trail\_1*.

```
ADD EXTTRAIL local_trail_1, EXTRACT ext_1
```

For EXTRACT, specify the *ext\_1* group to write to this trail

3. Use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the *ext\_1* group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

```
-- Identify the Extract group:  
EXTRACT ext_1  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_1] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Specify the local trail that this Extract writes to  
-- and the encryption algorithm:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
EXTTRAIL local_trail_1  
-- Exclude Replicat transactions. Uncomment ONE of the following:  
-- DB2 z/OS, DB2 LUW, DB2 IBM i, Oracle (classic capture), and  
-- Sybase:  
-- TRANLOGOPTIONS EXCLUDEUSER Replicat_user  
-- Oracle (classic capture) alternative to EXCLUDEUSER:  
-- EXCLUDEUSERID Oracle_uid  
-- Oracle integrated capture:
```

```
-- EXCLUDETAG tag
-- SQL Server and Sybase:
-- TRANLOGOPTIONS EXCLUDETRANS transaction_name
-- SQL/MX:
-- TRANLOGOPTIONS FILTERTABLE checkpoint_table_name
-- Teradata:
-- SQLEXEC 'SET SESSION OVERRIDE REPLICATION ON;'
-- SQLEXEC 'COMMIT;'
-- Specify API commands if Teradata:
VAM library name, PARAMS ('param' [, 'param'] [, ...])
-- Capture before images for conflict resolution:
GETBEFORECOLS (ON operation {ALL | KEY | KEYINCLUDING (col_list) | ALLEXCLUDING (col_list)})
-- Log all scheduling columns for CDR and if using integrated Replicat
LOGALLSUPCOLUMNS
-- Specify tables to be captured and (optional) columns to fetch:
TABLE [container.|catalog.]owner.* [, FETCHCOLS cols | FETCHCOLSEXCEPT cols];
```

### To configure the data pump

Perform these steps on the primary system.

1. Use the ADD EXTRACT command to create a data pump group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *pump\_1*.

```
ADD EXTRACT pump_1, EXTTRAILSOURCE local_trail_1, BEGIN time
```

For EXTTRAILSOURCE, specify *local\_trail\_1* as the data source.

2. Use the ADD RMTTRAIL command to add a remote trail that will be created on the secondary system. For documentation purposes, this trail is called *remote\_trail\_1*.

```
ADD RMTTRAIL remote_trail_1, EXTRACT pump_1
```

For EXTRACT, specify the *pump\_1* data pump to write to this trail.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for additional ADD RMTTRAIL options.

3. Use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the *pump\_1* group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment.

```
-- Identify the data pump group:
EXTRACT pump_1
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:
[SOURCEDB dsn_1] [, USERIDALIAS alias]
-- Decrypt the data only if the data pump must process it.
-- DECRYPTTRAIL
-- Specify the name or IP address of the secondary system
-- and optional encryption of data over TCP/IP:
RMTHOSTOPTIONS system_2, MGRPORT port_number, ENCRYPT encryption_options
-- Specify remote trail and encryption algorithm on secondary system:
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm
RMTTRAIL remote_trail_1
-- Pass data through without mapping, filtering, conversion:
PASSTHRU
-- Specify tables to be captured:
TABLE [container.|catalog.]owner.*;
```

---

**Note:** Because data structures are usually identical in a bi-directional configuration, PASSTHRU mode improves performance.

---

### To configure the Replicat group

Perform these steps on the secondary system.

1. Use the ADD REPLICAT command to create a Replicat group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *rep\_1*.

```
ADD REPLICAT rep_1
[, INTEGRATED | COORDINATED [MAXTHREADS number]]
, EXTRAIL remote_trail_1, BEGIN time
```

For EXTRAIL, specify *remote\_trail\_1* as the trail that this Replicat reads.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other options that may be required for your installation.

2. Use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the *rep\_1* group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

```
-- Identify the Replicat group:
REPLICAT rep_1
-- State that source and target definitions are identical:
ASSUMETARGETDEFS
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:
[TARGETDB dsn_2] [, USERIDALIAS alias]
-- Specify error handling rules:
REPERROR (error, response)
-- Set non-default Replicat redo tag (if Extract is in integrated mode)
-- Default is 00.
SETTAG tag_value
-- Specify tables for delivery, threads if coordinated Replicat
-- and conflict-resolution:
MAP [container.|catalog.]owner.* , TARGET owner.* , COMPARECOLS (ON operation
{ALL | KEY | KEYINCLUDING (col_list) | ALLEXCLUDING (col_list)}),
RESOLVECONFLICT (conflict type (resolution_name, resolution_type COLS
(col[,...])))
[, THREAD (thread_ID)]
[, THREADRANGE (thread_range[, column_list])]
;
-- Specify mapping of exceptions to exceptions table:
MAP [container.|catalog.]owner.* , TARGET owner.exceptions, EXCEPTIONSONLY;
```

### 9.6.3 Configuration from Secondary System to Primary System

These steps add the processes necessary to send data from the secondary system to the primary database.

### To configure the primary Extract group

Perform these steps on the secondary system.

---

**Note:** This is a reverse image of the configuration that you just created.

---

1. Use the ADD EXTRACT command to create a primary Extract group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *ext\_2*.

```
ADD EXTRACT ext_2, {TRANLOG | INTEGRATED TRANLOG}, BEGIN time
```

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other ADD EXTRACT options that may be required for your installation.

2. Use the ADD EXTTRAIL command to add a local trail. For documentation purposes, this trail is called *local\_trail\_2*.

```
ADD EXTTRAIL local_trail_2, EXTRACT ext_2
```

For EXTRACT, specify the *ext\_2* group to write to this trail.

3. Use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the *ext\_2* group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

```
-- Identify the Extract group:  
EXTRACT ext_2  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_2] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Specify the local trail that this Extract writes to  
-- and the encryption algorithm:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
EXTTRAIL local_trail_2  
-- Exclude Replicat transactions. Uncomment ONE of the following:  
-- DB2 z/OS, DB2 LUW, DB2 IBM i, Oracle, and Sybase:  
-- TRANLOGOPTIONS EXCLUDEUSER Replicat_user  
-- Oracle alternative to EXCLUDEUSER:  
-- EXCLUDEUSERID Oracle_uid  
-- Oracle integrated capture:  
-- EXCLUDETAG tag  
-- SQL Server and Sybase:  
-- TRANLOGOPTIONS EXCLUDETRANS transaction_name  
-- SQL/MX:  
-- TRANLOGOPTIONS FILTERTABLE checkpoint_table_name  
-- Teradata:  
-- SQLEXEC 'SET SESSION OVERRIDE REPLICATION ON;'  
-- SQLEXEC 'COMMIT;'  
-- Oracle:  
-- TRACETABLE trace_table_name  
-- Log all scheduling columns for CDR and if using integrated Replicat  
LOGALLSUPCOLS  
-- Capture before images for conflict resolution:  
GETBEFORECOLS (ON operation {ALL | KEY | KEYINCLUDING (col_list) | ALLEXCLUDING (col_list)})  
-- Specify tables to be captured and (optional) columns to fetch:  
TABLE [container.]catalog.owner.* [, FETCHCOLS cols | FETCHCOLSEXCEPT cols];
```

---

**Note:** To replicate Oracle DBFS data, specify the internally generated local *read-write* DBFS tables in the TABLE statement on each node. For more information on identifying these tables and configuring DBFS for propagation by Oracle GoldenGate, see *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database*.

---

## To configure the data pump

Perform these steps on the secondary system.

1. Use the ADD EXTRACT command to create a data pump group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *pump\_2*.

```
ADD EXTRACT pump_2, EXTTRAILSOURCE local_trail_2, BEGIN time
```

For EXTTRAILSOURCE, specify *local\_trail\_2* as the data source.

2. Use the ADD RMTTRAIL command to add a remote trail that will be created on the primary system. For documentation purposes, this trail is called *remote\_trail\_2*.

```
ADD RMTTRAIL remote_trail_2, EXTRACT pump_2
```

For EXTRACT, specify the *pump\_2* data pump to write to this trail.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for additional ADD RMTTRAIL options.

3. Use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the *pump\_2* group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment.

```
-- Identify the data pump group:  
EXTRACT pump_2  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[SOURCEDB dsn_2] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Decrypt the data only if the data pump must process it.  
-- DECRYPTTRAIL  
-- Specify the name or IP address of the primary system  
-- and optional encryption of data over TCP/IP:  
RMTHOSTOPTIONS system_1, MGRPORT port_number, ENCRYPT encryption_options  
-- Specify the remote trail and encryption algorithm on the primary system:  
ENCRYPTTRAIL algorithm  
RMTTRAIL remote_trail_2  
-- Pass data through without mapping, filtering, conversion:  
PASSTHRU  
-- Specify tables to be captured:  
TABLE [container.|catalog.]owner.*;
```

---

**Note:** To replicate Oracle DBFS data, specify the internally generated local *read-write* DBFS tables in the TABLE statement on each node. For more information on identifying these tables and configuring DBFS for propagation by Oracle GoldenGate, see *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database*.

---

## To configure the Replicat group

Perform these steps on the primary system.

1. Use the ADD REPLICAT command to create a Replicat group. For documentation purposes, this group is called *rep\_2*.

```
ADD REPLICAT rep_2  
[, INTEGRATED | COORDINATED [MAXTHREADS number]]  
, EXTTRAIL remote_trail_2, BEGIN time
```

For EXTTRAIL, specify *remote\_trail\_2* as the trail that this Replicat reads.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for detailed information about these and other options that may be required for your installation.

2. Use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a parameter file for the *rep\_2* group. Include the following parameters plus any others that apply to your database environment. For possible additional required parameters, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and setup guide for your database.

```
-- Identify the Replicat group:  
REPLICAT rep_2  
-- State that source and target definitions are identical:  
ASSUMETARGETDEFS  
-- Specify database login information as needed for the database:  
[TARGETDB dsn_1] [, USERIDALIAS alias]  
-- Specify error handling rules:  
REPERROR (error, response)  
-- Specify tables for delivery, threads if coordinated Replicat  
-- and conflict-resolution:  
MAP [container.|catalog.]owner.* , TARGET owner.* , COMPARECOLS (ON operation  
{ALL | KEY | KEYINCLUDING (col_list) | ALLEXCLUDING (col_list)}),  
RESOLVECONFLICT (conflict type (resolution_name, resolution_type COLS  
(col[,...]))  
[, THREAD (thread_ID)]  
[, THREADRANGE (thread_range[, column_list])] ]  
;  
-- Specify mapping of exceptions to exceptions table:  
MAP [container.|catalog.]owner.* , TARGET owner.exceptions , EXCEPTIONSONLY;
```

---

**Note:** To replicate Oracle DBFS data, specify the internally generated local *read-write* DBFS tables in the TABLE statement on each node. For more information on identifying these tables and configuring DBFS for propagation by Oracle GoldenGate, see *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database*.

---

# 10

---

## Configuring Conflict Detection and Resolution

This chapter contains instructions for using the Oracle GoldenGate Conflict Detection and Resolution (CDR) feature. Conflict detection and resolution is required in active-active configurations, where Oracle GoldenGate must maintain data synchronization among multiple databases that contain the same data sets.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Overview of the Oracle GoldenGate CDR Feature](#)
- [Configuring Oracle GoldenGate CDR](#)
- [CDR Example 1: All Conflict Types with USEMAX, OVERWRITE, DISCARD](#)
- [CDR Example 2: UPDATEROWEXISTS with USEDELTA and USEMAX](#)
- [CDR Example 3: UPDATEROWEXISTS with USEDELTA, USEMAX, and IGNORE](#)

### 10.1 Overview of the Oracle GoldenGate CDR Feature

Oracle GoldenGate Conflict Detection and Resolution (CDR) provides basic conflict resolution routines that:

- Resolve a uniqueness conflict for an `INSERT`.
- Resolve a "no data found" conflict for an `UPDATE` when the row exists, but the before image of one or more columns is different from the current value in the database.
- Resolve a "no data found" conflict for an `UPDATE` when the row does not exist.
- Resolve a "no data found" conflict for a `DELETE` when the row exists, but the before image of one or more columns is different from the current value in the database.
- Resolve a "no data found" conflict for a `DELETE` when the row does not exist.

To use conflict detection and resolution (CDR), the target database must reside on a Windows, Linux, or UNIX system. It is not supported for databases on the NonStop platform.

CDR supports data types that can be compared with simple SQL and without explicit conversion:

- `NUMERIC`
- `DATE`
- `TIMESTAMP`

- CHAR/NCHAR
- VARCHAR/ NVARCHAR

This means that these column types can be used with the COMPARECOLS parameter, the GETBEFORECOLS parameter, and as the resolution column in the USEMIN and USEMAX options of the RESOLVECONFLICT parameter. Only NUMERIC columns can be used for the USEDELTAS option of RESOLVECONFLICT. Do not use CDR for columns that contain LOBs, abstract data types (ADT), or user-defined types (UDT).

Conflict resolution is not performed when Replicat operates in BATCHSQL mode. If a conflict occurs in BATCHSQL mode, Replicat reverts to GROUPTRANSOPS mode, and then to single-transaction mode. Conflict detection occurs in all three modes. For more information, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 10.2 Configuring Oracle GoldenGate CDR

Follow these steps to configure the source database, target database, and Oracle GoldenGate for conflict detection and resolution. These steps are:

- [Making the Required Column Values Available to Extract](#)
- [Configuring the Oracle GoldenGate Parameter Files for Conflict Resolution](#)
- [Configuring the Oracle GoldenGate Parameter Files for Error Handling](#)

### 10.2.1 Making the Required Column Values Available to Extract

To use CDR, the following column values must be logged so that Extract can write them to the trail.

- The full before image of each record. Some databases do not provide a before image in the log record, and must be configured to do so with supplemental logging. For most supported databases, you can use the ADD TRANDATA command for this purpose.
- Use the LOGALLSUPCOLS parameter to ensure that the full before and after images of the scheduling columns are written to the trail. Scheduling columns are primary key, unique index, and foreign key columns. LOGALLSUPCOLS causes Extract to include in the trail record the before image for UPDATE operations and the before image of all supplementally logged columns for both UPDATE and DELETE operations.
- For NonStop SQL/MX source databases, create or alter the table to have the no auditcompress attribute.

For detailed information about these parameters and commands, see the *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*. See the examples starting on [Section 10.3, "CDR Example 1: All Conflict Types with USEMAX, OVERWRITE, DISCARD"](#) for more information on how these parameters work with CDR.

### 10.2.2 Configuring the Oracle GoldenGate Parameter Files for Conflict Resolution

The following parameters are required to support conflict detection and resolution.

1. Use the GETBEFORECOLS option of the Extract TABLE parameter to specify columns for which you want Extract to capture the before image of an update or delete operation. For DB2 databases, use the GETUPDATEBEFRES parameter instead of GETBEFORECOLS, which is not supported for DB2.

2. Use the COMPARECOLS option of the MAP parameter in the Replicat parameter file to specify columns that are to be used with before values in the Replicat WHERE clause. The before values are compared with the current values in the target database to detect update and delete conflicts. (By default, Replicat only uses the primary key in the WHERE clause; this may not be enough for conflict detection).
3. Use the RESOLVECONFLICT option of the MAP parameter to specify conflict resolution routines for different operations and conflict types. You can use RESOLVECONFLICT multiple times in a MAP statement to specify different resolutions for different conflict types. Use identical conflict-resolution procedures on all databases, so that the same conflict produces the same end result. One conflict-resolution method might not work for every conflict that could occur. You might need to create several routines that can be called in a logical order of priority so that the risk of failure is minimized.

---

**Note:** Additional consideration should be given when a table has a primary key and additional unique indexes or unique keys. The automated routines provided with the COMPARECOLS and RESOLVECONFLICT parameters require a consistent way to uniquely identify each row. Failure to consistently identify a row will result in an error during conflict resolution. In these situations the additional unique keys should be disabled or you can use the SQLEXEC feature to handle the error thrown and resolve the conflict.

---

For detailed information about these parameters, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*. See the examples starting on [Section 10.3, "CDR Example 1: All Conflict Types with USEMAX, OVERWRITE, DISCARD,"](#) for more information on these parameters.

### 10.2.3 Configuring the Oracle GoldenGate Parameter Files for Error Handling

CDR should be used in conjunction with error handling to capture errors that were resolved and errors that CDR could not resolve.

1. Conflict resolution is performed before these other error-handling parameters: HANDLECOLLISIONS, INSERTMISSINGUPDATES, and REPERROR. Use the REPERROR parameter to assign rules for handling errors that cannot be resolved by CDR, or for errors that you do not want to handle through CDR. It might be appropriate to have REPERROR handle some errors, and CDR handle others; however, if REPERROR and CDR are configured to handle the same conflict, CDR takes precedence. The INSERTMISSINGUPDATES and HANDLECOLLISIONS parameters also can be used to handle some errors not handled by CDR. See the *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for details about these parameters.
2. (Optional) Create an exceptions table. When an exceptions table is used with an exceptions MAP statement (see [Section 10.2.3, "Configuring the Oracle GoldenGate Parameter Files for Error Handling"](#)), Replicat sends every operation that generates a conflict (resolved or not) to the exceptions MAP statement to be mapped to the exceptions table. Omit a primary key on this table if Replicat is to process UPDATE and DELETE conflicts; otherwise there can be integrity constraint errors.

At minimum, an exceptions table should contain the same columns as the target table. These rows will contain each row image that Replicat applied to the target (or tried to apply).

In addition, you can define additional columns to capture other information that helps put the data in transactional context. Oracle GoldenGate provides tools to capture this information through the exceptions MAP statement (see [Section 10.2.3, "Configuring the Oracle GoldenGate Parameter Files for Error Handling"](#)). Such columns can be, but are not limited to, the following:

- The before image of the trail record. This is a duplicate set of the target columns with names such as `col1_before`, `col2_before`, and so forth.
  - The current values of the target columns. This also is a duplicate set of the target columns with names such as `col1_current`, `col2_current`, and so forth.
  - The name of the target table
  - The timestamp of the conflict
  - The operation type
  - The database error number
  - (Optional) The database error message
  - Whether the conflict was resolved or not
3. Create an exceptions MAP statement to map the exceptions data to the exceptions table. An exceptions MAP statement contains:
- (Required) The `INSERTALLRECORDS` option. This parameter converts all mapped operations to `INSERTS` so that all column values are mapped to the exceptions table.
  - (Required) The `EXCEPTIONSONLY` option. This parameter causes Replicat to map operations that generate an error, but not those that were successful.
  - (Optional) A `COLMAP` clause. If the names and definitions of the columns in the exceptions table are identical to those of the source table, and the exceptions table only contains those columns, no `COLMAP` is needed. However, if any names or definitions differ, or if there are extra columns in the exceptions table that you want to populate with additional data, use a `COLMAP` clause to map all columns.

#### 10.2.3.1 Tools for Mapping Extra Data to the Exceptions Table

The following are some tools that you can use in the `COLMAP` clause to populate extra columns:

- If the names and definitions of the source columns are identical to those of the target columns in the exceptions table, you can use the `USEDEFAULTS` keyword instead of explicitly mapping names. Otherwise, you must map those columns in the `COLMAP` clause, for example:

```
COLMAP (exceptions_col1 = col1, [...])
```

- To map the before image of the source row to columns in the exceptions table, use the `@BEFORE` conversion function, which captures the before image of a column from the trail record. This example shows the `@BEFORE` usage.

```
COLMAP (USEDEFAULTS, exceptions_col1 = @BEFORE (source_col1), &
exceptions_col2 = @BEFORE (source_col2), [...])
```

- To map the current image of the target row to columns in the exceptions table, use a `SQLLEXEC` query to capture the image, and then map the results of the query to the columns in the exceptions table by using the '`queryID.column`' syntax in the `COLMAP` clause, as in the following example:

```
COLMAP (USEDEFAULTS, name_current = queryID.name, phone_current =
queryID.phone, [...])
```

- To map timestamps, database errors, and other environmental information, use the appropriate Oracle GoldenGate column-conversion functions. For example, the following maps the current timestamp at time of execution.

```
res_date = @DATENOW ()
```

See [Section 10.2.3.3, "Sample Exceptions Mapping with Additional Columns in the Exceptions Table,"](#) for how to combine these features in a COLMAP clause in the exceptions MAP statement to populate a detailed exceptions table.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for the usage and syntax of the parameters and column-conversion functions shown in these examples.

### 10.2.3.2 Sample Exceptions Mapping with Source and Target Columns Only

The following is a sample parameter file that shows error handling and simple exceptions mapping for the source and target tables that are used in the CDR examples that begin on page 10-8. This example maps source and target columns, but no extra columns. For the following reasons, a COLMAP clause is not needed in the exceptions MAP statement in this example:

- The source and target exceptions columns are identical in name and definition.
- There are no other columns in the exceptions table.

---

**Note:** This example intentionally leaves out other parameters that are required in a Replicat parameter file, such as process name and login credentials, as well as any optional parameters that may be required for a given database type. When using line breaks to split a parameter statement into multiple lines, use an ampersand (&) at the end of each line.

---

```
-- REPERROr error handling: DEFAULT represents all error types. DISCARD
-- writes operations that could not be processed to a discard file.
REPERROr (DEFAULT, DISCARD)
-- Specifies a discard file.
DISCARDFILE /users/ogg/discards/discards.dsc, PURGE
-- The regular MAP statement with the CDR parameters
MAP fin.src, TARGET fin.tgt, &
COMPARECOLS (ON UPDATE ALL, ON DELETE ALL), &
RESOLVECONFLICT (UPDATEROWEXISTS, (DEFAULT, USEMAX (last_mod_time)), &
RESOLVECONFLICT (INSERTROWEXISTS, (DEFAULT, USEMAX (last_mod_time)), &
RESOLVECONFLICT (DELETEROWEXISTS, (DEFAULT, OVERWRITE)), &
RESOLVECONFLICT (UPDATEROWMISSING, (DEFAULT, OVERWRITE)), &
RESOLVECONFLICT (DELETEROWMISSING, (DEFAULT, DISCARD)), &
);
-- Starts the exceptions MAP statement by mapping the source table to the
-- exceptions table.
MAP fin.src, TARGET fin.exception, &
-- directs Replicat only to map operations that caused the error specified
-- in REPERROr.
EXCEPTIONSONLY, &
-- directs Replicat to convert all the exceptions to inserts into the
-- exceptions table. This is why there cannot be a primary key constraint
-- on the exceptions table.
INSERTALLRECORDS &
```

```
;
```

### 10.2.3.3 Sample Exceptions Mapping with Additional Columns in the Exceptions Table

The following is a sample parameter file that shows error handling and complex exceptions mapping for the source and target tables that are used in the CDR examples that begin on page 10-8. In this example, the exceptions table has the same rows as the source table, but it also has additional columns to capture context data.

---

**Note:** This example intentionally leaves out other parameters that are required in a Replicat parameter file, such as process name and login credentials, as well as any optional parameters that may be required for a given database type. When using line breaks to split a parameter statement into multiple lines, use an ampersand (&) at the end of each line.

---

```
-- REPPERRO error handling: DEFAULT represents all error types. DISCARD
-- writes operations that could not be processed to a discard file.
REPPERRO (DEFAULT, DISCARD)
    -- Specifies the discard file.
DISCARDFILE /users/ogg/discards/discards.dsc, PURGE
    -- The regular MAP statement with the CDR parameters
MAP fin.src, TARGET fin.tgt, &
COMPARECOLS (ON UPDATE ALL, ON DELETE ALL), &
RESOLVECONFLICT (UPDATEROWEXISTS, (DEFAULT, USEMAX (last_mod_time)), &
RESOLVECONFLICT (INSERTROWEXISTS, (DEFAULT, USEMAX (last_mod_time)), &
RESOLVECONFLICT (DELETEROWEXISTS, (DEFAULT, OVERWRITE)), &
RESOLVECONFLICT (UPDATEROWMISSING, (DEFAULT, OVERWRITE)), &
RESOLVECONFLICT (DELETEROWMISSING, (DEFAULT, DISCARD)), &
);
    -- Starts the exceptions MAP statement by mapping the source table to the --
exceptions table.
MAP fin.src, TARGET fin.exception, &
    -- directs Replicat only to map operations that caused the error specified
    -- in REPPERRO.
EXCEPTIONSONLY, &
    -- directs Replicat to convert all the exceptions to inserts into the
    -- exceptions table. This is why there cannot be a primary key constraint
    -- on the exceptions table.
INSERTALLRECORDS &
    -- SQLEXEC query to select the values from the target record before the
    -- Replicat statement is applied. These are mapped to the *_target
    -- columns later.
SQLEXEC (id qry, query 'select name, phone, address, salary, balance, & comment,
last_mod_time from fin.tgt where name = :p1', PARAMS(p1 = name )), &
    -- Start of the column mapping, specifies use default column definitions.
COLMAP ( &
    -- USEDEFUALTS maps the source columns to the target exceptions columns
    -- that receive the after image that Replicat applied or tried to apply.
    -- In this case, USEDEFUALTS can be used because the names and definitions
    -- of the source and target exceptions columns are identical; otherwise
    -- the columns must be mapped explicitly in the COLMAP clause.
USEDEFUALTS, &
    -- captures the timestamp when the resolution was performed.
res_date = @DATENOW (), &
    -- captures and maps the DML operation type.
optype = @GETENV ('LASTERR', 'OPTYPE'), &
```

```

-- captures and maps the database error number that was returned.
dberrnum = @GETENV ('LASTERR', 'DBERRNUM'), &
-- captures and maps the database error that was returned.
dberrmsge = @GETENV ('LASTERR', 'DBERRMSG'), &
-- captures and maps the name of the target table
tabname = @GETENV ('GGHEADER', 'TABLENAME'), &
-- If the names and definitions of the source columns and the target
-- exceptions columns were not identical, the columns would need to
-- be mapped in the COLMAP clause instead of using USEDEFAULTS, as
-- follows:
-- name_after = name, &
-- phone_after = phone, &
-- address_after = address, &
-- salary_after = salary, &
-- balance_after = balance, &
-- comment_after = comment, &
-- last_mod_time_after = last_mod_time &
-- maps the before image of each column from the trail to a column in the
-- exceptions table.
name_before = @BEFORE (name), &
phone_before = @BEFORE (phone), &
address_before = @BEFORE (address), &
salary_before = @BEFORE (salary), &
balance_before = @BEFORE (balance), &
comment_before = @BEFORE (comment), &
last_mod_time_before = @BEFORE (last_mod_time), &
-- maps the results of the SQLEXEC query to rows in the exceptions table
-- to show the current image of the row in the target.
name_current = qry.name, &
phone_current = qry.phone, &
address_current = qry.address, &
salary_current = qry.salary, &
balance_current = qry.balance, &
comment_current = qry.comment, &
last_mod_time_current = qry.last_mod_time) &
;

```

For more information about creating an exceptions table and using exceptions mapping, see [Section 15.3, "Handling Replicat Errors during DML Operations"](#).

Once you are confident that your routines work as expected in all situations, you can reduce the amount of data that is logged to the exceptions table to reduce the overhead of the resolution routines.

## 10.2.4 Viewing CDR Statistics

The CDR feature provides the following methods for viewing the results of conflict resolution.

### 10.2.4.1 Report File

Replicat writes CDR statistics to the report file:

Total CDR conflicts	7
CDR resolutions succeeded	6
CDR resolutions failed	1
CDR INSERTROWEXISTS conflicts	1
CDR UPDATEROWEXISTS conflicts	4
CDR DELROWEXISTS conflicts	1
CDR DELROWMISSING conflicts	1

### 10.2.4.2 GGSCI

You can view CDR statistics from GGSCI by using the STATS REPLICAT command with the REPORTCDR option:

```
STATS REPLICAT group, REPORTCDR
```

### 10.2.4.3 Column-conversion Functions

The following CDR statistics can be retrieved and mapped to an exceptions table or used in other Oracle GoldenGate parameters that accept input from column-conversion functions, as appropriate.

- Number of conflicts that Replicat detected
- Number of resolutions that Replicat resolved
- Number of resolutions that Replicat could not resolve

To retrieve these statistics, use the @GETENV column-conversion function with the 'STATS' or 'DELTASTATS' information type. The results are based on the current Replicat session. If Replicat stops and restarts, it resets the statistics.

You can return these statistics for a specific table or set of wildcarded tables:

```
@GETENV ('STATS', 'TABLE', 'SCHEMA.TABLNAME', 'CDR_CONFLICTS')
@GETENV ('STATS', 'TABLE', 'SCHEMA.TABLNAME', 'CDR_RESOLUTIONS_SUCCEEDED')
@GETENV ('STATS', 'TABLE', 'SCHEMA.TABLNAME', 'CDR_RESOLUTIONS_FAILED')
```

You can return these statistics for all of the tables in all of the MAP statements in the Replicat parameter file:

```
@GETENV ('STATS', 'CDR_CONFLICTS')
@GETENV ('STATS', 'CDR_RESOLUTIONS_SUCCEEDED')
@GETENV ('STATS', 'CDR_RESOLUTIONS_FAILED')
```

The 'STATS' information type in the preceding examples can be replaced by 'DELTASTATS' to return the requested counts since the last execution of 'DELTASTATS'.

For more information about @GETENV, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 10.3 CDR Example 1: All Conflict Types with USEMAX, OVERWRITE, DISCARD

This example resolves all conflict types by using the USEMAX, OVERWRITE, and DISCARD resolutions.

### 10.3.1 Table Used in this Example

The examples assume identical Oracle databases.

```
CREATE TABLE tgt(
    name varchar2(30) primary key,
    phone varchar2(10),
    address varchar2(100),
    salary number,
    balance number,
    comment varchar2(100),
    last_mod_time timestamp);
```

At the source database, all columns are supplementally logged:

```
ADD TRANDATA scott.src, COLS (name, phone, address, salary, balance, comment,
last_mod_time);
```

### 10.3.2 MAP Statement with Conflict Resolution Specifications

```
MAP fin.src, TARGET fin.tgt,
    COMPARECOLS (ON UPDATE ALL, ON DELETE ALL),
    RESOLVECONFLICT (UPDATEROWEXISTS, (DEFAULT, USEMAX (last_mod_time)),
    RESOLVECONFLICT (INSERTROWEXISTS, (DEFAULT, USEMAX (last_mod_time)),
    RESOLVECONFLICT (DELETEROWEXISTS, (DEFAULT, OVERWRITE)),
    RESOLVECONFLICT (UPDATEROWMISSING, (DEFAULT, OVERWRITE)),
    RESOLVECONFLICT (DELETEROWMISSING, (DEFAULT, DISCARD)),
    );
```

### 10.3.3 Description of MAP Statement

The following describes the MAP statement:

- Per COMPARECOLS, use the before image of all columns in the trail record in the Replicat WHERE clause for updates and deletes.
- Per DEFAULT, use all columns as the column group for all conflict types; thus the resolution applies to all columns.
- For an INSERTROWEXISTS conflict, use the USEMAX resolution: If the row exists during an insert, use the last\_mod\_time column as the resolution column for deciding which is the greater value: the value in the trail or the one in the database. If the value in the trail is greater, apply the record but change the insert to an update. If the database value is higher, ignore the record.
- For an UPDATEROWEXISTS conflict, use the USEMAX resolution: If the row exists during an update, use the last\_mod\_time column as the resolution column: If the value in the trail is greater, apply the update.
- For a DELETEROWEXISTS conflict, use the OVERWRITE resolution: If the row exists during a delete operation, apply the delete.
- For an UPDATEROWMISSING conflict, use the OVERWRITE resolution: If the row does not exist during an update, change the update to an insert and apply it.
- For a DELETROWMISSING conflict use the DISCARD resolution: If the row does not exist during a delete operation, discard the trail record.

---

**Note:** As an alternative to USEMAX, you can use the USEMAXEQ resolution to apply a  $\geq$  condition. For more information, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

---

### 10.3.4 Error Handling

For an example of error handling to an exceptions table, see [Section 10.2.3, "Configuring the Oracle GoldenGate Parameter Files for Error Handling."](#)

### 10.3.5 INSERTROWEXISTS with the USEMAX Resolution

For this example, the USEMAX resolution is illustrated with the applicable before and after images for the record in the trail and in the database. It shows how to resolve an insert where the row exists in the source and target, but some or all row values are different.

**Table 10–1 INSERTROWEXISTS Conflict with USEMAX Resolution**

Image	SQL	Comments
Before image in trail	None (row was inserted on the source).	N/A
After image in trail	name='Mary' phone='1234567890' address='Oracle Pkwy' salary=100 balance=100 comment=NULL last_mod_time='9/1/10 3:00'	last_mod_time='9/1/10 3:00' is the after image of the resolution column. Since there is an after image, this will be used to determine the resolution.
Target database image	name='Mary' phone='111111' address='Ralston' salary=200 balance=500 comment='aaa' last_mod_time='9/1/10 1:00'	last_mod_time='9/1/10 1:00' is the current image of the resolution column in the target against which the resolution column value in the trail is compared.
Initial INSERT applied by Replicat that detects the conflict	SQL bind variables: 1) 'Mary' 2) '1234567890' 3) 'Oracle Pkwy' 4) 100 5) 100 6) NULL 7) '9/1/10 3:00'	This SQL returns a uniqueness conflict on 'Mary'.
UPDATE applied by Replicat to resolve the conflict	SQL bind variables: 1) '1234567890' 2) 'Oracle Pkwy' 3) 100 4) 100 5) NULL 6) '9/1/10 3:00' 7) 'Mary' 8) '9/1/10 3:00'	Because USEMAX is specified for INSERTROWEXISTS, Replicat converts the insert to an update, and it compares the value of last_mod_time in the trail record with the value in the database. The value in the record is greater, so the after images for columns in the trail file are applied to the target.

### 10.3.6 UPDATEROWEXISTS with the USEMAX Resolution

For this example, the USEMAX resolution is illustrated with the applicable before and after images for the record in the trail and in the database. It shows how to resolve an update where the row exists in the source and target, but some or all row values are different.

**Table 10–2 UPDATEROWEXISTS Conflict with USEMAX Resolution**

Image	SQL	Comments
Before image in trail	name='Mary' phone='1234567890' address='Oracle Pkwy' salary=100 balance=100 comment=NULL last_mod_time='9/1/10 3:00'	last_mod_time='9/1/10 3:00' is the before image of the resolution column.
After image in trail	phone='222222' address='Holly' last_mod_time='9/1/10 5:00'	last_mod_time='9/1/10 5:00' is the after image of the resolution column. Since there is an after image, this will be used to determine the resolution.
Target database image	name='Mary' phone='1234567890' address='Oracle Pkwy' salary=100 balance=600 comment='com' last_mod_time='9/1/10 6:00'	last_mod_time='9/1/10 6:00' is the current image of the resolution column in the target against which the resolution column value in the trail is compared.
Initial UPDATE applied by Replicat that detects the conflict	SQL bind variables: 1) '222222' 2) 'Holly' 3) '9/1/10 5:00' 4) 'Mary' 5) '1234567890' 6) 'Oracle Pkwy' 7) 100 8) 100 9) NULL 10) '9/1/10 3:00'	This SQL returns a no-data-found error because the values for the balance, comment, and last_mod_time are different in the target.  All columns are used in the WHERE clause because the COMPARECOLS statement is set to ALL.
UPDATE applied by Replicat to resolve the conflict	SQL bind variables: 1) 'Mary' 2) '222222' 3) 'Holly' 4) 100 5) 100 6) NULL 7) '9/1/10 5:00' 8) 'Mary' 9) '9/1/10 5:00'	Because the after value of last_mod_time in the trail record is less than the current value in the database, the database value is retained. Replicat applies the operation with a WHERE clause that contains the primary key plus a last_mod_time value set to less than 9/1/10 5:00. No rows match this criteria, so the statement fails with a "data not found" error, but Replicat ignores the error because a USEMAX resolution is expected to fail if the condition is not satisfied.

### 10.3.7 UPDATEROWMISSING with OVERWRITE Resolution

For this example, the OVERWRITE resolution is illustrated with the applicable before and after images for the record in the trail and in the database. It shows how to resolve the case where the target row is missing. The logical resolution, and the one used, is to overwrite the row into the target so that both databases are in sync again.

**Table 10–3 UPDATEROWMISSING Conflict with OVERWRITE Resolution**

Image	SQL	Comments
Before image in trail	name='Jane' phone='333' address='Oracle Pkwy' salary=200 balance=200 comment=NULL last_mod_time='9/1/10 7:00'	N/A
After image in trail	phone='4444' address='Holly' last_mod_time='9/1/10 8:00'	
Target database image	None (row for Jane is missing)	
Initial UPDATE applied by Replicat that detects the conflict	SQL bind variables: 1) '4444' 2) 'Holly' 3) '9/1/10 8:00' 4) 'Jane' 5) '333' 6) 'Oracle Pkwy' 7) 200 8) 200 9) NULL 10) '9/1/10 7:00'	This SQL returns a no-data-found error. All columns are used in the WHERE clause because the COMPARECOLS statement is set to ALL.
INSERT applied by Replicat to resolve the conflict	SQL bind variables: 1) 'Jane' 2) '4444' 3) 'Holly' 4) 200 5) 200 6) NULL 7) '9/1/10 8:00'	The update is converted to an insert because OVERWRITE is the resolution. The after image of a column is used if available; otherwise the before image is used.

### 10.3.8 DELETEROWMISSING with DISCARD Resolution

For this example, the DISCARD resolution is illustrated with the applicable before and after images for the record in the trail and in the database. It shows how to resolve the case where the target row is missing. In the case of a delete on the source, it is acceptable for the target row not to exist (it would need to be deleted anyway), so the resolution is to discard the DELETE operation that is in the trail.

**Table 10–4 DELETEROWMSING Conflict with DISCARD Resolution**

Image	SQL	Comments
Before image in trail	name='Jane' phone='4444' address='Holly' salary=200 balance=200 comment=NULL last_mod_time='9/1/10 8:00'	N/A
After image in trail	None	N/A

**Table 10–4 (Cont.) DELETEROWMISSING Conflict with DISCARD Resolution**

Image	SQL	Comments
Target database image	None (row missing)	N/A
Initial DELETE applied by Replicat that detects the conflict	SQL bind variables: 1) 'Jane' 2) '4444' 3) 'Holly' 4) 200 5) 200 6) NULL 7) '9/1/10 8:00'	This SQL returns a no-data-found error. All columns are used in the WHERE clause because the COMPARECOLS statement is set to ALL.
SQL applied by Replicat to resolve the conflict	None	Because DISCARD is specified as the resolution for DELETEROWMISSING, so the delete from the trail goes to the discard file.

### 10.3.9 DELETEROWEXISTS with OVERWRITE Resolution

For this example, the OVERWRITE resolution is illustrated with the applicable before and after images for the record in the trail and in the database. It shows how to resolve the case where the source row was deleted but the target row exists. In this case, the OVERWRITE resolution applies the delete to the target.

**Table 10–5 DELETEROWEXISTS Conflict with OVERWRITE Resolution**

Image	SQL	Comments
Before image in trail	name='Mary' phone='222222' address='Holly' salary=100 balance=100 comment=NULL last_mod_time='9/1/10 5:00'	N/A
After image in trail	None	N/A
Target database image	name='Mary' phone='1234567890' address='Oracle Pkwy' salary=100 balance=600 comment=com last_mod_time='9/1/10 7:00'	The row exists on the target, but the phone, address, balance, comment, and last_mod_time columns are different from the before image in the trail.
Initial DELETE applied by Replicat that detects the conflict	SQL bind variables: 1) 'Mary' 2) '222222' 3) 'Holly' 4) 100 5) 100d 6) NULL 7) '9/1/10 5:00'	All columns are used in the WHERE clause because the COMPARECOLS statement is set to ALL.  A no-data-found error occurs because of the difference between the before and current values.
DELETE applied by Replicat to resolve the conflict	SQL bind variables: 1) 'Mary'	Because OVERWRITE is the resolution. the DELETE is applied using only the primary key (to avoid an integrity error).

## 10.4 CDR Example 2: UPDATEROWEXISTS with USEDELTA and USEMAX

This example resolves the condition where a target row exists on UPDATE but non-key columns are different, and it uses two different resolution types to handle this condition based on the affected column.

### 10.4.1 Table Used in this Example

The examples assume identical Oracle databases.

```
CREATE TABLE tgt(
    name varchar2(30) primary key,
    phone varchar2(10),
    address varchar2(100),
    salary number,
    balance number,
    comment varchar2(100),
    last_mod_time timestamp);
```

At the source database, all columns are supplementally logged:

```
ADD TRANDATA scott/src, COLS (name, phone, address, salary, balance, comment,
last_mod_time);
```

### 10.4.2 MAP Statement

```
MAP fin/src, TARGET fin/tgt,
COMPARECOLS
(ON UPDATE KEYINCLUDING (address, phone, salary, last_mod_time),
ON DELETE KEYINCLUDING (address, phone, salary, last_mod_time)),
RESOLVECONFLICT (
UPDATEROWEXISTS,
(delta_res_method, USEDELTA, COLS (salary)),
(DEFAULT, USEMAX (last_mod_time)));
```

### 10.4.3 Description of MAP Statement

For an UPDATEROWEXISTS conflict, where a target row exists on UPDATE but non-key columns are different, use two different resolutions depending on the column:

- Per the delta\_res\_method resolution, use the USEDELTA resolution logic for the salary column so that the change in value will be added to the current value of the column.
- Per DEFAULT, use the USEMAX resolution logic for all other columns in the table (the default column group), using the last\_mod\_time column as the resolution column. This column is updated with the current time whenever the row is modified; the value of this column in the trail is compared to the value in the target. If the value of last\_mod\_time in the trail record is greater than the current value of last\_mod\_time in the target database, the changes to name, phone, address, balance, comment and last\_mod\_time are applied to the target.

Per COMPARECOLS, use the primary key (name column) plus the address, phone, salary, and last\_mod\_time columns as the comparison columns for conflict detection for UPDATE and DELETE operations. (The balance and comment columns are not compared.)

---

**Note:** As an alternative to USEMAX, you can use the USEMAXEQ resolution to apply a  $\geq$  condition. For more information, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

---

#### 10.4.4 Error Handling

For an example of error handling to an exceptions table, see [Section 10.2.3, "Configuring the Oracle GoldenGate Parameter Files for Error Handling"](#).

**Table 10–6 UPDATEROWEXISTS with USEDELTA and USEMAX**

Image	SQL	Comments
Before image in trail	name='Mary' phone='1234567890' address='Oracle Pkwy' salary=100 balance=100 comment=NULL last_mod_time='9/1/10 3:00'	last_mod_time='9/1/10 3:00' is the before image of the resolution column for the USEMAX resolution.  salary=100 is the before image for the USEDELTA resolution.
After image in trail	phone='222222' address='Holly' salary=200 comment='new' last_mod_time='9/1/10 5:00'	last_mod_time='9/1/10 5:00' is the after image of the resolution column for USEMAX. Since there is an after image, this will be used to determine the resolution.
Target database image	name='Mary' phone='1234567890' address='Oracle Pkwy' salary=600 balance=600 comment='com' last_mod_time='9/1/10 4:00'	last_mod_time='9/1/10 4:00' is the current image of the resolution column in the target against which the resolution column value in the trail is compared.  salary=600 is the current image of the target column for the USEDELTA resolution.

**Table 10–6 (Cont.) UPDATEROWEXISTS with USEDELTA and USEMAX**

<b>Image</b>	<b>SQL</b>	<b>Comments</b>
Initial UPDATE applied by Replicat that detects the conflict	SQL bind variables: 1) '222222' 2) 'Holly' 3) 200 4) 'new' 5) '9/1/10 5:00' 6) 'Mary' 7) '1234567890' 8) 'Oracle Pkwy' 9) 100 10) '9/1/10 3:00'	This SQL returns a no-data-found error because the values for the salary and last_mod_time are different. (The values for comment and balance are also different, but these columns are not compared.)
UPDATE applied by Replicat to resolve the conflict for salary, using USEDELTA.	SQL bind variables: 1) 200 2) 100 3) 'Mary'	Per USEDELTA, the difference between the after image of salary (200) in the trail and the before image of salary (100) in the trail is added to the current value of salary in the target (600). The result is 700.  $600 + (200 - 100) = 700$
UPDATE applied by Replicat to resolve the conflict for the default columns, using USEMAX.	SQL bind variables: 1) '222222' 2) 'Holly' 3) 'new' 4) '9/1/10 5:00' 5) 'Mary' 6) '9/1/10 5:00'	Per USEMAX, because the after value of last_mod_time in the trail record is greater than the current value in the database, the row is updated with the after values from the trail record.  Note that the salary column is not set here, because it is resolved with the UPDATE from the USEDELTA resolution.

## 10.5 CDR Example 3: UPDATEROWEXISTS with USEDELTA, USEMAX, and IGNORE

This example resolves the conflict where a target row exists on UPDATE but non-key columns are different, and it uses three different resolution types to handle this condition based on the affected column.

### 10.5.1 Table Used in this Example

The examples assume identical Oracle databases.

```
CREATE TABLE tgt(
    name varchar2(30) primary key,
    phone varchar2(10),
    address varchar2(100),
    salary number,
    balance number,
    comment varchar2(100),
    last_mod_time timestamp);
```

At the source database, all columns are supplementally logged:

```
ADD TRANDATA scott.src, COLS (name, phone, address, salary, balance, comment,
last_mod_time);
```

## 10.5.2 MAP Statement

```
MAP fin.src, TARGET fin.tgt,
COMPARECOLS
(ON UPDATE ALLEXCLUDING (comment)),
RESOLVECONFLICT (
UPDATEROWEXISTS,
(delta_res_method, USEDELT A, COLS (salary, balance)),
(max_res_method, USEMAX (last_mod_time), COLS (address, last_mod_time)),
(DEFAULT, IGNORE));
```

## 10.5.3 Description of MAP Statement

- For an UPDATEROWEXISTS conflict, where a target row exists on UPDATE but non-key columns are different, use two different resolutions depending on the column:
  - Per the delta\_res\_method resolution, use the USEDELT A resolution logic for the salary and balance columns so that the change in each value will be added to the current value of each column.
  - Per the max\_res\_method resolution, use the USEMAX resolution logic for the address and last\_mod\_time columns. The last\_mod\_time column is the resolution column. This column is updated with the current time whenever the row is modified; the value of this column in the trail is compared to the value in the target. If the value of last\_mod\_time in the trail record is greater than the current value of last\_mod\_time in the target database, the changes to address and last\_mod\_time are applied to the target; otherwise, they are ignored in favor of the target values.
  - Per DEFAULT, use the IGNORE resolution logic for the remaining columns (phone and comment) in the table (the default column group). Changes to these columns will always be ignored by Replicat.
- Per COMPARECOLS, use all columns except the comment column as the comparison columns for conflict detection for UPDATE operations. Comment will not be used in the WHERE clause for updates, but all other columns that have a before image in the trail record will be used.

---

**Note:** As an alternative to USEMAX, you can use the USEMAXEQ resolution to apply a  $\geq$  condition. For more information, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

---

## 10.5.4 Error Handling

For an example of error handling to an exceptions table, see [Section 10.2.3, "Configuring the Oracle GoldenGate Parameter Files for Error Handling"](#).

**Table 10-7 UPDATEROWEXISTS with USEDELTA, USEMAX, and IGNORE**

<b>Image</b>	<b>SQL</b>	<b>Comments</b>
Before image in trail	name='Mary' phone='1234567890' address='Oracle Pkwy' salary=100 balance=100 comment=NULL last_mod_time='9/1/10 3:00'	last_mod_time='9/1/10 3:00' is the before image of the resolution column for the USEMAX resolution.  salary=100 and balance=100 are the before images for the USEDELTA resolution.
After image in trail	phone='222222' address='Holly' salary=200 comment='new' last_mod_time='9/1/10 5:00'	last_mod_time='9/1/10 5:00' is the after image of the resolution column for USEMAX. Since there is an after image, this will be used to determine the resolution.  salary=200 is the only after image available for the USEDELTA resolution. For balance, the before image will be used in the calculation.
Target database image	name='Mary' phone='1234567890' address='Ralston' salary=600 balance=600 comment='com' last_mod_time='9/1/10 4:00'	last_mod_time='9/1/10 4:00' is the current image of the resolution column in the target against which the resolution column value in the trail is compared for USEMAX.  salary=600 and balance=600 are the current images of the target columns for USEDELTA.
Initial UPDATE applied by Replicat that detects the conflict	SQL bind variables: 1) '222222' 2) 'Holly' 3) 200 4) 'new' 5) '9/1/10 5:00' 6) 'Mary' 7) '1234567890' 8) 'Oracle Pkwy' 9) 100 10) 100 11) '9/1/10 3:00'	This SQL returns a no-data-found error because the values for the address, salary, balance and last_mod_time columns are different.

**Table 10–7 (Cont.) UPDATEROWEXISTS with USEDELTAA, USEMAX, and IGNORE**

<b>Image</b>	<b>SQL</b>	<b>Comments</b>
UPDATE applied by Replicat to resolve the conflict for salary, using USEDELTAA.	SQL bind variables: 1) 200 2) 100 3) 'Mary'	For salary, there is a difference of 100, but there was no change in value for balance, so it is not needed in the update SQL. Per USEDELTAA, the difference (delta) between the after (200) image and the before image (100) of salary in the trail is added to the current value of salary in the target (600). The result is 700.
UPDATE applied by Replicat to resolve the conflict for USEMAX.	SQL bind variables: 1) 'Holly' 2) '9/1/10 5:00' 3) 'Mary' 4) '9/1/10 5:00'	Because the after value of last_mod_time in the trail record is greater than the current value in the database, that column plus the address column are updated with the after values from the trail record.
UPDATE applied by Replicat for IGNORE.	SQL bind variables: 1) '222222' 2) 'new' 3) 'Mary'	Note that the salary column is not set here, because it is resolved with the UPDATE from the USEDELTAA resolution.  IGNORE is specified for the DEFAULT column group (phone and comment), so no resolution SQL is applied.



---

# Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security

This chapter describes how to configure Oracle GoldenGate security.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Overview of Oracle GoldenGate Security Options](#)
- [Encrypting Data with the Master Key and Wallet Method](#)
- [Encrypting Data with the ENCKEYS Method](#)
- [Managing Identities in a Credential Store](#)
- [Encrypting a Password in a Command or Parameter File](#)
- [Populating an ENCKEYS File with Encryption Keys](#)
- [Configuring GGSCI Command Security](#)
- [Using Target System Connection Initiation](#)

## 11.1 Overview of Oracle GoldenGate Security Options

You can use the following security features to protect your Oracle GoldenGate environment and the data that is being processed.

Security Feature	What it Secures	Supported Databases	Description
Data Encryption Two methods are available: ▪ <a href="#">Section 11.2, "Encrypting Data with the Master Key and Wallet Method"</a> ▪ <a href="#">Section 11.3, "Encrypting Data with the ENCKEYS Method"</a>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Data in the trails or an extract file</li> <li>▪ Data sent across TCP/IP networks</li> </ul>	Master key and wallet method is the preferred method on platforms that support it. Not valid for the iSeries, z/OS, and NonStop platforms.  ENCKEYS method is valid for all Oracle GoldenGate-supported databases and platforms. Blowfish must be used on the iSeries, z/OS, and NonStop platforms.	Encrypts the data in files, across data links, and across TCP/IP. Use any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Any Advanced Encryption Security (AES)<sup>1</sup> cipher: AES-128 AES-192 AES-256</li> <li>▪ Blowfish<sup>2</sup></li> </ul>
Credential Store Identity Management See <a href="#">Section 11.4, "Managing Identities in a Credential Store."</a>	User IDs and passwords (credentials) assigned to Oracle GoldenGate processes to log into a database.	Credential store is the preferred password management method on platforms that support it. Not valid on the iSeries, z/OS, and NonStop platforms.	User credentials are maintained in secure wallet storage. Aliases for the credentials are specified in commands and parameters.

Security Feature	What it Secures	Supported Databases	Description
Password Encryption See <a href="#">Section 11.5, "Encrypting a Password in a Command or Parameter File."</a>	Passwords specified in commands and parameter files that are used by Oracle GoldenGate processes to log into a database.	Valid for all Oracle GoldenGate-supported databases and platforms. Blowfish must be used on the iSeries, z/OS, and NonStop platforms. On other platforms, the credential store is the preferred password-management method.	Encrypts a password and then provides for specifying the encrypted password in the command or parameter input. Use any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ AES-128</li> <li>▪ AES-192</li> <li>▪ AES-256</li> <li>▪ Blowfish</li> </ul>
Command Authentication See <a href="#">Section 11.7, "Configuring GGSCI Command Security."</a>	Oracle GoldenGate commands issued through GGSCI.	Valid for all Oracle GoldenGate-supported databases and platforms.	Stores authentication permissions in an operating-system-secured file. Configure a <code>CMDSEC</code> (Command Security) file.
Trusted Connection See <a href="#">Section 11.8, "Using Target System Connection Initiation."</a>	TCP/IP connection to untrusted Oracle GoldenGate host machines that are outside a firewall.	Valid for all Oracle GoldenGate-supported databases and platforms.	Use any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ AES-128</li> <li>▪ AES-192</li> <li>▪ AES-256</li> <li>▪ Blowfish</li> </ul>

<sup>1</sup> Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) is a symmetric-key encryption standard that is used by governments and other organizations that require a high degree of data security. It offers three 128-bit block-ciphers: a 128-bit key cipher, a 192-bit key cipher, and a 256-bit key cipher. To use AES for any database other than Oracle on a 32-bit platform, the path to the lib sub-directory of the Oracle GoldenGate installation directory must be set with the LD\_LIBRARY\_PATH or SHLIB\_PATH variable (UNIX) or the PATH variable (Windows). Not required for 64-bit platforms.

<sup>2</sup> Blowfish encryption: A keyed symmetric-block cipher. The Oracle GoldenGate implementation of Blowfish has a 64-bit block size with a variable-length key size from 32 bits to 256 bits.

## 11.2 Encrypting Data with the Master Key and Wallet Method

To use this method of data encryption, you create a master-key wallet and add a master key to the wallet. This method works as follows, depending on whether the data is encrypted in the trails or across TCP/IP:

- Each time Oracle GoldenGate creates a trail file, it generates a new encryption key automatically. This encryption key encrypts the trail contents. The master key encrypts the encryption key. This process of encrypting encryption keys is known as *key wrap* and is described in standard ANS X9.102 from American Standards Committee.
- To encrypt data across the network, Oracle GoldenGate generates a session key using a cryptographic function based on the master key.

Oracle GoldenGate uses an auto-login wallet (file extension `.sso`), meaning that it is an obfuscated container that does not require human intervention to supply the necessary passwords.

Encrypting data with a master key and wallet is not supported on the iSeries, z/OS or NonStop platforms.

This section guides you through the following tasks:

[Section 11.2.1, "Creating the Wallet and Adding a Master Key"](#)

[Section 11.2.2, "Specifying Encryption Parameters in the Parameter File"](#)

[Section 11.2.3, "Renewing the Master Key"](#)

#### [Section 11.2.4, "Deleting Stale Master Keys"](#)

### 11.2.1 Creating the Wallet and Adding a Master Key

The wallet is created in a platform-independent format. The wallet can be stored on a shared file system that is accessible by all systems in the Oracle GoldenGate environment. Alternatively, you can use an identical wallet on each system in the Oracle GoldenGate environment. If you use a wallet on each system, you must create the wallet on one system, typically the source system, and then copy it to all of the other systems in the Oracle GoldenGate environment. This must also be done every time you add, change, or delete a master key.

This procedure creates the wallet on the source system and then guides you through copying it to the other systems in the Oracle GoldenGate environment.

1. (Optional) To store the wallet in a location other than the `dirwlt` subdirectory of the Oracle GoldenGate installation directory, specify the desired location with the `WALLETLOCATION` parameter in the `GLOBALS` file. (See [Section 4.4.2](#) for more information about the `GLOBALS` file.)

`WALLETLOCATION directory_path`

2. Create a master-key wallet with the `CREATE WALLET` command in GGSCI.

`CREATE WALLET`

3. Add a master key to the wallet with the `ADD MASTERKEY` command in GGSCI.

`ADD MASTERKEY`

4. Issue the `INFO MASTERKEY` command to confirm that the key you added is the current version. In a new installation, the version should be 1.

`INFO MASTERKEY`

5. Issue the `INFO MASTERKEY` command with the `VERSION` option, where the version is the current version number. Record the version number and the AES hash value of that version.

`INFO MASTERKEY VERSION version`

6. Copy the wallet to all of the other Oracle GoldenGate systems.

7. Issue the `INFO MASTERKEY` command with the `VERSION` option on each system to which you copied the wallet, where the version is the version number that you recorded. For each wallet, make certain the Status is Current and compare the AES hash value with the one that you originally recorded. All wallets must show identical key versions and hash values.

`INFO MASTERKEY VERSION version`

### 11.2.2 Specifying Encryption Parameters in the Parameter File

This procedure adds the parameters that are required to support data encryption in the trails and across the network with the master key and wallet method.

1. In the following parameter files, add the following:

- *To encrypt trail data:* In the parameter file of the primary Extract group and the data pump, add an `ENCRYPTTRAIL` parameter statement before any parameter that specifies a trail or file that you want to be encrypted. Parameters that

specify trails or files are EXTTRAIL, RMTTRAIL, EXTFILE, and RMTFILE. The syntax is:

```
ENCRYPTTRAIL {AES128 | AES192 | AES256}
```

- To encrypt data across TCP/IP: In the parameter file of the data pump (or the primary Extract, if no pump is being used), use the ENCRYPT option of the RMTHOSTOPTIONS parameter. The syntax is:

```
RMTHOSTOPTIONS host, MGRPORT port, ENCRYPT {AES128 | AES192 | AES256 | BLOWFISH}
```

```
RMTHOSTOPTIONS ENCRYPT {AES128 | AES192 | AES256 | BLOWFISH}
```

Where:

- RMTHOSTOPTIONS is used for Extract including passive extracts. See [Section 11.8, "Using Target System Connection Initiation"](#) for more information about passive Extract.
  - ENCRYPTTRAIL without options specifies 256-key byte substitution. This format is not secure and should not be used in a production environment. Use only for backward compatibility with earlier Oracle GoldenGate versions.
  - AES128 encrypts with the AES-128 encryption algorithm.
  - AES192 encrypts with AES-192 encryption algorithm.
  - AES256 encrypts with AES-256 encryption algorithm.
  - BLOWFISH uses Blowfish encryption with a 64-bit block size and a variable-length key size from 32 bits to 128 bits. Use AES if supported for the platform. Use BLOWFISH for backward compatibility with earlier Oracle GoldenGate versions, and for DB2 on z/OS, DB2 for i, and SQL/MX on NonStop. AES is not supported on those platforms.
2. Use the DECRYPTTRAIL parameter for a data pump if you want trail data to be decrypted before it is written to the output trail. Otherwise, the data pump automatically decrypts it, if processing is required, and then reencrypts it before writing to the output trail. (Replicat decrypts the data automatically without any parameter input.)

DECRYPTTRAIL

---

**Note:** You can explicitly decrypt incoming trail data and then re-encrypt it again for any output trails or files. First, enter DECRYPTTRAIL to decrypt the data, and then enter ENCRYPTTRAIL and its output trail specifications. DECRYPTTRAIL must precede ENCRYPTTRAIL. Explicit decryption and re-encryption enables you to vary the AES algorithm from trail to trail, if desired. For example, you can use AES 128 to encrypt a local trail and AES 256 to encrypt a remote trail. Alternatively, you can use the master key and wallet method to encrypt from one process to a second process, and then use the ENCKEYS method to encrypt from the second process to the third process.

---

### 11.2.3 Renewing the Master Key

This procedure renews the master encryption key in the encryption-key wallet. Renewing the master key creates a new version of the key. Its name remains the same,

but the bit ordering changes. As part of your security policy, you should renew the current master key regularly so that it does not get stale.

All renewed versions of a master key remain in the wallet until they are marked for deletion with the `DELETE MASTERKEY` command and then the wallet is purged with the `PURGE WALLET` command. See [Section 11.2.4, "Deleting Stale Master Keys"](#) for more information.

Unless the wallet is maintained centrally on shared storage (as a shared wallet), the updated wallet must be copied to all of the other systems in the Oracle GoldenGate configuration that use that wallet. To do so, the Oracle GoldenGate must be stopped. This procedure includes steps for performing those tasks in the correct order.

1. Stop Extract.

```
STOP EXTRACT group
```

2. On the target systems, issue the following command for each Replicat until it returns `At EOF`.

```
SEND REPLICAT group STATUS
```

3. On the source system, stop the data pumps.

```
STOP EXTRACT group
```

4. On the target systems, stop the Replicat groups.

```
STOP REPLICAT group
```

5. On the source system, issue the following command to open the wallet.

```
OPEN WALLET
```

6. On the source system, issue the following command to confirm the version of the current key. Make a record of the version.

```
INFO MASTERKEY
```

7. On the source system, issue the following command to renew the master key.

```
RENEW MASTERKEY
```

8. On the source system, issue the following command to confirm that a new version is current.

```
INFO MASTERKEY
```

---

**Note:** If you are using a shared wallet, go to step 12. If you are using a wallet on each system, continue to the next step.

---

9. On the source system, issue the following command, where `version` is the new version of the master key. Make a record of the hash value.

```
INFO MASTERKEY VERSION version
```

10. Copy the updated wallet from the source system to the same location as the old wallet on all of the target systems.

11. On each target, issue the following command, where `version` is the new version number of the master key. For each wallet, make certain the Status is Current and

compare the new hash value with the one that you originally recorded. All wallets must show identical key versions and hash values.

```
INFO MASTERKEY VERSION version
```

12. Restart Extract.

```
START EXTRACT group
```

13. Restart the data pumps.

```
START EXTRACT group
```

14. Restart Replicat.

```
START REPLICAT group
```

#### 11.2.4 Deleting Stale Master Keys

This procedure deletes stale versions of the master key. Deleting stale keys should be part of the overall policy for maintaining a secure Oracle GoldenGate wallet. It is recommended that you develop a policy for how many versions of a key you want to keep in the wallet and how long you want to keep them.

---

**Note:** For Oracle GoldenGate deployments using a shared wallet, the older versions of the master key should be retained after the master key is renewed until all processes are using the newest version. The time to wait depends on the topology, latency, and data load of the deployment. A minimum wait of 24 hours is a conservative estimate, but you may need to perform testing to determine how long it takes for all processes to start using a new key. To determine whether all of the processes are using the newest version, view the report file of each Extract immediately after renewing the master key to confirm the last SCN that was mined with the old key. Then, monitor the Replicat report files to verify that this SCN was applied by all Replicat groups. At this point, you can delete the older versions of the master key.

---

If the wallet is on central storage that is accessible by all Oracle GoldenGate installations that use that wallet, you need only perform these steps once to the shared wallet. You do not need to stop the Oracle GoldenGate processes.

If the wallet is not on central storage (meaning there is a copy on each Oracle GoldenGate system) you can do one of the following:

- If you can stop the Oracle GoldenGate processes, you only need to perform the steps to change the wallet once and then copy the updated wallet to the other systems before restarting the Oracle GoldenGate processes.
- If you cannot stop the Oracle GoldenGate processes, you must perform the steps to change the wallet on each system, making certain to perform them exactly the same way on each one.

These steps include prompts for both scenarios.

1. On the source system, issue the following command to determine the versions of the master key that you want to delete. Typically, the oldest versions should be the ones deleted. Make a record of these versions.

```
INFO MASTERKEY
```

2. On the source system, issue the following command to open the wallet.

OPEN WALLET

3. Issue the following command to delete the stale master keys. Options are available to delete a specific version, a range of versions, or all versions including the current one. To delete all of the versions, transaction activity and the Oracle GoldenGate processes must be stopped.

`DELETE MASTERKEY {VERSION version | RANGE FROM begin_value TO end_value}`

---

**Note:** `DELETE MASTERKEY` marks the key versions for deletion but does not actually delete them.

---

4. Review the messages returned by the `DELETE MASTERKEY` command to ensure that the correct versions were marked for deletion. To unmark any version that was marked erroneously, use the `UNDELETE MASTERKEY VERSION version` command before proceeding with these steps. If desired, you can confirm the marked deletions with the `INFO MASTERKEY` command.
5. When you are satisfied that the correct versions are marked for deletion, issue the following command to purge them from the wallet. This is a permanent deletion and cannot be undone.

PURGE WALLET

Next steps:

- If the wallet resides on shared storage, you are done with these steps.
  - If there is a wallet on each system and you cannot stop the Oracle GoldenGate processes, repeat the preceding steps on each Oracle GoldenGate system.
  - If there is a wallet on each system and you can stop the Oracle GoldenGate processes, continue with these steps to stop the processes and copy the wallet to the other systems in the correct order.
6. Stop Extract.
- `STOP EXTRACT group`
7. In GGSCI, issue the following command for each data pump Extract until each returns At EOF, indicating that all of the data in the local trail has been processed.
- `SEND EXTRACT group STATUS`
8. Stop the data pumps.
- `STOP EXTRACT group`
9. On the target systems, issue the following command for each Replicat until it returns At EOF.
- `SEND REPLICAT group STATUS`
10. Stop the Replicat groups.
- `STOP REPLICAT group`
11. Copy the updated wallet from the source system to the same location as the old wallet on all of the target systems.

**12.** Restart Extract.

```
START EXTRACT group
```

**13.** Restart the data pumps.

```
START EXTRACT group
```

**14.** Restart Replicat.

```
START REPLICAT group
```

## 11.3 Encrypting Data with the ENCKEYS Method

To use this method of data encryption, you configure Oracle GoldenGate to generate an encryption key and store the key in a local ENCKEYS file. This method makes use of a permanent key that can only be changed by regenerating the algorithm according to the instructions in [Section 11.6, "Populating an ENCKEYS File with Encryption Keys."](#) The ENCKEYS file must be secured through the normal method of assigning file permissions in the operating system.

This procedure generates an AES encryption key and provides instructions for storing it in the ENCKEYS file.

### 11.3.1 Encrypting the Data with the ENCKEYS Method

1. Generate an encryption key and store it in the ENCKEYS file. See [Section 11.6, "Populating an ENCKEYS File with Encryption Keys."](#) Make certain to copy the finished ENCKEYS file to the Oracle GoldenGate installation directory on any intermediary systems and all target systems.
2. In the following parameter files, add the following:

- *To encrypt trail data:* In the parameter file of the primary Extract group and the data pump, add an ENCRYPTTRAIL parameter with the KEYNAME option before any parameter that specifies a trail or file that you want to be encrypted. Parameters that specify trails or files are EXTTRAIL, RMTTRAIL, EXTFILE, and RMTFILE. The syntax is:

```
ENCRYPTTRAIL {AES128 | AES192 | AES256} KEYNAME keyname
```

- *To encrypt data across TCP/IP:* In the RMTHOSTOPTIONS parameter in the parameter file of the data pump (or the primary Extract, if no pump is being used), add the ENCRYPT option with the KEYWORD clause. The syntax is one of the following:

```
RMTHOSTOPTIONS host, MGRPORT port, ENCRYPT {AES128 | AES192 | AES256 | BLOWFISH} KEYNAME keyname
```

```
RMTHOSTOPTIONS ENCRYPT {AES128 | AES192 | AES256 | BLOWFISH} KEYNAME keyname
```

Where:

- RMTHOSTOPTIONS is used for Extract. See [Section 11.8, "Using Target System Connection Initiation"](#) for more information about passive Extract.
- ENCRYPTTRAIL without options uses AES128 as the default for all database types except the iSeries, z/OS, and NonStop platforms, where BLOWFISH is the default.

- AES128 encrypts with the AES-128 encryption algorithm. Not supported for iSeries, z/OS, and NonStop platforms.
- AES192 encrypts with AES-192 encryption algorithm. Not supported for iSeries, z/OS, and NonStop platforms.
- AES256 encrypts with AES-256 encryption algorithm. Not supported for iSeries, z/OS, and NonStop platforms.
- BLOWFISH uses Blowfish encryption with a 64-bit block size and a variable-length key size from 32 bits to 128 bits. Use AES if supported for the platform. Use BLOWFISH for backward compatibility with earlier Oracle GoldenGate versions, and for DB2 on z/OS, DB2 for i, and SQL/MX on NonStop. AES is not supported on those platforms.
- KEYNAME *keyname* specifies the logical look-up name of an encryption key in the ENCKEYS file.

---

**Note:** RMTHOST is used unless the Extract is in a passive configuration. See [Section 11.8, "Using Target System Connection Initiation"](#) for more information.

---

3. If using a static Collector with data encrypted over TCP/IP, append the following parameters in the Collector startup string:

```
-KEYNAME keyname
-ENCRYPT algorithm
```

The specified key name and algorithm must match those specified with the KEYNAME and ENCRYPT options of RMTHOST.

### 11.3.2 Decrypting the Data with the ENCKEYS Method

Data that is encrypted over TCP/IP connections is decrypted automatically at the destination before it is written to a trail, unless trail encryption also is specified.

Data that is encrypted in the trail remains encrypted unless the DECRYPTTRAIL parameter is used. DECRYPTTRAIL is required by Replicat before it can apply encrypted data to the target. A data pump passes encrypted data untouched to the output trail, unless the DECRYPTTRAIL and ENCRYPTTRAIL parameters are used. If the data pump must perform work on the data, decrypt and encrypt the data as follows.

#### To decrypt data for processing by a data pump

Add the DECRYPTTRAIL parameter to the parameter file of the data pump. The decryption algorithm and key must match the ones that were used to encrypt the trail (see [Section 11.3.1, "Encrypting the Data with the ENCKEYS Method"](#)).

```
DECRYPTTRAIL {AES128 | AES192 | AES256} KEYNAME keyname
```

#### To encrypt data after processing by a data pump

To encrypt data before the data pump writes it to an output trail or file, use the ENCRYPTTRAIL parameter before the parameters that specify those trails or files. Parameters that specify trails or files are EXTTRAIL, RMTTRAIL, EXTFILE, and RMTFILE. The ENCRYPTTRAIL parameter and the trail or file specifications must occur after the DECRYPTTRAIL parameter. See [Section 11.3.1, "Encrypting the Data with the ENCKEYS Method."](#)

---

**Note:** The algorithm specified with ENCRYPTTRAIL can vary from trail to trail. For example, you can use AES 128 to encrypt a local trail and AES 256 to encrypt a remote trail.

---

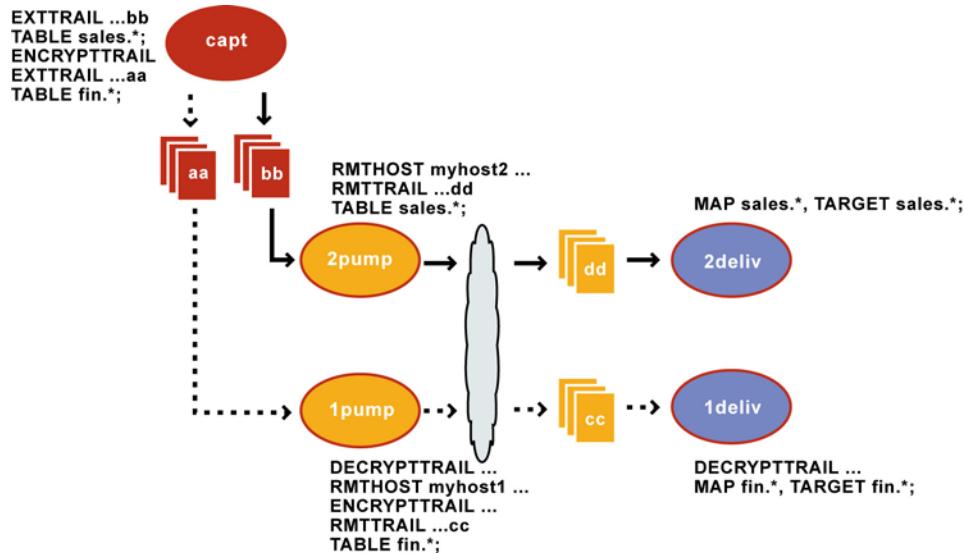
### To decrypt data for processing by Replicat

If a trail that Replicat reads is encrypted, add a DECRYPTTRAIL parameter statement to the Replicat parameter file. The decryption algorithm and key must match the ones that were used to encrypt the trail. See [Section 11.3.1, "Encrypting the Data with the ENCKEYS Method."](#)

### 11.3.3 Examples of Data Encryption using the ENCKEYS Method

The following example shows how to turn encryption on and off for different trails or files. In this example, Extract writes to two local trails, only one of which must be encrypted.

In the Extract configuration, trail bb is the non-encrypted trail, so its EXTTRAIL parameter is placed before the ENCRYPTTRAIL parameter that encrypts trail aa. Alternatively, you can use the NOENCRYPTTRAIL parameter before the EXTTRAIL parameter that specifies trail bb and then use the ENCRYPTTRAIL parameter before the EXTTRAIL parameter that specifies trail aa.



This graphic shows turning encryption on and off for different trails or files that are written by the same Extract or data pump process.

---

In this example, the encrypted data must be decrypted so that data pump 1pump can perform work on it. Therefore, the DECRYPTTRAIL parameter is used in the parameter file of the data pump. To re-encrypt the data for output, the ENCRYPTTRAIL parameter must be used after DECRYPTTRAIL but before the output trail specification(s). If the data pump did not have to perform work on the data, the DECRYPTTRAIL and ENCRYPTTRAIL parameters could have been omitted to retain encryption all the way to Replicat.

#### Example 11-1 Extract Parameter File

EXTRACT capt

```

USERIDALIAS ogg
DISCARDFILE /ogg/capt.dsc, PURGE
-- Do not encrypt this trail.
EXTTRAIL /ogg/dirdat/bb
TABLE SALES.*;
-- Encrypt this trail with AES-192.
ENCRYPTTRAIL AES192 KEYNAME mykey1
EXTTRAIL /ogg/dirdat/aa
TABLE FIN.*;
```

**Example 11–2 Data Pump 1 Parameter File**

```

EXTRACT 1pump
USERIDALIAS ogg
DISCARDFILE /ogg/1pmp.dsc, PURGE
-- Decrypt the trail this pump reads. Use encryption key mykey1.
DECRYPTTRAIL AES192 KEYNAME mykey1
-- Encrypt the trail this pump writes to, using AES-192.
RMTHOSTOPTIONS myhost1, MGRPORT 7809
ENCRYPTTRAIL AES192 KEYNAME mykey2
RMTTRAIL /ogg/dirdat/cc
TABLE FIN.*;
```

**Example 11–3 Data pump 2 Parameter File**

```

EXTRACT 2pump
USERIDALIAS ogg
DISCARDFILE /ogg/2pmp.dsc, PURGE
RMTHOST myhost2, MGRPORT 7809
RMTTRAIL /ogg/dirdat/dd
TABLE SALES.*;
```

**Example 11–4 Replicat1 (on myhost1) Parameter File**

```

REPLICAT 1deliv
USERIDALIAS ogg
ASSUMETARGETDEFS
DISCARDFILE /ogg/1deliv.dsc, PURGE
-- Decrypt the trail this Replicat reads. Use encryption key mykey2.
DECRYPTTRAIL AES192 KEYNAME mykey2
MAP FIN.* , TARGET FIN.*;
```

**Example 11–5 Replicat 2 (on myhost2) parameter file**

```

REPLICAT 2deliv
USERIDALIAS ogg
ASSUMETARGETDEFS
DISCARDFILE /ogg/2deliv.dsc, PURGE
MAP SALES.* , TARGET SALES.*;
```

## 11.4 Managing Identities in a Credential Store

This section shows how to use an Oracle GoldenGate credential store to maintain encrypted database passwords and user IDs and associate them with an alias. It is the alias, not the actual user ID or password, that is specified in a command or parameter file, and no user input of an encryption key is required. The credential store is implemented as an autologin wallet within the Oracle Credential Store Framework (CSF).

Another benefit of using a credential store is that multiple installations of Oracle GoldenGate can use the same one, while retaining control over their local credentials. You can partition the credential store into logical containers known as *domains*, for example, one domain per installation of Oracle GoldenGate. Domains enable you to develop one set of aliases (for example ext for Extract, rep for Replicat) and then assign different local credentials to those aliases in each domain. For example, credentials for user ogg1 can be stored as ALIAS ext under DOMAIN system1, while credentials for user ogg2 can be stored as ALIAS ext under DOMAIN system2.

The credential store security feature is not supported on the iSeries, z/OS, and NonStop platforms. For those platforms, as well as any other supported platforms, see [Section 11.5, "Encrypting a Password in a Command or Parameter File."](#)

Using a credential store involves these steps:

- [Creating and Populating the Credential Store](#)
- [Specifying the Alias in a Parameter File or Command](#)

#### 11.4.1 Creating and Populating the Credential Store

1. (Optional) To store the credential store in a location other than the dircrd subdirectory of the Oracle GoldenGate installation directory, specify the desired location with the CREDENTIALSTORELOCATION parameter in the GLOBALS file. (See [Section 4.4.2](#) for more information about the GLOBALS file.)
2. From the Oracle GoldenGate installation directory, run GGSCI.
3. Issue the following command to create the credential store.

```
ADD CREDENTIALSTORE
```

4. Issue the following command to add each set of credentials to the credential store.

```
ALTER CREDENTIALSTORE ADD USER userid,  
    [PASSWORD password]  
    [ALIAS alias]  
    [DOMAIN domain]
```

Where:

- *userid* is the user name. Only one instance of a user name can exist in the credential store unless the ALIAS or DOMAIN option is used.
- *password* is the password. The password is echoed (not obfuscated) when this option is used. For security reasons, it is recommended that you omit this option and allow the command to prompt for the password, so that it is obfuscated as it is entered.
- *alias* is an alias for the user name. The alias substitutes for the credential in parameters and commands where a login credential is required. If the ALIAS option is omitted, the alias defaults to the user name. If you do not want user names in parameters or command input, use ALIAS and specify a different name from that of the user.
- *domain* is the domain that is to contain the specified alias. The default domain is *Oracle GoldenGate*.

For more information about the commands used in this procedure and additional credential store commands, see [Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX](#).

## 11.4.2 Specifying the Alias in a Parameter File or Command

The following commands and parameters accept an alias as substitution for a login credential.

**Table 11-1 Specifying Credential Aliases in Parameters and Commands**

Purpose of the Credential	Parameter or Command to Use
Oracle GoldenGate database login <sup>1</sup>	USERIDALIAS <i>alias</i>
Oracle GoldenGate database login for Oracle ASM instance	TRANLOGOPTIONS ASMUSERALIAS <i>alias</i>
Oracle GoldenGate database login for a downstream Oracle mining database	TRANLOGOPTIONS MININGUSERALIAS <i>alias</i>
Password substitution for {CREATE   ALTER} USER <i>name</i> IDENTIFIED BY <i>password</i>	DDLOPTIONS DEFAULTUSERPASSWORDALIAS <i>alias</i>
Oracle GoldenGate database login from GGSCI	DBLOGIN USERIDALIAS <i>alias</i>
Oracle GoldenGate database login to a downstream Oracle mining database from GGSCI	MININGDBLOGIN USERIDALIAS <i>alias</i>

<sup>1</sup> Syntax elements required for USERIDALIAS vary by database type. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information.

## 11.5 Encrypting a Password in a Command or Parameter File

This section shows how to encrypt a database password that is to be specified in a command or parameter file. This method takes a clear-text password as input and produces an obfuscated password string and a lookup key, both of which can then be used in the command or parameter file. This encryption method supports all of the databases that require a login for an Oracle GoldenGate process to access the database.

Depending on the database, you may be able to use a credential store as an alternative to this method. See [Section 11.4, "Managing Identities in a Credential Store."](#)

Using an encrypted password in a command or parameter file involves these steps:

- [Section 11.5.1, "Encrypting the Password."](#)
- [Section 11.5.2, "Specifying the Encrypted Password in a Parameter File or Command."](#)

### 11.5.1 Encrypting the Password

1. Run GGSCI.
2. Issue the ENCRYPT PASSWORD command.

```
ENCRYPT PASSWORD password algorithm ENCRYPTKEY {key_name | DEFAULT}
```

Where:

- *password* is the clear-text login password. Do not enclose the password within quotes. If the password is case-sensitive, type it that way.
- *algorithm* specifies the encryption algorithm to use:
  - AES128 uses the AES-128 cipher, which has a key size of 128 bits.
  - AES192 uses the AES-192 cipher, which has a key size of 192 bits.

- AES256 uses the AES-256 cipher, which has a key size of 256 bits.
  - BLOWFISH uses Blowfish encryption with a 64-bit block size and a variable-length key size from 32 bits to 128 bits. Use AES if supported for the platform. Use BLOWFISH for backward compatibility with earlier Oracle GoldenGate versions, and for DB2 on z/OS, DB2 for i, and SQL/MX on NonStop. AES is not supported on those platforms.
  - ENCRYPTKEY *key\_name* specifies the logical name of a user-created encryption key in the ENCKEYS lookup file. The key name is used to look up the actual key in the ENCKEYS file. Using a user-defined key and an ENCKEYS file is required for AES encryption. To create a key and ENCKEYS file, see [Section 11.6, "Populating an ENCKEYS File with Encryption Keys"](#).
  - ENCRYPTKEY DEFAULT directs Oracle GoldenGate to generate a predefined Blowfish key. This type of key is insecure and should not be used in a production environment if the platform supports AES. Use this option only for DB2 on /OS, DB2 for i, and SQL/MX when BLOWFISH is specified. ENCRYPT PASSWORD returns an error if AES is used with DEFAULT.
- If no algorithm is specified, AES128 is the default for all database types except DB2 on z/OS and NonStop SQL/MX, where BLOWFISH is the default.

The following are examples of ENCRYPT PASSWORD with its various options.

```
ENCRYPT PASSWORD mypassword AES256 ENCRYPTKEY mykey1
ENCRYPT PASSWORD mypassword BLOWFISH ENCRYPTKEY mykey1
ENCRYPT PASSWORD mypassword BLOWFISH ENCRYPTKEY DEFAULT
```

3. The encrypted password is output to the screen when you run the ENCRYPT PASSWORD command. Copy the encrypted password and then see [Section 11.5.2](#) for instructions on pasting it to a command or parameter.

## 11.5.2 Specifying the Encrypted Password in a Parameter File or Command

Copy the encrypted password that you generated with the ENCRYPT PASSWORD command (see [Section 11.5](#)), and then paste it into the appropriate Oracle GoldenGate parameter statement or command as shown in [Table 11-2](#). Option descriptions follow the table.

**Table 11-2 Specifying Encrypted Passwords in Parameters and Commands**

Purpose of the Password	Parameter or Command to Use
Oracle GoldenGate database login <sup>1</sup>	USERID <i>user</i> , PASSWORD <i>password</i> , & <i>algorithm</i> ENCRYPTKEY { <i>keyname</i>   DEFAULT}
Oracle GoldenGate database login for Oracle ASM instance	TRANLOGOPTIONS ASMUSER SYS@ASM_INSTANCE_NAME, & ASMPASSWORD <i>password</i> , & <i>algorithm</i> ENCRYPTKEY { <i>keyname</i>   DEFAULT}
Oracle GoldenGate database login for a downstream Oracle mining database	[MININGUSER {/   <i>user</i> }[, MININGPASSWORD <i>password</i> ]& [ <i>algorithm</i> ENCRYPTKEY { <i>key_name</i>   DEFAULT}]]& [SYSDBA]
Password substitution for {CREATE   ALTER} USER <i>name</i> IDENTIFIED BY <i>password</i>	DDLOPTIONS DEFAULTUSERPASSWORD <i>password</i> & <i>algorithm</i> ENCRYPTKEY { <i>keyname</i>   DEFAULT}
Oracle TDE shared-secret password	DBOPTIONS DECRYPTPASSWORD <i>password</i> <sup>2</sup> <i>algorithm</i> & ENCRYPTKEY { <i>keyname</i>   DEFAULT}

**Table 11-2 (Cont.) Specifying Encrypted Passwords in Parameters and Commands**

Purpose of the Password	Parameter or Command to Use
Oracle GoldenGate database login from GGSCI	DBLOGIN USERID <i>user</i> , PASSWORD <i>password</i> , & algorithm ENCRYPTKEY { <i>keyname</i>   DEFAULT}
Oracle GoldenGate database login to a downstream Oracle mining database from GGSCI	MININGDBLOGIN USERID <i>user</i> , PASSWORD <i>password</i> , & algorithm ENCRYPTKEY { <i>keyname</i>   DEFAULT}

<sup>1</sup> Syntax elements required for *USERID* vary by database type. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information.

<sup>2</sup> This is the shared secret.

Where:

- *user* is the database user name for the Oracle GoldenGate process or (Oracle only) a host string. For Oracle ASM, the user must be SYS.
- *password* is the encrypted password that is copied from the ENCRYPT PASSWORD command results.
- *algorithm* specifies the encryption algorithm that was used to encrypt the password: AES128, AES192, AES256, or BLOWFISH. AES128 is the default if the default key is used and no algorithm is specified.
- ENCRYPTKEY *keyname* specifies the logical name of a user-created encryption key in the ENCKEYS lookup file. Use if ENCRYPT PASSWORD was used with the KEYNAME *keyname* option.
- ENCRYPTKEY DEFAULT directs Oracle GoldenGate to use a random key. Use if ENCRYPT PASSWORD was used with the KEYNAME DEFAULT option.

The following are examples of using an encrypted password in parameters and command:

```
SOURCEDB db1 USERID ogg, &
PASSWORD AACAAAAAAAAAAJAUEUGODSCVGJEEIUGKJDJTNDKEJFFFTC, &
AES128, ENCRYPTKEY securekey1

USERID ogg, PASSWORD AACAAAAAAAAAAJAUEUGODSCVGJEEIUGKJDJTNDKEJFFFTC, &
BLOWFISH, ENCRYPTKEY securekey1

USERID ogg, PASSWORD AACAAAAAAAAAAJAUEUGODSCVGJEEIUGKJDJTNDKEJFFFTC, &
BLOWFISH, ENCRYPTKEY DEFAULT

TRANLOGOPTIONS ASMUSER SYS@asm1, &
ASMPASSWORD AACAAAAAAAAAAJAUEUGODSCVGJEEIUGKJDJTNDKEJFFFTC, &
AES128, ENCRYPTKEY securekey1

DBLOGIN USERID ogg, PASSWORD &
AACAAAAAAAAAAJAUEUGODSCVGJEEIUGKJDJTNDKEJFFFTC, &
AES128, ENCRYPTKEY securekey1

DDLOPTS DEFAULTUSERPASSWORD &
AACAAAAAAAAAAJAUEUGODSCVGJEEIUGKJDJTNDKEJFFFTC, &
AES 256 ENCRYPTKEY mykey

DBOPTIONS DECRYPTPASSWORD AACAAAAAAAAAAJAUEUGODSCVGJEEIUGKJDJTNDKEJFFFTC, &
AES 256 ENCRYPTKEY mykey

DDLOPTS PASSWORD AACAAAAAAAAAAJAUEUGODSCVGJEEIUGKJDJTNDKEJFFFTC, &
AES 256 ENCRYPTKEY mykey
```

## 11.6 Populating an ENCKEYS File with Encryption Keys

You must generate and store encryption keys when using the following security features:

- ENCRYPTTRAIL with KEYNAME *keyname* (see [Section 11.3, "Encrypting Data with the ENCKEYS Method"](#))
- ENCRYPT PASSWORD with ENCRYPTKEY *keyname* (see [Section 11.5, "Encrypting a Password in a Command or Parameter File"](#))
- RMTHOST or RMTHOSTOPTIONS with ENCRYPT (see [Section 11.3, "Encrypting Data with the ENCKEYS Method"](#))

In this procedure you will:

- Create one or more encryption keys.
- Store the keys in an ENCKEYS lookup file on the source system.
- Copy the ENCKEYS file to each target system.

You can define your own key or run the Oracle GoldenGate KEYGEN utility to create a random key.

### 11.6.1 Defining Your Own Key

Use a tool of your choice. The key value can be up to 256 bits (32 bytes) as either of the following:

- a quoted alphanumeric string (for example "Dailykey")
- a hex string with the prefix 0x (for example 0x420E61BE7002D63560929CCA17A4E1FB)

### 11.6.2 Using KEYGEN to Generate a Key

Change directories to the Oracle GoldenGate home directory on the source system, and issue the following shell command. You can create multiple keys, if needed. The key values are returned to your screen. You can copy and paste them into the ENCKEYS file.

```
KEYGEN key_length n
```

Where:

- *key\_length* is the encryption key length, up to 256 bits (32 bytes).
- *n* represents the number of keys to generate.

Example:

```
KEYGEN 128 4
```

### 11.6.3 Creating and Populating the ENCKEYS Lookup File

1. On the source system, open a new ASCII text file.
2. For each key value that you generated, enter a logical name of your choosing, followed by the key value itself.
  - The key name can be a string of 1 to 24 alphanumeric characters without spaces or quotes.
  - Place multiple key definitions on separate lines.

- Do not enclose a key name or value within quotes; otherwise it will be interpreted as text.

Use the following sample `ENCKEYS` file as a guide.

Encryption key name	Encryption key value
## Key name	Key value
superkey	0x420E61BE7002D63560929CCA17A4E1FB
secretkey	0x027742185BBF232D7C664A5E1A76B040
superkey1	0x42DACD1B0E94539763C6699D3AE8E200
superkey2	0x0343AD757A50A08E7F9A17313DBAB045
superkey3	0x43AC8DCE660CED861B6DC4C6408C7E8A

3. Save the file as the name `ENCKEYS` in all upper case letters, *without an extension*, in the Oracle GoldenGate installation directory.
4. Copy the `ENCKEYS` file to the Oracle GoldenGate installation directory on every system. The key names and values in all of the `ENCKEYS` files must be identical, or else the data exchange will fail and Extract and Collector will abort with the following message:

GGS error 118 – TCP/IP Server with invalid data.

## 11.7 Configuring GGSCI Command Security

You can establish command security for Oracle GoldenGate to control which users have access to which Oracle GoldenGate functions. For example, you can allow certain users to issue `INFO` and `STATUS` commands, while preventing their use of `START` and `STOP` commands. Security levels are defined by the operating system's user groups.

To implement security for Oracle GoldenGate commands, you create a `CMDSEC` file in the Oracle GoldenGate directory. Without this file, access to all Oracle GoldenGate commands is granted to all users.

---

**Note:** The security of the `ggsci` program itself is controlled by the security controls of the operating system.

---

### 11.7.1 Setting Up Command Security

1. Open a new ASCII text file.
2. Referring to the following syntax and the example on [on page 11-18](#), create one or more security rules for each command that you want to restrict, one rule per line. List the rules in order from the most specific (those with no wildcards) to the least specific. Security rules are processed from the top of the `CMDSEC` file downward. The first rule satisfied is the one that determines whether or not access is allowed.

Separate each of the following components with spaces or tabs.

`command_name command_object OS_group OS_user {YES | NO}`

Where:

- `command_name` is a GGSCI command name or a wildcard, for example `START` or `STOP` or `*`.
- `command_object` is any GGSCI command object or a wildcard, for example `EXTRACT` or `REPLICAT` or `MANAGER`.

- *OS\_group* is the name of a Windows or UNIX user group. On a UNIX system, you can specify a numeric group ID instead of the group name. You can use a wildcard to specify all groups.
  - *OS\_user* is the name of a Windows or UNIX user. On a UNIX system, you can specify a numeric user ID instead of the user name. You can use a wildcard to specify all users.
  - YES | NO specifies whether access to the command is granted or prohibited.
3. Save the file as CMDSEC (using upper case letters on a UNIX system) in the Oracle GoldenGate home directory.

The following example illustrates the correct implementation of a CMDSEC file on a UNIX system.

**Table 11–3 Sample CMDSEC File with Explanations**

File Contents	Explanation
#GG command security	Comment line
STATUS REPLICAT * Smith NO	STATUS REPLICAT is denied to user Smith.
STATUS * dpt1 * YES	Except for the preceding rule, all users in dpt1 are granted all STATUS commands.
START REPLICAT root * YES	START REPLICAT is granted to all members of the root group.
START REPLICAT * * NO	Except for the preceding rule, START REPLICAT is denied to all users.
* EXTRACT 200 * NO	All EXTRACT commands are denied to all groups with ID of 200.
* * root root YES	Grants the root user any command.
* * * * NO	Denies all commands to all users. This line covers security for any other users that were not explicitly granted or denied access by preceding rules. Without it, all commands would be granted to all users except for preceding explicit grants or denials.

The following *incorrect* example illustrates what to avoid when creating a CMDSEC file.

**Table 11–4 Incorrect CMDSEC Entries**

File Contents	Description
STOP * dpt2 * NO	All STOP commands are denied to everyone in group dpt2.
STOP * * Chen YES	All STOP commands are granted to Chen.

The order of the entries in Table 11–4 causes a logical error. The first rule (line 1) denies all STOP commands to all members of group dpt2. The second rule (line 2) grants all STOP commands to user Chen. However, because Chen is a member of the dpt2 group, he has been denied access to all STOP commands by the second rule, even though he is supposed to have permission to issue them.

The proper way to configure this security rule is to set the user-specific rule before the more general rule(s). Thus, to correct the error, you would reverse the order of the two STOP rules.

## 11.7.2 Securing the CMDSEC File

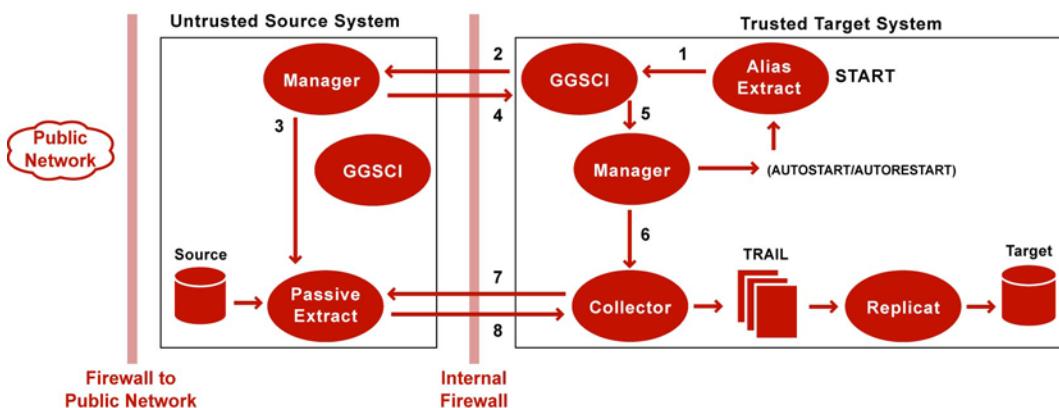
The security of the GGSCI program and that of the CMDSEC file is controlled by the security controls of the operating system. Because the CMDSEC file is a source of security, it must be secured. You can grant read access as needed, but Oracle GoldenGate recommends denying write and delete access to everyone but Oracle GoldenGate Administrators.

## 11.8 Using Target System Connection Initiation

When a target system resides inside a trusted intranet zone, initiating connections from the source system (the standard Oracle GoldenGate method) may violate security policies if the source system is in a less trusted zone. It also may violate security policies if a system in a less trusted zone contains information about the ports or IP address of a system in the trusted zone, such as that normally found in an Oracle GoldenGate Extract parameter file.

In this kind of intranet configuration, you can use a *passive-alias Extract* configuration. Connections are initiated from the target system inside the trusted zone by an *alias Extract* group, which acts as an alias for a regular Extract group on the source system, known in this case as the *passive Extract*. Once a connection between the two systems is established, data is processed and transferred across the network by the passive Extract group in the usual way.

**Figure 11–1 Connection Initiation from Trusted Network Zone**



This graphic shows how to initiate a connection from a trusted network zone. The steps listed below describe this graphic in more detail.

- \*\*\*\*\*
- 1. An Oracle GoldenGate user starts the alias Extract on the trusted system, or an AUTOSTART or AUTORESTART parameter causes it to start.
- 2. GGSCI on the trusted system sends a message to Manager on the less trusted system to start the associated passive Extract. The host name or IP address and port number of the Manager on the trusted system are sent to the less trusted system.
- 3. On the less trusted system, Manager starts the passive Extract, and the passive Extract finds an open port (according to rules in the DYNAMICPORTLIST Manager parameter) and listens on that port.
- 4. The Manager on the less trusted system returns that port to GGSCI on the trusted system.

5. GGSCI on the trusted system sends a request to the Manager on that system to start a Collector process on that system.
6. The target Manager starts the Collector process and passes it the port number where Extract is listening on the less trusted system.
7. Collector on the trusted system opens a connection to the passive Extract on the less trusted system.
8. Data is sent across the network from the passive Extract to the Collector on the target and is written to the trail in the usual manner for processing by Replicat.

### 11.8.1 Configuring the Passive Extract Group

The passive Extract group on the less trusted source system will be one of the following, depending on which one is responsible for sending data across the network:

- A solo Extract group that reads the transaction logs and also sends the data to the target, or:
- A data pump Extract group that reads a local trail supplied by a primary Extract and then sends the data to the target. In this case, there are no special configuration requirements for the primary Extract, just the data pump.

To create an Extract group in passive mode, use the standard ADD EXTRACT command and options, but add the PASSIVE keyword in any location relative to other command options. Examples:

```
ADD EXTRACT fin, TRANLOG, BEGIN NOW, PASSIVE, DESC 'passive Extract'  
ADD EXTRACT fin, PASSIVE, TRANLOG, BEGIN NOW, DESC 'passive Extract'
```

To configure parameters for the passive Extract group, create a parameter file in the normal manner, except:

- *Exclude* the RMTHOST parameter, which normally would specify the host and port information for the target Manager.
- Use the optional RMTHOSTOPTIONS parameter to specify any compression and encryption rules. For information about the RMTHOSTOPTIONS options, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

For more information about configuring an Extract group, see [Section 14, "Configuring Online Change Synchronization."](#)

### 11.8.2 Configuring the Alias Extract Group

The alias Extract group on the trusted target does not perform any data processing activities. Its sole purpose is to initiate and terminate connections to the less trusted source. In this capacity, the alias Extract group does not use a parameter file nor does it write processing checkpoints. A checkpoint file is used only to determine whether the passive Extract group is running or not and to record information required for the remote connection.

To create an Extract group in alias mode, use the ADD EXTRACT command without any other options except the following:

```
ADD EXTRACT group  
, RMTHOST {host_name | IP_address}  
, MGRPORT port  
, RMTNAME name  
, DESC 'description'
```

The RMTHOST specification identifies this group as an alias Extract, and the information is written to the checkpoint file. The *host\_name* and *IP\_address* options specify the name or IP address of the source system. MGRPORT specifies the port on the source system where Manager is running.

The alias Extract name can be the same as that of the passive Extract, or it can be different. If the names are different, use the optional RMTNAME specification to specify the name of the passive Extract. If RMTNAME is not used, Oracle GoldenGate expects the names to be identical and writes the name to the checkpoint file of the alias Extract for use when establishing the connection.

Error handling for TCP/IP connections is guided by the TCPERRS file on the target system. It is recommended that you set the response values for the errors in this file to RETRY. The default is ABEND. This file also provides options for setting the number of retries and the delay between attempts. For more information about error handling for TCP/IP and the TCPERRS file, see [Chapter 15, "Handling Processing Errors"](#).

### 11.8.3 Starting and Stopping the Passive and Alias Processes

To start or stop Oracle GoldenGate extraction in the passive-alias Extract configuration, you must start or stop the alias Extract group from GGSCI on the target.

```
START EXTRACT alias_group_name
```

or,

```
STOP EXTRACT alias_group_name
```

The command is sent to the source system to start or stop the passive Extract group. Do not issue these commands directly against the passive Extract group. You can issue a KILL EXTRACT command directly for the passive Extract group.

When using the Manager parameters AUTOSTART and AUTORESTART to automatically start or restart processes, use them on the target system, not the source system. The alias Extract is started first and then the start command is sent to the passive Extract.

### 11.8.4 Managing Extraction Activities

Once extraction processing has been started, you can manage and monitor it in the usual manner by issuing commands against the passive Extract group from GGSCI on the source system. The standard GGSCI monitoring commands, such as INFO and VIEW REPORT, can be issued from either the source or target systems. If a monitoring command is issued for the alias Extract group, it is forwarded to the passive Extract group. The alias Extract group name is replaced in the command with the passive Extract group name. For example, INFO EXTRACT *alias* becomes INFO EXTRACT *passive*. The results of the command are displayed on the system where the command was issued.

### 11.8.5 Other Considerations when using Passive-Alias Extract

When using a passive-alias Extract configuration, these rules apply:

- In this configuration, Extract can only write to one target system.
- This configuration can be used in an Oracle RAC installation by creating the Extract group in the normal manner (using the THREADS option to specify the number of redo threads).
- The ALTER EXTRACT command cannot be used for the alias Extract, because that group does not do data processing.

- To use the `DELETE EXTRACT` command for a passive or alias Extract group, issue the command from the local GGSCI.
- Remote tasks, specified with `RMTTASK` in the Extract parameter file and used for some initial load methods, are not supported in this configuration. A remote task requires the connection to be initiated from the source system and uses a direct connection between Extract and Replicat.

# 12

---

## Mapping and Manipulating Data

This chapter describes how you can integrate data between source and target tables.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Limitations of Support](#)
- [Parameters that Control Mapping and Data Integration](#)
- [Mapping between Dissimilar Databases](#)
- [Deciding Where Data Mapping and Conversion Will Take Place](#)
- [Globalization Considerations when Mapping Data](#)
- [Mapping Columns](#)
- [Selecting and Filtering Rows](#)
- [Retrieving Before and After Values](#)
- [Selecting Columns](#)
- [Selecting and Converting SQL Operations](#)
- [Using Transaction History](#)
- [Testing and Transforming Data](#)
- [Using Tokens](#)

### 12.1 Limitations of Support

The following are limitations to the support of data mapping and manipulation.

- Oracle GoldenGate does not support the filtering, column mapping, or manipulation of large objects.
- Some Oracle GoldenGate features and functionality do not support the use of data filtering and manipulation. Where applicable, this limitation is documented.

### 12.2 Parameters that Control Mapping and Data Integration

All data selection, mapping, and manipulation that Oracle GoldenGate performs is accomplished by using one or more options of the `TABLE` and `MAP` parameters.

- Use `TABLE` in the Extract parameter file.
- Use `MAP` in the Replicat parameter file.

TABLE and MAP specify the database objects that are affected by the other parameters in the parameter file. See [Section 4.5, "Specifying Object Names in Oracle GoldenGate Input"](#) for instructions for specifying object names in these parameters.

## 12.3 Mapping between Dissimilar Databases

Mapping and conversion between tables that have different data structures requires either a source-definitions file, a target-definitions file, or in some cases both. When used, this file must be specified with the SOURCEDEFS or TARGETDEFS parameter. For more information about how to create a source-definitions or target-definitions file, see [Chapter 13, "Associating Replicated Data with Metadata."](#)

## 12.4 Deciding Where Data Mapping and Conversion Will Take Place

If the configuration you are planning involves a large amount of column mapping or data conversion, observe the following guidelines to determine which process or processes will perform these functions.

### 12.4.1 Mapping and Conversion on Windows and UNIX Systems

When Oracle GoldenGate is operating only on Windows-based and UNIX-based systems, column mapping and conversion can be performed on the source system, on the target system, or on an intermediary system. To prevent the added overhead of this processing on the source system, you can configure the mapping and conversion to be performed on the target system or on an intermediary system.

In the case where there are multiple sources and one target, it might be more efficient to perform the mapping and conversion on the source. You can use one target-definitions file generated from the target tables, rather than having to manage an individual source-definitions file for each source database, which needs to be copied to the target each time the applications make layout changes.

For more information on which types of definitions files to use, and where, see [Chapter 13, "Associating Replicated Data with Metadata."](#)

### 12.4.2 Mapping and Conversion on NonStop Systems

If you are mapping or converting data from a Windows or UNIX system to a NonStop Enscribe target, the mapping or conversion must be performed on the Windows or UNIX source system. Replicat for NonStop cannot convert three-part or two-part SQL table names and data types to the three-part file names that are used for the Enscribe platform. Extract can format the trail data with Enscribe names and target data types.

## 12.5 Globalization Considerations when Mapping Data

When planning to map and convert data between databases and platforms, take into consideration what is supported or not supported by Oracle GoldenGate in terms of globalization. These considerations encompass the following topics:

[Section 12.5.1, "Conversion between Character Sets"](#)

[Section 12.5.2, "Preservation of Locale"](#)

[Section 12.5.3, "Support for Escape Sequences"](#)

## 12.5.1 Conversion between Character Sets

Oracle GoldenGate converts between source and target character sets if they are different, so that object names and column data are compared, mapped, and manipulated properly from one database to another. See [Appendix A, "Supported Character Sets,"](#) for a list of supported character sets.

To ensure accurate character representation from one database to another, the following must be true:

- The character set of the target database must be a superset or equivalent of the character set of the source database. *Equivalent* means not equal, but having the same set of characters. For example, Shift-JIS and EUC-JP technically are not completely equal, but have the same characters in most cases.
- If your client applications use different character sets, the database character set must also be a superset or equivalent of the character sets of the client applications.

In this configuration, every character is represented when converting from a client or source character set to the local database character set.

A Replicat process can support conversion from one source character set to one target character set.

### 12.5.1.1 Database Object Names

Oracle GoldenGate processes catalog, schema, table and column names in their native language as determined by the character set encoding of the source and target databases. This support preserves single-byte and multibyte names, symbols, accent characters, and case-sensitivity with locale taken into account where available, at all levels of the database hierarchy.

### 12.5.1.2 Column Data

Oracle GoldenGate supports the conversion of column data between character sets when the data is contained in the following column types:

- Character-type columns: CHAR/VARCHAR/CLOB to CHAR/VARCHAR/CLOB of another character set; and CHAR/VARCHAR/CLOB to and from NCHAR/NVARCHAR/NCLOB.
- Columns that contain string-based numbers and date-time data. Conversions of these columns is performed between z/OS EBCDIC and non-z/OS ASCII data. Conversion is not performed between ASCII and ASCII versions of this data, nor between EBCDIC and EBCDIC versions, because the data are compatible in these cases.

---

**Note:** Oracle GoldenGate supports timestamp data from 0001-01-03 00:00:00 to 9999-12-31 23:59:59. If a timestamp is converted from GMT to local time, these limits also apply to the resulting timestamp. Depending on the timezone, conversion may add or subtract hours, which can cause the timestamp to exceed the lower or upper supported limit.

---

Character-set conversion for column data is limited to a direct mapping of a source column and a target column in the COLMAP or USEDEFAULTS clauses of the Replicat MAP parameter. A direct mapping is a name-to-name mapping without the use of a stored procedure or column-conversion function. Replicat performs the character-set conversion. No conversion is performed by Extract or a data pump.

If the trail is written by a version of Extract that is prior to version 11.2.1, the character set for character-type columns must be supplied to Replicat with the `SOURCECHARSET` parameter. This parameter also supplies a `PASSTHRU` option for preventing the conversion of character sets. For more information, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 12.5.2 Preservation of Locale

Oracle GoldenGate takes the locale of the database into account when comparing case-insensitive object names. See [Appendix B, "Supported Locales"](#) for a list of supported locales.

## 12.5.3 Support for Escape Sequences

Oracle GoldenGate supports the use of an escape sequence to represent a string column, literal text, or object name in the parameter file. You can use an escape sequence if the operating system does not support the required character, such as a control character, or for any other purpose that requires a character that cannot be used in a parameter file.

An escape sequence can be used anywhere in the parameter file, but is particularly useful in the following elements within a `TABLE` or `MAP` statement:

- An object name
- WHERE clause
- COLMAP clause to assign a Unicode character to a Unicode column, or to assign a native-encoded character to a column.
- Oracle GoldenGate column conversion functions within a COLMAP clause.

Oracle GoldenGate supports the following types of escape sequence:

- \uFFFF Unicode escape sequence. Any UNICODE code point can be used except surrogate pairs.
- \377 Octal escape sequence
- \xFF Hexadecimal escape sequence

The following rules apply:

- If used for mapping of an object name in `TABLE` or `MAP`, no restriction apply. For example, the following `TABLE` specification is valid:

```
TABLE schema. "\u3000ABC";
```
- If used with a column-mapping function, any code point can be used, but only for an NCHAR/NVARCHAR column. For an CHAR/VARCHAR column, the code point is limited to the equivalent of 7-bit ASCII.
- The source and target data types must be identical (for example, NCHAR to NCHAR ).
- Begin each escape sequence with a reverse solidus (code point U+005C), followed by the character code point. (A solidus is more commonly known as the backslash symbol.) Use the escape sequence, instead of the actual character, within your input string in the parameter statement or column-conversion function.

---

**Note:** To specify an actual backslash in the parameter file, specify a double backslash. For example, the following finds a backslash in COL1: @STRFIND (COL1, '\\\\').

---

#### To use the \uFFFF Unicode escape sequence

- The \uFFFF Unicode escape sequence must begin with a lowercase u, followed by exactly four hexadecimal digits.
- Supported ranges are as follows:
  - 0 to 9 (U+0030 to U+0039)
  - A to F (U+0041 to U+0046)
  - a to f (U+0061 to U+0066)

\u20ac is the Unicode escape sequence for the Euro currency sign.

---

**Note:** For reliable cross-platform support, use the Unicode escape sequence. Octal and hexadecimal escape sequences are not standardized on different operating systems.

---

#### To use the \377 octal escape sequence

- Must contain exactly three octal digits.
  - Supported ranges:
    - Range for first digit is 0 to 3 (U+0030 to U+0033)
    - Range for second and third digits is 0 to 7 (U+0030 to U+0037)
- \200 is the octal escape sequence for the Euro currency sign on Microsoft Windows

#### To use the \xFF hexadecimal escape sequence

- Must begin with a lowercase x followed by exactly two hexadecimal digits.
- Supported ranges:
  - 0 to 9 (U+0030 to U+0039)
  - A to F (U+0041 to U+0046)
  - a to f (U+0061 to U+0066)

\x80 is the hexadecimal escape sequence for the Euro currency sign on Microsoft Windows 1252 Latin1 code page.

## 12.6 Mapping Columns

Oracle GoldenGate provides for column mapping at the table level and at the global level. Default column mapping is also provided in the absence of explicit column mapping rules.

This section contains the following guidelines for mapping columns:

[Section 12.6.2, "Configuring Table-level Column Mapping with COLMAP"](#)

[Section 12.6.3, "Configuring Global Column Mapping with COLMATCH"](#)

[Section 12.6.4, "Understanding Default Column Mapping"](#)

[Section 12.6.5, "Mapping Data Types from Column to Column"](#)

[Section 12.6.1, "Supporting Case and Special Characters in Column Names"](#)

## 12.6.1 Supporting Case and Special Characters in Column Names

By default, Oracle GoldenGate follows SQL-92 rules for specifying column names and literals. In Oracle GoldenGate parameter files, conversion functions, user exits, and commands, case-sensitive column names must be enclosed within double quotes if double quotes are required by the database to enforce case-sensitivity. For other case-sensitive databases that do not require quotes, case-sensitive column names must be specified as they are stored in the database. Literals must be enclosed within single quotes. See [Section 4.5.7, "Differentiating Case-sensitive Column Names from Literals"](#) for more information.

## 12.6.2 Configuring Table-level Column Mapping with COLMAP

Use the COLMAP option of the MAP and TABLE parameters to:

- map individual source columns to target columns that have different names.
- specify default column mapping when an explicit column mapping is not needed.
- Provide instructions for selecting, mapping, translating, and moving data from a source column into a target column.

### 12.6.2.1 Specifying the Columns to be Mapped in the COLMAP Clause

The COLMAP syntax is the following:

```
COLMAP ([USEDEFAULTS, ] target_column = source_expression)
```

In this syntax, *target\_column* is the name of the target column, and *source\_expression* can be any of the following, allowing you to map the source column by name, so as to pass the source value exactly as recorded in the trail, or to transform the data before passing it to the target column:

- The name of a source column, such as `ORD_DATE`.
- Numeric constant, such as `123`.
- String constant enclosed within single quotes, such as `'ABCD'`.
- An expression using an Oracle GoldenGate column-conversion function. Within a COLMAP statement, you can employ any of the Oracle GoldenGate column-conversion functions to transform data for the mapped columns, for example:

```
@STREXT (COL1, 1, 3)
```

If the column mapping involves case-sensitive columns from different database types, specify each column as it is stored in the database.

- If the database requires double quotes to enforce case-sensitivity, specify the case-sensitive column name within double quotes.
- If the database is case-sensitive without requiring double quotes, specify the column name as it is stored in the database.

The following shows a mapping between a target column in an Oracle database and a source column in a case-sensitive SQL Server database.

---

```
COLMAP ("ColA" = ColA)
```

See [Section 4.5, "Specifying Object Names in Oracle GoldenGate Input"](#) for more information about specifying names to Oracle GoldenGate.

See [Section 12.5, "Globalization Considerations when Mapping Data"](#) for globalization considerations when mapping source and target columns in databases that have different character sets and locales.

Avoid using COLMAP to map a value to a key column (which causes the operation to become a primary key update). The WHERE clause that Oracle GoldenGate uses to locate the target row will not use the correct before image of the key column. Instead, it will use the after image. This will cause errors if you are using any functions based on that key column, such as a SQLEXEC statement, as shown in the following example.

- Source table TCUSTOMER1
- Target table TCUSTOMER2
- Column layout, both tables:

```
Column 1 = Cust
Column 2 = Name
Column 3 = City
Column 4 = State
```

- Primary key consists of the Cust, Name, and City columns.
- SQLEXEC query in the MAP statement:

```
SQLEXEC (id mytest, query 'select city from TCUSTOMER1 WHERE state = 'CA'',  
noparams, ERROR RAISE)
```

- COLMAP statement in the MAP statement:

```
COLMAP ( usedefaults, city = mytest.city )
```

This is the sequence of events that causes the error:

1. INSERT statement inserts the following:

```
INSERT into TCUSTOMER1 values (Cust = '1234', Name = 'Ace', City = 'SF', State =  
'CA');  
Commit;
```

The SQLEXEC query returns the correct value, and the target table also has a value of SF for City and CA for State.

```
mytest.city = 'SF'
```

2. UPDATE statement changes City from SF to LA on the source. This does not succeed on the target. The SQLEXEC query looks up the City column in TCUSTOMER1 and returns a value of LA. Based on the COLMAP clause, the before and after versions of City both are now LA. This generates SQL error 1403 when executing the target WHERE clause, because a value of LA does not exist for the City column in the target table.

### 12.6.2.2 Using USEDEFAULTS to Enable Default Column Mapping

You can use the USEDEFAULTS option of COLMAP to specify automatic default column mapping for any corresponding source and target columns that have identical names. USEDEFAULTS can save you time by eliminating the need to map every target column explicitly.

Default mapping causes Oracle GoldenGate to map those columns and, if required, translate the data types based on the data-definitions file (see [Section 12.6.2.3, "Determining Whether COLMAP Requires a Data-definitions File"](#)). Do not specify default mapping for columns that are mapped already with an explicit mapping statement.

The following example of a column mapping illustrates the use of both default and explicit column mapping for a source table ACCTBL and a target table ACCTTAB. Most columns are the same in both tables, except for the following differences:

- The source table has a CUST\_NAME column, whereas the target table has a NAME column.
- A ten-digit PHONE\_NO column in the source table corresponds to separate AREA\_CODE, PHONE\_PREFIX, and PHONE\_NUMBER columns in the target table.
- Separate YY, MM, and DD columns in the source table correspond to a single TRANSACTION\_DATE column in the target table.

To address those differences, USEDEFAULTS is used to map the similar columns automatically, while explicit mapping and conversion functions are used for dissimilar columns.

**Table 12–1 Sample Column Mapping**

Parameter statement	Description
MAP SALES.ACCTBL, TARGET SALES.ACCTTAB,	Maps the source table ACCTBL to the target table ACCTTAB.
COLMAP (	Begins the COLMAP statement.
USEDEFAULTS,	Maps source columns as-is when the target column names are identical.
NAME = CUST_NAME,	Maps the source column CUST_NAME to the target column NAME.
TRANSACTION_DATE = @DATE ('YYYY-MM-DD', 'YY', YEAR, 'MM', MONTH, 'DD', DAY),	Converts the transaction date from the source date columns to the target column TRANSACTION_DATE by using the @DATE column conversion function.
AREA_CODE = @STREXT (PHONE_NO, 1, 3), PHONE_PREFIX = @STREXT (PHONE_NO, 4, 6), PHONE_NUMBER = @STREXT (PHONE_NO, 7, 10)) ;	Converts the source column PHONE_NO into the separate target columns of AREA_CODE, PHONE_PREFIX, and PHONE_NUMBER by using the @STREXT column conversion function.

See [Section 12.6.4, "Understanding Default Column Mapping"](#) for more information about the rules followed by Oracle GoldenGate for default column mapping.

### 12.6.2.3 Determining Whether COLMAP Requires a Data-definitions File

When using COLMAP, you might need to create a data-definitions file. To make this determination, you must consider whether the source and target column structures are identical, as defined by Oracle GoldenGate.

For source and target structures to be identical, they must:

- be of the same database type, that is, all Oracle.
- have the same character set and locale.

- contain the same number of columns.
- have identical column names (including case, white spaces, and quotes if applicable).
- have identical data types.
- have identical column lengths.
- have the same column length semantics for character columns (bytes versus characters).
- define all of the columns in the same order.

When using COLMAP for source and target tables that are not identical in structure, you must:

- generate data definitions for the source tables, the target tables, or both, depending on the Oracle GoldenGate configuration and the databases that are being used.
- transfer the definitions file to the system where they will be used.
- use the SOURCEDEFS parameter to identify the definitions file for Replicat on a target system or use the TARGETDEFS parameter to identify the definitions file for Extract or a data pump on a source system or intermediary system.

When using COLMAP for source and target tables that are identical in structure, and you are only using COLMAP for other functions such as conversion, a source definitions file is not needed. When a definitions file is not being used, you must use the ASSUMETARGETDEFS parameter instead. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information.

See [Chapter 13, "Associating Replicated Data with Metadata"](#) for more information about using a definitions file.

### 12.6.3 Configuring Global Column Mapping with COLMATCH

Use the COLMATCH parameter to create global rules for column mapping. With COLMATCH, you can map between similarly structured tables that have different column names for the same sets of data. COLMATCH provides a more convenient way to map columns of this type than does using table-level mapping with a COLMAP clause in individual TABLE or MAP statements.

Case-sensitivity is supported as follows:

- For Sybase, MySQL, SQL Server, PostgreSQL, and Teradata, if the database is case-sensitive, COLMATCH looks for an exact case and name match regardless of whether or not a name is specified in quotes.
- For Oracle, DB2, and SQL/MX, where names can be either case-sensitive or case-insensitive in the same database and double quotes are required to show case-sensitivity, COLMATCH requires an exact case and name match when a name is in quotes in the database.

See [Section 4.5, "Specifying Object Names in Oracle GoldenGate Input"](#) for more information about case-sensitivity support.

#### Syntax

```
COLMATCH
{NAMES target_column = source_column |
PREFIX prefix |
SUFFIX suffix |
RESET}
```

**Table 12–2 COLMATCH Options**

Argument	Description
<code>NAMES target_column = source_column</code>	Maps based on column names. Put double quotes around the column name if it is case-sensitive and the database requires quotes to enforce case-sensitivity. For these database types, an unquoted column name is treated as case-insensitive by Oracle GoldenGate. For databases that support case-sensitivity without requiring quotes, specify the column name as it is stored in the database. If the COLMATCH is between columns in different database types, make certain the names reflect the appropriate case representation for each one. For example, the following specifies a case-sensitive target column name "aBc" in an Oracle database and a case-sensitive source column name aBc in a case-sensitive SQL Server database.
<code>COLMATCH NAMES "aBc" = aBc</code>	
<code>PREFIX prefix   SUFFIX suffix</code>	Ignores the specified name prefix or suffix. Put double quotes around the prefix or suffix if the database requires quotes to enforce case-sensitivity, for example "P_". For those database types, an unquoted prefix or suffix is treated as case-insensitive. For databases that support case-sensitivity without requiring quotes, specify the prefix or suffix as it is stored in the database. For example, P_ specifies a capital P prefix. The following example specifies a case-insensitive prefix to ignore. The target column name P_ABC is mapped to source column name ABC, and target column name p_abc is mapped to source column name abc.
<code>COLMATCH PREFIX p_</code>	
<code>SUFFIX "_k"</code>	The following example specifies a case-sensitive suffix to ignore. The target column name ABC_k is mapped to the source column name ABC, and the target column name "abc_k" is mapped to the source column name "abc".
<code>RESET</code>	Turns off previously defined COLMATCH rules for subsequent TABLE or MAP statements.

The following example illustrates when to use COLMATCH. The source and target tables are identical except for slightly different table and column names. The database is case-insensitive.

**Table 12-3 COLMATCH Example Table: Source Database**

<b>ACCT Table</b>	<b>ORD Table</b>
CUST_CODE	CUST_CODE
CUST_NAME	CUST_NAME
CUST_ADDR	ORDER_ID
PHONE	ORDER_AMT
S REP	S REP
S REPCODE	S REPCODE

**Table 12-4 COLMATCH Example Table: Target Database**

<b>ACCOUNT Table</b>	<b>ORDER Table</b>
CUSTOMER_CODE	CUSTOMER_CODE
CUSTOMER_NAME	CUSTOMER_NAME
CUSTOMER_ADDRESS	ORDER_ID
PHONE	ORDER_AMT
REP	REP
REPCODE	REPCODE

To map the source columns to the target columns in this example, as well as to handle subsequent maps for other tables, the syntax is:

```
COLMATCH NAMES CUSTOMER_CODE = CUST_CODE
COLMATCH NAMES CUSTOMER_NAME = CUST_NAME
COLMATCH NAMES CUSTOMER_ADDRESS = CUST_ADDR
COLMATCH PREFIX S_
MAP SALES.ACCT, TARGET SALES.ACCOUNT, COLMAP (USEDEFAULTS);
MAP SALE.ORD, TARGET SALES.ORDER, COLMAP (USEDEFAULTS);
COLMATCH RESET
MAP SALES.REG, TARGET SALE.REG;
MAP SALES.PRICE, TARGET SALES.PRICE;
```

Based on the rules in the example, the following occurs:

- Data is mapped from the CUST\_CODE columns in the source ACCT and ORD tables to the CUSTOMER\_CODE columns in the target ACCOUNT and ORDER tables.
- The S\_ prefix will be ignored.
- Columns with the same names, such as the PHONE and ORDER\_AMT columns, are automatically mapped by means of USEDEFAULTS without requiring explicit rules. See [Section 12.6.4, "Understanding Default Column Mapping"](#) for more information.
- The previous global column mapping is turned off for the tables REG and PRICE. Source and target columns in those tables are automatically mapped because all of the names are identical.

#### 12.6.4 Understanding Default Column Mapping

If an explicit column mapping does not exist, either by using COLMATCH or COLMAP, Oracle GoldenGate maps source and target columns by default according to the following rules.

- If a source column is found whose name and case exactly match those of the target column, the two are mapped.

- If no case match is found, fallback name mapping is used. Fallback mapping performs a case-insensitive target table mapping to find a name match. Inexact column name matching is applied using upper cased names. This behavior is controlled by the GLOBALS parameter `NAMEMATCHIGNORECASE`. You can disable fallback name matching with the `NAMEMATCHEXACT` parameter, or you can keep it enabled but with a warning message by using the `NAMEMATCHNOWARNING` parameter.
- Target columns that do not correspond to any source column take default values determined by the database.

If the default mapping cannot be performed, the target column defaults to one of the values shown in [Table 12–5](#).

**Table 12–5 Defaults Values for Target Columns**

Column Type	Value
Numeric	Zero (0)
Character or VARCHAR	Spaces
Date or Datetime	Current date and time
Columns that can take a NULL value	Null

## 12.6.5 Mapping Data Types from Column to Column

The following explains how Oracle GoldenGate maps data types.

### 12.6.5.1 Numeric Columns

Numeric columns are converted to match the type and scale of the target column. If the scale of the target column is smaller than that of the source, the number is truncated on the right. If the scale of the target column is larger than that of the source, the number is padded with zeros on the right.

You can specify a substitution value for invalid numeric data encountered when mapping number columns by using the `REPLACEBADNUM` parameter. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information.

### 12.6.5.2 Character-type Columns

Character-type columns can accept character-based data types such as `VARCHAR`, numeric in string form, date and time in string form, and string literals. If the scale of the target column is smaller than that of the source, the column is truncated on the right. If the scale of the target column is larger than that of the source, the column is padded with spaces on the right.

Literals must be enclosed within single quotes.

You can control the response of the Oracle GoldenGate process when a valid code point does not exist for either the source or target character set when mapping character columns by using the `REPLACEBADCHAR` parameter. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information.

### 12.6.5.3 Datetime Columns

Datetime (`DATE`, `TIME`, and `TIMESTAMP`) columns can accept datetime and character columns, as well as string literals. Literals must be enclosed within single quotes. To map a character column to a datetime column, make certain it conforms to the Oracle GoldenGate external SQL format of `YYYY-MM-DD HH:MI:SS.FFFFFF`.

Oracle GoldenGate supports timestamp data from 0001-01-03 00:00:00 to 9999-12-31 23:59:59. If a timestamp is converted from GMT to local time, these limits also apply to the resulting timestamp. Depending on the timezone, conversion may add or subtract hours, which can cause the timestamp to exceed the lower or upper supported limit.

Required precision varies according to the data type and target platform. If the scale of the target column is smaller than that of the source, data is truncated on the right. If the scale of the target column is larger than that of the source, the column is extended on the right with the values for the current date and time.

## 12.7 Selecting and Filtering Rows

To filter out or select rows for extraction or replication, use the FILTER and WHERE clauses of the TABLE and MAP parameters.

The FILTER clause offers you more functionality than the WHERE clause because you can employ any of the Oracle GoldenGate column conversion functions, whereas the WHERE clause accepts basic WHERE operators.

### 12.7.1 Selecting Rows with a FILTER Clause

Use a FILTER clause to select rows based on a numeric value by using basic operators or one or more Oracle GoldenGate column-conversion functions.

---

**Note:** To filter a column based on a string, use one of the Oracle GoldenGate string functions or use a WHERE clause.

---

The syntax for FILTER in a TABLE statement is as follows:

```
TABLE source_table,
, FILTER (
[, ON INSERT | ON UPDATE| ON DELETE]
[, IGNORE INSERT | IGNORE UPDATE | IGNORE DELETE]
, filter_clause);
```

The syntax for FILTER in a MAP statement is as follows and includes an error-handling option.

```
MAP source_table, TARGET target_table,
, FILTER (
[, ON INSERT | ON UPDATE| ON DELETE]
[, IGNORE INSERT | IGNORE UPDATE | IGNORE DELETE]
[, RAISEERROR error_number]
, filter_clause);
```

Valid FILTER clause elements are the following:

- An Oracle GoldenGate column-conversion function. These functions are built into Oracle GoldenGate so that you can perform tests, manipulate data, retrieve values, and so forth. See [Section 12.12, "Testing and Transforming Data"](#) for more information about Oracle GoldenGate conversion functions.
- Numbers
- Columns that contain numbers
- Functions that return numbers

- Arithmetic operators:
  - + (plus)
  - - (minus)
  - \* (multiply)
  - / (divide)
  - \ (remainder)
- Comparison operators:
  - > (greater than)
  - >= (greater than or equal)
  - < (less than)
  - <= (less than or equal)
  - = (equal)
  - <> (not equal)
- Results derived from comparisons can be zero (indicating FALSE) or non-zero (indicating TRUE).
- Parentheses (for grouping results in the expression)
- Conjunction operators: AND, OR

Use the following FILTER options to specify which SQL operations a filter clause affects. Any of these options can be combined.

```
ON INSERT | ON UPDATE | ON DELETE  
IGNORE INSERT | IGNORE UPDATE | IGNORE DELETE
```

Use the RAISEERROR option of FILTER in the MAP parameter to generate a user-defined error when the filter fails. This option is useful when you need to trigger an event in response to the failure.

#### ***Example 12–1 Calling the @COMPUTE Function***

The following example calls the @COMPUTE function to extract records in which the price multiplied by the amount exceeds 10,000.

```
MAP SALES.TCUSTORD, TARGET SALES.TORD,  
FILTER (@COMPUTE (PRODUCT_PRICE * PRODUCT_AMOUNT) > 10000);
```

#### ***Example 12–2 Calling the @STREQ Function***

The following uses the @STREQ function to extract records where the value of a character column is 'JOE'.

```
TABLE ACCT.TCUSTORD, FILTER (@STREQ ("Name", 'joe') > 0);
```

#### ***Example 12–3 Selecting Records***

The following selects records in which the AMOUNT column is greater than 50 and executes the filter on UPDATE and DELETE operations.

```
TABLE ACT.TCUSTORD, FILTER (ON UPDATE, ON DELETE, AMOUNT > 50);
```

You can use the @RANGE function to divide the processing workload among multiple FILTER clauses, using separate TABLE or MAP statements. For example, the following

splits the replication workload into two ranges (between two Replicat processes or two threads of a coordinated Replicat) based on the ID column of the source acct table.

**Example 12–4 Using the @RANGE Function**

(Replicat group 1 parameter file)

```
MAP sales.acct, TARGET sales.acct, FILTER (@RANGE (1, 2, ID));
```

(Replicat group 2 parameter file)

```
MAP sales.acct, TARGET sales.acct, FILTER (@RANGE (2, 2, ID));
```

You can combine several FILTER clauses in one MAP or TABLE statement, as shown in [Table 12–6](#), which shows part of a Replicat parameter file. Oracle GoldenGate executes the filters in the order listed, until one fails or until all are passed. If one filter fails, they all fail.

**Table 12–6 Using Multiple FILTER Statements**

Parameter file	Description
REPERROR (9999, EXCEPTION)	Raises an exception for the specified error.
MAP OWNER.SRCTAB, TARGET OWNER.TARGTAB,	Starts the MAP statement.
SQLEXEC (ID CHECK, ON UPDATE, QUERY ' SELECT COUNT FROM TARGTAB ' 'WHERE PKCOL = :P1 ', PARAMS (P1 = PKCOL)),	Performs a query to retrieve the present value of the COUNT column whenever an update is encountered.
FILTER (BALANCE > 15000),	Uses a FILTER clause to select rows where the balance is greater than 15000.
FILTER (ON UPDATE, @BEFORE (COUNT) = CHECK.COUNT)	Uses another FILTER clause to ensure that the value of the source COUNT column before an update matches the value in the target column before applying the target update.
;	The semicolon concludes the MAP statement.
MAP OWNER.SRCTAB, TARGET OWNER.TARGEXC, EXCEPTIONSONLY, COLMAP (USEDFAULTS, ERRTYPE = 'UPDATE FILTER FAILED');	Designates an exceptions MAP statement. The REPERROR clause for error 9999 ensures that the exceptions map to TARGEXC will be executed.

## 12.7.2 Selecting Rows with a WHERE Clause

Use any of the elements in [Table 12–7](#) in a WHERE clause to select or exclude rows (or both) based on a conditional statement. Each WHERE clause must be enclosed within parentheses. Literals must be enclosed within single quotes.

**Table 12–7 Permissible WHERE Operators**

Element	Examples
Column names	PRODUCT_AMT
Numeric values	-123, 5500.123

**Table 12–7 (Cont.) Permissible WHERE Operators**

Element	Examples
Literal strings	'AUTO', 'Ca'
Built-in column tests	@NULL, @PRESENT, @ABSENT (column is null, present or absent in the row). These tests are built into Oracle GoldenGate. See <a href="#">Section 12.7.3, "Considerations for Selecting Rows with FILTER and WHERE"</a> .
Comparison operators	=, <>, >, <, >=, <=
Conjunctive operators	AND, OR
Grouping parentheses	Use open and close parentheses ( ) for logical grouping of multiple elements.

Oracle GoldenGate does not support FILTER for columns that have a multi-byte character set or a character set that is incompatible with the character set of the local operating system.

Arithmetic operators and floating-point data types are not supported by WHERE. To use more complex selection conditions, use a FILTER clause or a user exit routine. See [Section 17.3, "Using User Exits to Extend Oracle GoldenGate Capabilities"](#) for more information.

The syntax for WHERE is identical in the TABLE and MAP statements:

```
TABLE table, WHERE (clause);

MAP source_table, TARGET target_table, WHERE (clause);
```

## 12.7.3 Considerations for Selecting Rows with FILTER and WHERE

The following suggestions can help you create a successful selection clause.

---

**Note:** The examples in this section assume a case-insensitive database.

---

### 12.7.3.1 Ensuring Data Availability for Filters

If the database only logs values for *changed* columns to the transaction log, there can be errors if any of the unchanged columns are referenced by selection criteria. Oracle GoldenGate ignores such row operations, outputs them to the discard file, and issues a warning.

To avoid missing-column errors, create your selection conditions as follows:

- Use only primary-key columns as selection criteria, if possible.
- Make required column values available by enabling supplemental logging for those columns. Alternatively, you can use the FETCHCOLS or FETCHCOLSEXCEPT option of the TABLE parameter. These options are valid for all supported databases except SQL/MX. They query the database to fetch the values if they are not present in the log. To retrieve the values before the FILTER or WHERE clause is executed, include the FETCHBEFOREFILTER option in the TABLE statement before the FILTER or WHERE clause. For example:

```
TABLE DEMO.PEOPLE, FETCHBEFOREFILTER, FETCHCOLS (age), FILTER (age > 50);
```

- Test for a column's presence first, then for the column's value. To test for a column's presence, use the following syntax.

```
column_name {= | <>} {@PRESENT | @ABSENT}
```

The following example returns all records when the amount column is over 10,000 and does not cause a record to be discarded when amount is absent.

```
WHERE (amount = @PRESENT AND amount > 10000)
```

### 12.7.3.2 Comparing Column Values

To ensure that elements used in a comparison match, compare appropriate column types:

- Character columns to literal strings.
- Numeric columns to numeric values, which can include a sign and decimal point.
- Date and time columns to literal strings, using the format in which the column is retrieved by the application.

### 12.7.3.3 Testing for NULL Values

To evaluate columns for NULL values, use the following syntax.

```
column {= | <>} @NULL
```

The following returns TRUE if the column is NULL, and FALSE for all other cases (including a column missing from the record).

```
WHERE (amount = @NULL)
```

The following returns TRUE only if the column is present in the record and not NULL.

```
WHERE (amount = @PRESENT AND amount <> @NULL)
```

## 12.8 Retrieving Before and After Values

For update operations, it can be advantageous to retrieve the *before* values of source columns: the values before the update occurred. These values are stored in the trail and can be used in filters and column mappings. For example, you can:

- Retrieve the before image of a row as part of a column-mapping specification in an exceptions MAP statement, and map those values to an exceptions table for use in testing or troubleshooting conflict resolution routines.
- Perform delta calculations. For example, if a table has a Balance column, you can calculate the net result of a particular transaction by subtracting the original balance from the new balance, as in the following example:

```
MAP "owner"."src", TARGET "owner"."targ",
COLMAP (PK1 = PK1, delta = balance - @BEFORE (balance));
```

---

**Note:** The previous example indicates a case-sensitive database such as Oracle. The table names are in quote marks to reflect case-sensitivity.

---

### To Reference the Before Value

1. Use the @BEFORE column conversion function with the name of the column for which you want a before value, as follows:

```
@BEFORE (column_name)
```
2. Use the GETUPDATEBEFRES parameter in the Extract parameter file to capture before images from the transaction record, or use it in the Replicat parameter file to use the before image in a column mapping or filter. If using the Conflict Resolution and Detection (CDR) feature, you can use the GETBEFORECOLS option of TABLE. To use these parameters, all columns must be present in the transaction log. If the database only logs the values of columns that changed, using the @BEFORE function may result in a "column missing" condition and the column map is executed as if the column were not in the record. See [Section 12.7.3.1, "Ensuring Data Availability for Filters"](#) to ensure that column values are available.

Oracle GoldenGate also provides the @AFTER function to retrieve after values when needed for filtering, for use in conversion functions, or other purposes. For more information about @BEFORE and @AFTER, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 12.9 Selecting Columns

To control which columns of a source table are extracted by Oracle GoldenGate, use the COLS and COLSEXCEPT options of the TABLE parameter. Use COLS to select columns for extraction, and use COLSEXCEPT to select all columns except those designated by COLSEXCEPT.

Restricting the columns that are extracted can be useful when a target table does not contain the same columns as the source table, or when the columns contain sensitive information, such as a personal identification number or other proprietary business information.

## 12.10 Selecting and Converting SQL Operations

By default, Oracle GoldenGate captures and applies INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE operations. You can use the following parameters in the Extract or Replicat parameter file to control which kind of operations are processed, such as only inserts or only inserts and updates.

GETINSERTS | IGNOREINSERTS

GETUPDATES | IGNOREUPDATES

GETDELETES | IGNOREDELETES

You can convert one type of SQL operation to another by using the following parameters in the Replicat parameter file:

- Use INSERTUPDATES to convert source update operations to inserts into the target table. This is useful for maintaining a transaction history on that table. The transaction log record must contain all of the column values of the table, not just changed values. Some databases do not log full row values to their transaction log, but only values that changed.
- Use INSERTDELETES to convert all source delete operations to inserts into the target table. This is useful for retaining a history of all records that were ever in the source database.
- Use UPDATEDELETES to convert source deletes to updates on the target.

## 12.11 Using Transaction History

Oracle GoldenGate enables you to retain a history of changes made to a target record and to map information about the operation that caused each change. This history can be useful for creating a transaction-based reporting system that contains a separate record for every operation performed on a table, as opposed to containing only the most recent version of each record.

For example, the following series of operations made to a target table named CUSTOMER would leave no trace of the ID of Dave. The last operation deletes the record, so there is no way to find out Dave's account history or his ending balance.

**Table 12–8 Operation History for Table CUSTOMER**

Sequence	Operation	ID	BALANCE
1	Insert	Dave	1000
2	Update	Dave	900
3	Update	Dave	1250
4	Delete	Dave	1250

Retaining this history as a series of records can be useful in many ways. For example, you can generate the net effect of transactions.

### To implement transaction reporting

1. To prepare Extract to capture before values, use the GETUPDATEBEFORES parameter in the Extract parameter file. A before value (or before image) is the existing value of a column before an update is performed. Before images enable Oracle GoldenGate to create the transaction record.
2. To prepare Replicat to post all operations as inserts, use the INSERTALLRECORDS parameter in the Replicat parameter file. Each operation on a table becomes a new record in that table.
3. To map the transaction history, use the return values of the GGHEADER option of the @GETENV column conversion function. Include the conversion function as the source expression in a COLMAP statement in the TABLE or MAP parameter.

Using the sample series of transactions shown in [Table 12–8](#) the following parameter configurations can be created to generate a more transaction-oriented view of customers, rather than the latest state of the database.

Process	Parameter statements
Extract	GETUPDATEBEFORES TABLE ACCOUNT.CUSTOMER;
Replicat	INSERTALLRECORDS MAP SALES.CUSTOMER, TARGET SALES.CUSTHIST, COLMAP (TS = @GETENV ('GGHEADER', 'COMMITTIMESTAMP'), BEFORE_AFTER = @GETENV ('GGHEADER', 'BEFOREAFTERINDICATOR'), OP_TYPE = @GETENV ('GGHEADER', 'OPTYPE'), ID = ID, BALANCE = BALANCE);

---

**Note:** This is not representative of a complete parameter file for an Oracle GoldenGate process. Also note that these examples represent a case-insensitive database.

---

This configuration makes possible queries such as the following, which returns the net sum of each transaction along with the time of the transaction and the customer ID.

```
SELECT AFTER.ID, AFTER.TS, AFTER.BALANCE - BEFORE.BALANCE
FROM CUSTHIST AFTER, CUSTHIST BEFORE
WHERE AFTER.ID = BEFORE.ID AND AFTER.TS = BEFORE.TS AND
AFTER.BEFORE_AFTER = 'A' AND BEFORE.BEFORE_AFTER = 'B';
```

## 12.12 Testing and Transforming Data

Data testing and transformation can be performed by either Extract or Replicat and is implemented by using the Oracle GoldenGate built-in column-conversion functions within a COLMAP clause of a TABLE or MAP statement. With these conversion functions, you can:

- Transform dates.
- Test for the presence of column values.
- Perform arithmetic operations.
- Manipulate numbers and character strings.
- Handle null, invalid, and missing data.
- Perform tests.

This chapter provides an overview of some of the Oracle GoldenGate functions related to data manipulation. For the complete reference, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

If you need to use logic beyond that which is supplied by the Oracle GoldenGate functions, you can call your own functions by implementing Oracle GoldenGate user exits. See [Section 17.3, "Using User Exits to Extend Oracle GoldenGate Capabilities"](#) for more information about user exits.

Oracle GoldenGate conversion functions take the following general syntax:

### Syntax

`@function (argument)`

**Table 12–9 Conversion Function Syntax**

Syntax element	Description
<code>@function</code>	The Oracle GoldenGate function name. Function names have the prefix @, as in @COMPUTE or @DATE. A space between the function name and the open-parenthesis before the input argument is optional.
<code>argument</code>	A function argument.

**Table 12–10 Function Arguments**

Argument element	Example
A numeric constant	123
A string literal enclosed within single quote marks	'ABCD'
The name of a source column	PHONE_NO or phone_no, or "Phone_No" or Phone_no Depends on whether the database is case-insensitive, is case-sensitive and requires quote marks to enforce the case, or is case-sensitive and does not require quotes.
An arithmetic expression	COL2 * 100
A comparison expression	((COL3 > 100) AND (COL4 > 0))
Other Oracle GoldenGate functions	AMOUNT = @IF (@COLTEST (AMT, MISSING, INVALID), 0, AMT)

### 12.12.1 Handling Column Names and Literals in Functions

By default, literal strings must be enclosed in single quotes in a column-conversion function. Case-sensitive column names must be enclosed within double quotes if required by the database, or otherwise entered in the case in which they are stored in the database.

### 12.12.2 Using the Appropriate Function

Use the appropriate function for the type of column that is being manipulated or evaluated. For example, numeric functions can be used only to compare numeric values. To compare character values, use one of the Oracle GoldenGate character-comparison functions. LOB columns cannot be used in conversion functions.

This statement would fail because it uses @IF, which is a numerical function, to compare string values.

```
@IF (SR_AREA = 'Help Desk', 'TRUE', 'FALSE')
```

The following statement would succeed because it compares a numeric value.

```
@IF (SR_AREA = 20, 'TRUE', 'FALSE')
```

See [Section 12.12.5, "Manipulating Numbers and Character Strings"](#) for more information.

---

**Note:** Errors in argument parsing sometimes are not detected until records are processed. Verify syntax before starting processes.

---

### 12.12.3 Transforming Dates

Use the @DATE, @DATEDIF, and @DATENOW functions to retrieve dates and times, perform computations on them, and convert them.

This example computes the time that an order is filled

**Example 12–5 Computing Time**

```
ORDER_FILLED = @DATE (
```

```
'YYYY-MM-DD HH:MI:SS',
'JTS',
@DATE ('JTS',
'YYMMDDHHMISS',
ORDER_TAKEN_TIME) +
ORDER_MINUTES * 60 * 1000000)
```

## 12.12.4 Performing Arithmetic Operations

To return the result of an arithmetic expression, use the @COMPUTE function. The value returned from the function is in the form of a string. Arithmetic expressions can be combinations of the following elements.

- Numbers
- The names of columns that contain numbers
- Functions that return numbers
- Arithmetic operators:
  - + (plus)
  - - (minus)
  - \* (multiply)
  - / (divide)
  - \ (remainder)
- Comparison operators:
  - > (greater than)
  - >= (greater than or equal)
  - < (less than)
  - <= (less than or equal)
  - = (equal)
  - <> (not equal)

Results that are derived from comparisons can be zero (indicating FALSE) or non-zero (indicating TRUE).

- Parentheses (for grouping results in the expression)
- The conjunction operators AND, OR. Oracle GoldenGate only evaluates the necessary part of a conjunction expression. Once a statement is FALSE, the rest of the expression is ignored. This can be valuable when evaluating fields that may be missing or null. For example, if the value of COL1 is 25 and the value of COL2 is 10, then the following are possible:

```
@COMPUTE ( (COL1 > 0) AND (COL2 < 3) ) returns 0.
@COMPUTE ( (COL1 < 0) AND (COL2 < 3) ) returns 0. COL2 < 3 is never evaluated.
@COMPUTE ((COL1 + COL2)/5) returns 7.
```

### 12.12.4.1 Omitting @COMPUTE

The @COMPUTE keyword is not required when an expression is passed as a function argument.

```
@STRNUM ((AMOUNT1 + AMOUNT2), LEFT)
```

The following expression returns the same result as the previous one:

```
@STRNUM (@COMPUTE (AMOUNT1 + AMOUNT2), LEFT)
```

## 12.12.5 Manipulating Numbers and Character Strings

To convert numbers and character strings, Oracle GoldenGate supplies the following functions:

**Table 12–11 Conversion Functions for Numbers and Characters**

Purpose	Conversion Function
Convert a binary or character string to a number.	@NUMBIN @NUMSTR
Convert a number to a string.	@STRNUM
Compare strings.	@STRCMP @STRNCMP
Concatenate strings.	@STRCAT @STRNCAT
Extract from a string.	@STREXT @STRFIND
Return the length of a string.	@STRLEN
Substitute one string for another.	@STRSUB
Convert a string to upper case.	@STRUP
Trim leading or trailing spaces, or both.	@STRLTRIM @STRRTRIM @STRTRIM

## 12.12.6 Handling Null, Invalid, and Missing Data

When column data is missing, invalid, or null, an Oracle GoldenGate conversion function returns a corresponding value.

If BALANCE is 1000, but AMOUNT is NULL, the following expression returns NULL:

```
NEW_BALANCE = @COMPUTE (BALANCE + AMOUNT)
```

These exception conditions render the entire calculation invalid. To ensure a successful conversion, use the @COLSTAT, @COLTEST and @IF functions to test for, and override, the exception condition.

### 12.12.6.1 Using @COLSTAT

Use the @COLSTAT function to return an indicator to Extract or Replicat that a column is missing, null, or invalid. The indicator can be used as part of a larger manipulation formula that uses additional conversion functions.

The following example returns a NULL into target column ITEM.

```
ITEM = @COLSTAT (NULL)
```

The following @IF calculation uses @COLSTAT to return NULL to the target column if PRICE and QUANTITY are less than zero.

```
ORDER_TOTAL = PRICE * QUANTITY, @IF ((PRICE < 0) AND (QUANTITY < 0), @COLSTAT  
(NULL))
```

### 12.12.6.2 Using @COLTEST

Use the @COLTEST function to check for the following conditions:

- PRESENT tests whether a column is present and not null.
- NULL tests whether a column is present and null.
- MISSING tests whether a column is not present.
- INVALID tests whether a column is present but contains invalid data.

The following example checks whether the AMOUNT column is present and NULL and whether it is present but invalid.

```
@COLTEST (AMOUNT, NULL, INVALID)
```

### 12.12.6.3 Using @IF

Use the @IF function to return one of two values based on a condition. Use it with the @COLSTAT and @COLTEST functions to begin a conditional argument that tests for one or more exception conditions and then directs processing based on the results of the test.

```
NEW_BALANCE = @IF (@COLTEST (BALANCE, NULL, INVALID) OR  
@COLTEST (AMOUNT, NULL, INVALID), @COLSTAT (NULL), BALANCE + AMOUNT)
```

This conversion returns one of the following:

- NULL when BALANCE or AMOUNT is NULL or INVALID
- MISSING when either column is missing
- The sum of the columns.

## 12.12.7 Performing Tests

The @CASE, @VALONEOF, and @EVAL functions provide additional methods for performing tests on data before manipulating or mapping it.

### 12.12.7.1 Using @CASE

Use @CASE to select a value depending on a series of value tests.

```
@CASE (PRODUCT_CODE, 'CAR', 'A car', 'TRUCK', 'A truck')
```

This example returns the following:

- A car if PRODUCT\_CODE is CAR
- A truck if PRODUCT\_CODE is TRUCK
- A FIELD\_MISSING indication if PRODUCT\_CODE fits neither of the other conditions

### 12.12.7.2 Using @VALONEOF

Use @VALONEOF to compare a column or string to a list of values.

```
@IF (@VALONEOF (STATE, 'CA', 'NY'), 'COAST', 'MIDDLE')
```

In this example, if STATE is CA or NY, the expression returns COAST, which is the response returned by @IF when the value is non-zero (meaning TRUE).

#### 12.12.7.3 Using @EVAL

Use @EVAL to select a value based on a series of independent conditional tests.

```
@EVAL (AMOUNT > 10000, 'high amount', AMOUNT > 5000, 'somewhat high')
```

This example returns the following:

- high amount if AMOUNT is greater than 10000
- somewhat high if AMOUNT is greater than 5000, and less than or equal to 10000, (unless the prior condition was satisfied)
- A FIELD\_MISSING indication if neither condition is satisfied.

## 12.13 Using Tokens

You can capture and store data within the *user token* area of a trail record header. Token data can be retrieved and used in many ways to customize the way that Oracle GoldenGate delivers information. For example, you can use token data in:

- Column maps
- Stored procedures called by a SQLEXEC statement
- User exits
- Macros

### 12.13.1 Defining Tokens

To use tokens, you define the token name and associate it with data. The data can be any valid character data or values retrieved from Oracle GoldenGate column-conversion functions.

The token area in the record header permits up to 2,000 bytes of data. Token names, the length of the data, and the data itself must fit into that space.

To define a token, use the TOKENS option of the TABLE parameter in the Extract parameter file.

#### Syntax

```
TABLE table_spec, TOKENS (token_name = token_data [, ...]);
```

Where:

- *table\_spec* is the name of the source table. A container or catalog name, if applicable, and an owner name must precede the table name.
- *token\_name* is a name of your choice for the token. It can be any number of alphanumeric characters and is not case-sensitive.
- *token\_data* is a character string of up to 2000 bytes. The data can be either a string that is enclosed within single quotes or the result of an Oracle GoldenGate column-conversion function. The character set of token data is not converted. The token must be in the character set of the source database for Extract and in the character set of the target database for Replicat. In the trail file, user tokens are stored in UTF-8.

```
TABLE ora.oratest, TOKENS (
  TK-OSUSER = @GETENV ('GGENVIRONMENT' , 'OSUSERNAME') ,
  TK-GROUP = @GETENV ('GGENVIRONMENT' , 'GROUPNAME')
  TK-HOST = @GETENV('GGENVIRONMENT' , 'HOSTNAME'));
```

As shown in this example, the Oracle GoldenGate @GETENV function is an effective way to populate token data. This function provides several options for capturing environment information that can be mapped to tokens and then used on the target system for column mapping.

## 12.13.2 Using Token Data in Target Tables

To map token data to a target table, use the @TOKEN column-conversion function in the source expression of a COLMAP clause in a Replicat MAP statement. The @TOKEN function provides the name of the token to map. The COLMAP syntax with @TOKEN is:

### Syntax

```
COLMAP (target_column = @TOKEN ('token_name'))
```

The following MAP statement maps target columns host, gg\_group, and so forth to tokens tk-host, tk-group, and so forth. Note that the arguments must be enclosed within single quotes.

### *Example 12–6 MAP Statement*

```
MAP ora.oratest, TARGET ora.rpt,
COLMAP (USEDEFUALTS,
host = @token ('tk-host'),
gg_group = @token ('tk-group'),
osuser= @token ('tk-osuser'),
domain = @token ('tk-domain'),
ba_ind= @token ('tk-ba_ind'),
commit_ts = @token ('tk-commit_ts'),
pos = @token ('tk-pos'),
rba = @token ('tk-rba'),
tablename = @token ('tk-table'),
optype = @token ('tk-optype'));
```

The tokens in this example will look similar to the following within the record header in the trail:

User tokens	Values
tk-host	:sysA
tk-group	:extora
tk-osuser	:jad
tk-domain	:admin
tk-ba_ind	:B
tk-commit_ts	:2011-01-24 17:08:59.000000
tk-pos	:3604496
tk-rba	:4058
tk-table	:oratest
tk-optype	:insert

---

## Associating Replicated Data with Metadata

This chapter describes the uses of metadata and how to associate replicated data with metadata.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Overview](#)
- [Configuring Oracle GoldenGate to Assume Identical Metadata](#)
- [Configuring Oracle GoldenGate to Assume Dissimilar Metadata](#)
- [Configuring Oracle GoldenGate to Use a Combination of Similar and Dissimilar Definitions](#)

### 13.1 Overview

When replicating data from one table to another, an important consideration is whether the column structures (metadata) of the source and target tables are identical. Oracle GoldenGate looks up metadata for the following purposes:

- On the source, to supply complete information about captured operations to the Replicat process.
- On the target, to determine the structures of the target tables, so that the replicated data is correctly mapped and converted (if needed) by Replicat.

In each of the following scenarios, you must use a different parameter or set of parameters to describe the metadata properly to the Oracle GoldenGate process that is processing it:

- You are replicating a source table to a target table that has identical metadata definitions (homogeneous replication).
- You are replicating a source table to a target table that has different metadata definitions.
- You are replicating a source table to two target tables, one with identical definitions and one that has different definitions.

### 13.2 Configuring Oracle GoldenGate to Assume Identical Metadata

When source and target tables have identical metadata definitions, use the ASSUMETARGETDEFS parameter in the Replicat parameter file. This parameter directs Replicat to assume that the target definitions are the same as those of the source, and to apply those definitions to the replicated data when constructing SQL statements. The source and target tables must be identical in every way, thus needing no conversion processing, although their catalogs or containers, owners and/or names can be different.

### 13.2.1 Rules for Tables to be Considered Identical

For source and target structures to be identical, they must:

- be of the same database type, that is, all Oracle.
- have the same character set and locale, for example american\_AMERICA.
- contain the same number of columns.
- have identical column names (including case, white spaces, and quotes if applicable).
- have identical data types.
- have identical column lengths.
- have the same column length semantics for character columns (bytes versus characters).
- define all of the columns in the same order.

The following is a simple Replicat parameter file that illustrates the use of ASSUMETARGETDEFS. For more information, see ASSUMETARGETDEFS in *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

```
-- Specifies the group name.  
REPLICAT acctrep  
-- Specifies database login with an alias to a credential in the credential store.  
USERIDALIAS ogg  
-- Specifies a file for discard output.  
DISCARDFILE ./dirrpt/backup/r_prod.dsc, APPEND  
-- States that source and target definitions are identical.  
ASSUMETARGETDEFS  
-- Maps source tables to target tables.  
MAP hq.product, TARGET region1.product;  
MAP hq.price, TARGET region1.price;
```

When source and target structures are different, use the SOURCEDEFS parameter. See [Section 13.3, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate to Assume Dissimilar Metadata."](#) ASSUMETARGETDEFS and SOURCEDEFS cannot be used in the same parameter file.

## 13.3 Configuring Oracle GoldenGate to Assume Dissimilar Metadata

Source and target metadata definitions are not considered identical if they do not meet the rules in [Section 13.2.1, "Rules for Tables to be Considered Identical"](#). When source and target table definitions are dissimilar, Oracle GoldenGate must perform a conversion from one format to the other. To perform conversions, both sets of definitions must be known to Oracle GoldenGate. Oracle GoldenGate can query the local database to get one set of definitions, but it must rely on a *data-definitions file* to get definitions from the remote database. The data-definitions file contains information about the metadata of the data that is being replicated. There are two types of definitions files:

- A *source-definitions file* contains the definitions of source tables.
- A *target-definitions file* contains the definitions of the target tables.

You can use multiple data-definitions files in a parameter file. For example, each one can contain the definitions for a distinct application.

### 13.3.1 Contents of the Definitions File

The format of a data-definitions file is for internal use and should not be edited by an Oracle GoldenGate user unless instructed to do so in documented procedures or by a support representative. The file begins with a file header that shows the version of DEFGEN, information about character sets, the database type, the locale, and internal metadata that indicates other data properties. Following the header are the table-definition sections. Each table-definition section contains a table name, record length, number of columns, and one or more column definitions.

### 13.3.2 Which Definitions File Type to Use, and Where

The type of definitions file to use depends on where column mapping and conversion will be performed.

- When replicating from any type of Windows or UNIX-based database system to any other Windows or UNIX-based system, the mapping and conversion can be performed by Extract, a data-pump Extract, or Replicat, but is usually performed by Replicat on the target system. However, if Oracle GoldenGate must convert between different character sets, the mapping and conversion must be performed by Replicat on the target. See [Section 13.3.3, "Understanding the Effect of Character Sets on Definitions Files."](#)
- When replicating from any Windows, UNIX, or Linux-based database system to an Enscribe target on a NonStop system, the mapping and conversion must be performed on the Windows, UNIX, or Linux system: Only Extract can convert two- and three-part SQL names and data types to the three-part file names that are used on the NonStop platform. In this scenario, Oracle GoldenGate cannot convert between source and target character sets. See [Section 13.3.3, "Understanding the Effect of Character Sets on Definitions Files."](#)

Therefore:

- To perform column mapping and conversion on the target, use a *source-definitions file* that was generated on the source to supply the source definitions to Replicat.
- To perform column mapping and conversion on the source, use a *target-definitions file* that was generated on the target to supply target definitions to the primary Extract or a data-pump Extract, depending on which process does the conversion.
- To perform column mapping or transformation on an intermediary system, you may need to use multiple definition file types. See [Section 5.4, "Creating a Reporting Configuration with a Data Pump on an Intermediary System"](#) and [Section 5.5, "Creating a Cascading Reporting Configuration."](#) Note that if there is not a Replicat on the intermediary system, conversion between character sets cannot be performed.

### 13.3.3 Understanding the Effect of Character Sets on Definitions Files

Oracle GoldenGate takes into consideration the character set encoding of the database when performing data conversion, and it takes into consideration the character set of the local operating system when creating a definitions file. Take the following guidelines into account when the source and target data have different character sets.

#### 13.3.3.1 Confining Data Mapping and Conversion to the Replicat Process

Replicat is the only process that converts replicated data between different character sets. It converts data *from* the source database character set *to* the target database character set (or to the character set of the database on an intermediary system in a

cascading configuration). As a result, data mapping and conversion must be performed by Replicat if source and target character sets are different. It cannot be performed on a source system, nor on an intermediary system that only contains a data pump. A target-definitions file is invalid in these cases.

### 13.3.3.2 Avoiding File Corruptions Due to Operating System Character Sets

By default, DEFGEN writes the definitions file itself in the character set of the local operating system. A definitions file can be created on the local system and transferred to the remote system without any encoding-related problems if the following is true:

- The remote system to which you are transferring the definitions file has the same or equivalent operating-system character set as the local system
- The operating-system character set of the remote system is a subset of the operating-system character set of the local system. For example, if the source and target character sets both are ASCII-compatible or EBCDIC-compatible and all table and column names use only 7-bit US-ASCII or equivalent characters, you can move the definition file between those systems.

Many operating-system character sets have little or no compatibility between them. To write the definitions file in a character set that is compatible with, or the same as, the one used by the remote system, use the CHARSET option of the DEFSFILE parameter when you configure DEFGEN.

### 13.3.3.3 Changing the Character Set of Existing Definitions Files

In the case of an existing definitions file that is transferred to an operating system with an incompatible character set, you can run the DEFGEN utility on that system to convert the character set of the file to the required one. This procedure takes two input arguments: the name of the definitions file and the UPDATECS *character\_set* parameter. For example:

```
defgen ./dirdef/source.def UPDATECS UTF-8
```

UPDATECS helps in situations such as when a Japanese table name on Japanese Windows is written in Windows CP932 to the data-definitions file, and then the definitions file is transferred to Japanese UNIX. The file cannot be used unless the UNIX is configured in PCK locale. Thus, you must use UPDATECS to convert the encoding of the definitions file to the correct format.

### 13.3.3.4 Downloading from a z/OS system to another platform

Definitions files generated on an IBM z/OS platform must be downloaded in BINARY mode when transferring them to a non-z/OS platform.

## 13.3.4 Using a Definitions Template

When you create a definitions file, you can specify a definitions template that reduces the need to create new definitions files when tables are added to the Oracle GoldenGate configuration after the initial startup. To use a template, all of the new tables must have identical structures, such as in a customer database where there are separate but identical tables for each customer (see [Section 13.2.1, "Rules for Tables to be Considered Identical"](#)).

If you do not use a template and new tables are added after startup, you must generate a definitions file for each new table that is added to the Oracle GoldenGate configuration, then copy their contents to the existing master definitions file, and then restart the process.

### 13.3.5 Configuring Oracle GoldenGate to Capture Data-definitions

To configure Oracle GoldenGate to use a data-definitions file and template (if needed), you will:

- [Configure DEFGEN](#)
- [Run DEFGEN](#)
- [Transfer the Definitions File to the Remote System](#)
- [Specify the Definitions File](#)

---

**Note:** Do not create a data-definitions file for Oracle sequences. It is not needed and DEFGEN does not support it.

---

#### 13.3.5.1 Configure DEFGEN

Perform these steps on the system from which you want to obtain metadata definitions.

1. From the Oracle GoldenGate directory, run GGSCI.
2. In GGSCI, issue the following command to create a DEFGEN parameter file.  
EDIT PARAMS DEFGEN
3. Enter the parameters listed in [Table 13–1](#) in the order shown, starting a new line for each parameter statement.

**Table 13–1 DEFGEN Parameters**

Parameter	Description
CHARSET <i>character_set</i>	<p>Use this parameter to specify a character set that DEFGEN will use to read the parameter file. By default, the character set of the parameter file is that of the local operating system. If used, CHARSET must be the first line of the parameter file.</p>
DEFSFILE <i>file_name</i> [APPEND   PURGE] [CHARSET <i>character_set</i> ] [FORMAT RELEASE <i>major.minor</i> ]	<p>Specifies the relative or fully qualified name of the data-definitions file that is to be the output of DEFGEN.</p> <p>See <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i> for important information about these parameter options and their effect on character sets.</p> <p>See <a href="#">Section 13.3.3, "Understanding the Effect of Character Sets on Definitions Files"</a> for more information.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ APPEND directs DEFGEN to write new content (from the current run) at the end of any existing content, if the specified file already exists.</li> <li>■ PURGE directs DEFGEN to purge the specified file before writing new content from the current run. This is the default.</li> <li>■ CHARSET generates the definitions file in the specified character set instead of the default character set of the operating system.</li> <li>■ FORMAT RELEASE specifies the Oracle GoldenGate release version of the definitions file. Use when the definitions file will be read by a process that is in an earlier version of Oracle GoldenGate than the DEFGEN process.</li> </ul>

**Table 13–1 (Cont.) DEFGEN Parameters**

Parameter	Description
<pre>[{SOURCEDB   TARGETDB} datasource] {USERIDALIAS alias   USERID user, PASSWORD password [encryption_options]}</pre> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ {SOURCEDB   TARGETDB} specifies a data source name, if required as part of the connection information. Not required for Oracle.</li> <li>■ USERID <i>user</i>, PASSWORD <i>password</i> [encryption_options] specifies a user name and password, with optional encryption options.</li> <li>■ USERIDALIAS supplies database authentication through credentials stored in the Oracle GoldenGate credential store.</li> </ul>	<p>Specifies database connection information.</p> <p>The <i>datasource</i> can be a DSN (Datasource Name), a SQL/MX catalog, or a container of an Oracle container database (CDB). If connecting to an Oracle container database, connect to the root container as the common user if you need to generate definitions for objects in more than one container. Otherwise, you can connect to a specific container to generate definitions only for that container.</p> <p>For more information about SOURCEDB, USERID, and USERIDALIAS, including the databases they support, see <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i>.</p>
NOCATALOG	Removes the container name (Oracle) or the catalog name (SQL/MX) from table names before their definitions are written to the definitions file. Use this parameter if the definitions file is to be used for mapping to a database that only supports two-part names ( <i>owner.object</i> ).
<pre>TABLE [container.   catalog.]owner.table [, {DEF   TARGETDEF} template];</pre> <p>Where:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <i>container</i> is a container in an Oracle container database.</li> <li>■ <i>catalog</i> is a catalog in a SQL/MX database.</li> <li>■ <i>owner</i> is the name of the schema that contains the table to be defined.</li> <li>■ <i>table</i> is the table that is to be defined.</li> <li>■ [, {DEF   TARGETDEF} <i>template</i>] additionally creates a definitions template based on the metadata of this table. This option is not supported for initial loads. See <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i> for information about this option.</li> </ul>	<p>Specifies the fully qualified name of a table or tables for which definitions will be defined and optionally uses the metadata of the table as a basis for a definitions template. Case-sensitivity of both table name and template name is preserved for case-sensitive databases. See <a href="#">Section 4.5, "Specifying Object Names in Oracle GoldenGate Input"</a> for instructions on wildcarding and case-sensitivity.</p> <p>Specify a source table(s) if generating a source-definitions file or a target table(s) if generating a target-definitions file.</p> <p>To exclude tables from a wildcard specification, use the TABLEEXCLUDE parameter.</p> <p>Note that DEFGEN does not support UDTs.</p>

#### 4. Save and close the file.

#### 5. Exit GGSCI.

##### 13.3.5.2 Run DEFGEN

- From the directory where Oracle GoldenGate is installed, run DEFGEN using the following arguments. This example shows a UNIX file system structure.

```
defgen paramfile dirprm/defgen.prm [reportfile dirrpt/defgen.rpt]
[NOEXTATTR]
```

Where:

- defgen is the name of the program.
- paramfile is a required keyword. dirprm/defgen.prm is the relative or full path name of the DEFGEN parameter file. (The typical location is shown in the example.)

- reportfile is a required keyword. dirrpt/defgen.rpt sends output to the screen and to the designated report file. (The typical location is shown in the example.) You can omit the reportfile argument to print to the screen only.
  - NOEXTATTR can be used to support backward compatibility with Oracle GoldenGate versions that are older than Release 11.2.1 and do not support character sets other than ASCII, nor case-sensitivity or object names that are quoted with spaces. NOEXTATTR prevents DEFGEN from including the database locale and character set that support the globalization features that were introduced in Oracle GoldenGate Release 11.2.1. If the table or column name has multi-byte or special characters such as white spaces, DEFGEN does not include the table definition when NOEXTATTR is specified. If APPEND mode is used in the parameter file, NOEXTATTR is ignored, and the new table definition is appended in the existing file format, whether with the extra attributes or not.
2. Repeat these steps for any additional definitions files that you want to create.
  3. Using ASCII mode, FTP the definitions file (or files) from the local Oracle GoldenGate dirdef sub-directory to the remote dirdef sub-directory.

### 13.3.5.3 Transfer the Definitions File to the Remote System

Use BINARY mode to FTP the data definitions file to the remote system if the local and remote operating systems are different and the definitions file is created for the remote operating system character set. This avoids unexpected characters to be placed in the file by the FTP program, such as new-line and line-feed characters. Always use BINARY mode when transferring definitions files from z/OS to a non-z/OS platform.

### 13.3.5.4 Specify the Definitions File

Associate a data-definitions file with the correct Oracle GoldenGate process in the following ways:

- Associate a target-definitions file with an Extract group or data pump by using the TARGETDEFS parameter in the Extract parameter file.
- Associate a source-definitions file with the Replicat group by using the SOURCEDEFS parameter in the Replicat parameter file.
- If Oracle GoldenGate is to perform mapping or conversion on an intermediary system that contains neither the source nor target database, associate a source-definitions file and a target-definitions file with the data pump Extract by using SOURCEDEFS and TARGETDEFS in the parameter file. For Oracle databases, the Oracle libraries also must be present on the intermediary system.

See [Section 13.3.7, "Examples of Using a Definitions File"](#) for the correct way to specify multiple definitions files.

Do not use SOURCEDEFS and ASSUMETARGETDEFS in the same parameter file. See [Section 13.2, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate to Assume Identical Metadata"](#) for more information about ASSUMETARGETDEFS.

### 13.3.6 Adding Tables that Satisfy a Definitions Template

To map a new table in the Oracle GoldenGate configuration to a definitions template, use the following options of the TABLE and MAP parameters, as appropriate:

- DEF to specify the name of a source-definitions template.
- TARGETDEF to specify the name of a target-definitions template.

Because these options direct the Extract or Replicat process to use the same definitions as the specified template, you need not create a new definitions file for the new table, nor restart the process.

### 13.3.7 Examples of Using a Definitions File

This topic contains some basic use cases that include a definitions file.

[Creating a Source-definitions file for Use on a Target System](#)

[Creating Target-definitions Files for Use on a Source System](#)

[Creating Multiple Source-definitions Files for Use on a Target System](#)

#### 13.3.7.1 Creating a Source-definitions file for Use on a Target System

The following configuration uses a DEFGEN parameter file that creates a source-definitions file as output. This example is for tables from an Oracle database.

```
DEFSFILE C:\ggs\dirdef\record.def
USERIDALIAS ogg
TABLE acct.cust100, DEF custdef;
TABLE ord.*;
TABLE hr.*;
```

The results of this DEFGEN configuration are:

- Individual definitions by name are created for all tables in the `ord` and `hr` schemas.
- A `custdef` template is created based on table `acct.cust100`. In the database, there are other `acct.cust*` tables, each with identical definitions to `acct.cust100`.

The tables are mapped in the Replicat parameter file as follows:

```
-- This is a simplified parameter file. Your requirements may vary.
REPLICAT acctrep
USERIDALIAS ogg
SOURCEDEFS c:\ggs\dirdef\record.def
MAP acct.cust*, TARGET acct.cust*, DEF custdef;
MAP ord.prod, TARGET ord.prod;
MAP ord.parts, TARGET ord.parts;
MAP hr.emp, TARGET hr.emp;
MAP hr.salary, TARGET hr.salary;
```

Note that definitions for tables that satisfy the wildcard specification `acct.cust*` are obtained from the `custdef` template, as directed by the `DEF` option of the first `MAP` statement.

#### 13.3.7.2 Creating Target-definitions Files for Use on a Source System

If target definitions are required for the same tables, those tables can be mapped for a primary Extract or a data pump.

- Target definitions are required instead of source definitions if the target is an Enscribe database.
- Target definitions are required in addition to source definitions if mapping and conversion are to be done on an intermediary system.

The DEFGEN configuration to make the target-definitions file looks similar to the following:

```
DEFSFILE C:\ggs\dirdef\trecord.def
USERIDALIAS ogg
```

```
TABLE acct.cust100, DEF tcustdef;
TABLE ord.*;
TABLE hr.*;
```

---

**Note:** See the previous example for the DEFGEN configuration that makes the source-definitions file.

---

The Extract configuration looks similar to the following:

```
-- This is a simplified parameter file. Your requirements may vary.
EXTRACT acctex
USERIDALIAS ogg
RMTHOSTOPTIONS sysb, MGRPORT 7890, ENCRYPT AES192 KEYNAME mykey1
ENCRYPTIONTRAIL AES192
RMTTRAIL $data.ggsdat.rt
SOURCEDEFS c:\ggs\dirdef\record.def
TARGETDEFS c:\ggs\dirdef\trecord.def
TABLE acct.cust*, TARGET acct.cust*, DEF custdef, TARGETDEF tcustdef;
TABLE ord.prod, TARGET ord.prod;
TABLE ord.parts, TARGET ord.parts;
TABLE hr.emp, TARGET hr.emp;
TABLE hr.salary, TARGET hr.salary;
```

In this example, the source template named `custdef` (from the `record.def` file) and a target template named `tcustdef` (from the `trecord.def` file) are used for the `acct.cust*` tables. Definitions for the tables from the `ord` and `hr` schemas are obtained from explicit definitions based on the table names (but a wildcard specification could have been used here, instead)

### 13.3.7.3 Creating Multiple Source-definitions Files for Use on a Target System

This is a simple example of how to use multiple definitions files. Your parameter requirements may vary, based on the Oracle GoldenGate topology and database type.

The following is the DEFGEN parameter file that creates the first data-definitions file.

```
DEFSFILE C:\ggs\dirdef\sales.def
USERIDALIAS ogg
TABLE ord.*;
```

The following is the DEFGEN parameter file that creates the second data-definitions file. Note the file name and table specification are different from the first one.

```
DEFSFILE C:\ggs\dirdef\admin.def
USERIDALIAS ogg
TABLE hr.*;
```

The tables for the first and second definitions file are mapped in the same Replicat parameter file as follows:

```
REPLICAT acctrep
USERIDALIAS ogg
SOURCEDEFS c:\ggs\dirdef\sales.def
MAP ord.*, TARGET ord.*;
SOURCEDEFS c:\ggs\dirdef\admin.def
MAP hr.*, TARGET hr.*;
```

## 13.4 Configuring Oracle GoldenGate to Use a Combination of Similar and Dissimilar Definitions

ASSUMETARGETDEFS and SOURCEDEFS can be used in the same parameter file. This can be done when column mapping or conversion must be performed between some of the source-target table pairs, but not for other table pairs that are identical.

The following is an example of how to use SOURCEDEFS and ASSUMETARGETDEFS in the same parameter file. This example builds on the previous examples where tables in the acct, ord, and hr schemas require SOURCEDEFS, but it adds a rpt schema with tables that are dynamically created with the name stock appended with a random numerical value. For Oracle GoldenGate to replicate the DDL as well as the DML, the target tables must be identical. In that case, ASSUMETARGETDEFS is required.

```
REPLICAT acctrep
USERIDALIAS ogg
SOURCEDEFS c:\ggs\dirdef\record.def
MAP acct.cust*, TARGET acct.cust*, DEF custdef;
MAP ord.prod, TARGET ord.prod;
MAP ord.parts, TARGET ord.parts;
MAP hr.emp, TARGET hr.emp;
MAP hr.salary, TARGET hr.salary;
ASSUMETARGETDEFS
MAP rpt.stock, TARGET rpt.stock;
```



---

# Configuring Online Change Synchronization

This chapter describes how to configure online change synchronization.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Overview of Online Change Synchronization](#)
- [Choosing Names for Processes and Files](#)
- [Creating a Checkpoint Table](#)
- [Creating an Online Extract Group](#)
- [Creating a Trail](#)
- [Creating a Parameter File for Online Extraction](#)
- [Creating an Online Replicat Group](#)
- [Creating a Parameter File for Online Replication](#)

## 14.1 Overview of Online Change Synchronization

Online change synchronization extracts and replicates data changes continuously to maintain a near real-time target database. The number of Extract and Replicat processes and trails that you will need depends on the replication topology that you want to deploy and the process mode that you will be using.

For detailed information about deploying specific replication topologies, see:

- [Chapter 5, "Using Oracle GoldenGate for Live Reporting"](#)
- [Chapter 6, "Using Oracle GoldenGate for Real-time Data Distribution"](#)
- [Chapter 8, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate to Maintain a Live Standby Database"](#)
- [Chapter 9, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Active-Active High Availability"](#)

You may need to configure multiple Replicat processes if you are replicating between Oracle multitenant container databases or SQL/MX databases that contain multiple catalogs. One Replicat process can apply to one, and only one, container or catalog. In this case, you must configure a Replicat process for each target container or catalog. To do so, you specify the appropriate target container or catalog with the TARGETDB parameter in each Replicat parameter file. See *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database* and *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for NonStop SQL/MX* for guidelines when capturing from, and applying to, these databases.

You may need to configure multiple process groups to achieve a certain performance level. For example, you may want to keep lag below a certain threshold. Lag is the

difference between when changes are made within your source applications and when those changes are applied to the target database.

Oracle GoldenGate supports up to 5,000 concurrent Extract and Replicat groups per instance of Oracle GoldenGate Manager. At the supported level, all groups can be controlled and viewed in full with GGSCI commands such as the INFO and STATUS commands. Oracle GoldenGate recommends keeping the number of Extract and Replicat groups (combined) at the default level of 300 or below in order to manage your environment effectively.

See [Section 19, "Tuning the Performance of Oracle GoldenGate"](#) for more information about configuring Oracle GoldenGate for best performance.

### 14.1.1 Initial Synchronization

After you configure your change-synchronization groups and trails following the directions in this chapter, see [Chapter 16, "Instantiating Oracle GoldenGate with an Initial Load"](#) to prepare the target tables for synchronization. An initial load takes a copy of entire source tables, transforms the data if necessary, and applies it to the target tables so that the movement of transaction data begins from a synchronized state. The first time that you start change synchronization should be during the initial synchronization process. Change synchronization keeps track of ongoing transactional changes while the load is being applied.

## 14.2 Choosing Names for Processes and Files

It is helpful to develop consistent naming conventions for the Oracle GoldenGate processes and files before you start configuration steps. Choosing meaningful names helps you differentiate among multiple processes and files in displays, error logs, and external monitoring programs. In addition, it accommodates the naming of additional processes and files later, as your environment changes or expands.

This section contains instructions for:

- [Naming Conventions for Processes](#)
- [Choosing File Names](#)

### 14.2.1 Naming Conventions for Processes

When specifying a process or group name, follow these rules.

- For the following types of processes, you can use up to eight characters, including non-alphanumeric characters such as the underscore (\_):
  - Online Extract group
  - Initial-load Extract
  - Online Replicat group created in classic (non-coordinated) mode
  - Online Replicat group created in integrated mode (Oracle only)
- For a coordinated Replicat process group, you can use up to five characters, including non-alphanumeric characters such as the underscore (\_). Internally, a three-character thread ID is appended to the base name for each thread that is created based on the MAXTHREADS option of the ADD REPLICAT command. The resulting names cannot be duplicated for any other Replicat group. For example, if a coordinated Replicat group named fin is created with a MAXTHREADS of 50 threads, the resulting thread names could span from fin000 through fin050,

assuming those are the IDs specified in the MAP statements. Thus, no other Replicat group can be named fin000 through fin0050. See the following rule for more information.

- You can include a number in a group name, but it is not recommended that a name end in any numerals. Understand that using a numeric value at the end of a group name (such as fin1) can cause duplicate report file names and errors, because the writing process appends a number to the end of the group name when generating a report. In addition, ending a group name with numeric values is not recommended when running Replicat in coordinated mode. Because numeric thread IDs are appended to a group name internally, if the base group name also ends in a number it can make the output of informational commands more complicated to analyze. Thread names could be confused with the names of other Replicat groups if the numeric appendages satisfy wildcards. Duplicate report file names also can occur. It may be more practical to put a numeric value at the beginning of a group name, such as 1\_fin, 1fin, and so forth.
- Any character can be used in the name of a process, so long as the character set of the local operating system supports it, and the operating system allows that character to be in a file name. This is because a group is identified by its associated checkpoint file and parameter file.
- The following characters are not allowed in the name of a process:  
{ \ / : \* ? " < > | }
- On HP UX, Linux, and Solaris, it is possible to create a file name with a colon (:) or an asterisk (\*), although it is not recommended.
- In general, process names and parameter file names are not case-sensitive within Oracle GoldenGate. For example, finance, Finance, and FINANCE are all considered to be the same. However, on Linux, the process name (and its parameter file name if explicitly defined in the ADD command) must be all uppercase or all lowercase. Mixed-case names specified for processes and parameter files will result in errors when starting the process.
- Use only one word for a name.
- Do not use the word "port" as the full name for a process or parameter file. However, the string "port" can be part of a name.

### 14.2.2 Choosing File Names

Captured data must be processed into a series of files called a trail, where it is stored for processing by the next Oracle GoldenGate process downstream. The basic configuration is:

- A local trail on the source system
- A remote trail on the target system

The actual trail name contains only two characters, such as ./dirdat/tr. Oracle GoldenGate appends this name with a six-digit sequence number whenever a new file is created, such as ./dirdat/aa000002. It is recommended that you establish naming conventions for trails, because they are linked to Oracle GoldenGate processes and may need to be identified for the purposes of troubleshooting.

On Windows systems, if the name of any directory in the trail path name begins with a number, the path must be specified with forward slashes, not backward slashes, when listing the trail in a parameter file. For more information, see [Section 4.5.1, "Specifying Filesystem Path Names in Parameter Files on Windows Systems."](#)

See [Section 1.2.4, "Overview of Trails"](#) for more information about Oracle GoldenGate trails.

## 14.3 Creating a Checkpoint Table

Replicat maintains checkpoints that provide a known position in the trail from which to start after an expected or unexpected shutdown. To store a record of its checkpoints, Replicat uses a checkpoint table in the target database. This enables the Replicat checkpoint to be included within the Replicat transaction itself, to ensure that a transaction will only be applied once, even if there is a failure of the Replicat process or the database process. The checkpoint table remains small because rows are deleted when no longer needed, and it does not affect database performance. [Appendix E, "About Checkpoints"](#) for more information about the checkpoint table.

### 14.3.1 Options for Creating the Checkpoint Table

The checkpoint table can reside in a schema of your choice. Use one that is dedicated to Oracle GoldenGate if possible.

More than one instance of Oracle GoldenGate (multiple installations) can use the same checkpoint table. Oracle GoldenGate keeps track of the checkpoints, even if Replicat group names are the same in different instances.

More than one checkpoint table can be used as needed. For example, you can use different ones for different Replicat groups.

You can install your checkpoint table(s) in these ways:

- You can specify a default checkpoint table in the `GLOBALS` file. New Replicat groups created with the `ADD REPLICAT` command will use this table automatically, without requiring any special instructions. See ["To Specify a Default Checkpoint Table in the GLOBALS File"](#) for instructions.
- You can provide specific checkpoint table instructions when you create any given Replicat group with the `ADD REPLICAT` command:
  - To use a specific checkpoint table for a group, use the `CHECKPOINTTABLE` argument of `ADD REPLICAT`. This checkpoint table overrides any default specification in the `GLOBALS` file. If using only one Replicat group, you can use this command and skip creating the `GLOBALS` file altogether.
  - To omit using a checkpoint table for a group, use the `NODBCHECKPOINT` argument of `ADD REPLICAT`. Without a checkpoint table, Replicat still maintains checkpoints in a checkpoint file on disk, but you introduce the risk of data inconsistency.

However you implement the checkpoint table, you must create it in the target database prior to using the `ADD REPLICAT` command.

#### To add a checkpoint table to the target database

The following steps, which create the checkpoint table through GGSCI, can be bypassed by running the `chkpt_db_create.sql` script instead, where `db` is an abbreviation of the database type. By using the script, you can specify custom storage or other attributes. Do not change the names or attributes of the columns in this table.

1. From the Oracle GoldenGate directory, run GGSCI and issue the `DBLOGIN` command to log into the database. The user issuing this command must have `CREATE TABLE` permissions. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for the correct syntax to use for your database.

2. In GGSCI, issue the following command to add the checkpoint table to the database.

```
ADD CHECKPOINTTABLE [container | catalog] owner.table
```

Where:

*owner.table* is the owner and name of the table, *container* is the name of a PDB if installing into an Oracle multitenant container database, and *catalog* is the name of the catalog if installing into a SQL/MX database. The owner and name can be omitted if you are using this table as the default checkpoint table and this table is specified with CHECKPOINTTABLE in the GLOBALS file. The name of this table must not exceed the maximum length permitted by the database for object names. The checkpoint table name cannot contain any special characters, such as quotes, backslash, pound sign, and so forth.

#### To Specify a Default Checkpoint Table in the GLOBALS File

This procedure specifies a global name for all checkpoint tables in the Oracle GoldenGate instance. You can override this name for any given Replicat group by specifying a different checkpoint table when you create the Replicat group.

1. Create a GLOBALS file (or edit the existing one, if applicable). The file name must be all capital letters on UNIX or Linux systems, without a file extension, and must reside in the root Oracle GoldenGate directory. You can use an ASCII text editor to create the file, making certain to observe the preceding naming conventions, or you can use GGSCI to create and save it with the correct name and location automatically. When using GGSCI, use the following command, typing GLOBALS in upper case.

```
EDIT PARAMS ./GLOBALS
```

2. Enter the following parameter:

```
CHECKPOINTTABLE [container. | catalog.]owner.table
```

Where:

*[catalog. | container.]owner.table* is the fully qualified name of the default checkpoint table, including the name of the container if the database is an Oracle multitenant container database (CDB) or the name of the catalog if the database is SQL/MX.

3. Note the name of the table, then save and close the GLOBALS file. Make certain the file was created in the root Oracle GoldenGate directory. If there is a file extension, remove it.

#### 14.3.2 Adjusting for Coordinated Replicat in Oracle RAC

If the Replicat for which you are creating a checkpoint table will run in an Oracle RAC configuration, it is recommended that you increase the PCTFREE attribute of the Replicat checkpoint table to as high a value as possible, as high as 90 if possible. This accommodates the more frequent checkpointing that is inherent in coordinated processing. This change must be made before starting the Replicat group for the first time. See [Section 14.7](#) for more information about coordinated Replicat.

## 14.4 Creating an Online Extract Group

To create an online Extract group, run GGSCI on the source system and issue the ADD EXTRACT command. Separate all command arguments with a comma. There are two syntax forms:

- [Syntax to Create a Regular, Passive, or Data Pump Extract Group](#)
- [Syntax to Create an Alias Extract Group](#)

### Syntax to Create a Regular, Passive, or Data Pump Extract Group

```
ADD EXTRACT group
{, datasource}
{, BEGIN start_point} | {position_point}
[, PASSIVE]
[, THREADS n]
[, PARAMS pathname]
[, REPORT pathname]
[, DESC 'description' ]
```

Where:

- *group* is the name of the Extract group. A group name is required. See [Section 14.2.1, "Naming Conventions for Processes"](#) for group naming conventions.
- *datasource* is required to specify the source of the data to be extracted. Use one of the following:
  - TRANLOG specifies the transaction log as the data source. Use for all databases except Teradata. When using this option for Oracle Enterprise Edition, you must issue the DBLOGIN command as the Extract database user (or a user with the same privileges) before using ADD EXTRACT (and also before issuing DELETE EXTRACT to remove an Extract group).

Use the *bsds* option for DB2 running on z/OS to specify the Bootstrap Data Set file name of the transaction log. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for the correct syntax to use for your database.

- INTEGRATED TRANLOG specifies that this Extract will operate in integrated capture mode to receive logical change records (LCR) from an Oracle database logmining server. This parameter applies only to Oracle databases. For additional options and information on using integrated capture, see *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database*.
- VAM specifies that the Extract API known as the Vendor Access Module (VAM). For Teradata it will interface with the Teradata Access Module (TAM). Use for Informix and Teradata databases. See *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Informix* or *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Teradata* for more information.
- VAMTRAILSOURCE *VAM trail name* to specify a VAM trail. Use for Teradata extraction in maximum protection mode to create a VAM-sort Extract group. See *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Teradata* for more information.
- EXTTRAILSOURCE *trail name* to specify the relative or fully qualified name of a local trail. Use to create a data pump. A data pump can be used with any Oracle GoldenGate extraction method.

- BEGIN *start\_point* defines an online Extract group by establishing an initial checkpoint and start point for processing. Transactions started before this point are discarded. Use one of the following:

- NOW to begin extracting changes that are timestamped at the point when the ADD EXTRACT command is executed to create the group or, for an Oracle Extract in integrated mode, from the time the group is registered with the REGISTER EXTRACT command. Do not use NOW for a data pump Extract unless you want to bypass any data that was captured to the Oracle GoldenGate trail prior to the ADD EXTRACT statement.

This start point is not supported for Informix and if used the positioning will start from the EOF in the transaction logs so Oracle recommends using LSN positioning for Informix Extract.

- YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM[:SS[.CCCCCC]] as the format for specifying an exact timestamp as the begin point. Use a begin point that is later than the time at which replication or logging was enabled.

---

**Note:** Do not use the BEGIN parameter for a Teradata source.

---

- *position\_point* specifies a specific position within a specific transaction log file at which to start processing. For the specific syntax to use for your database, see ADD EXTRACT in *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.
- PASSIVE indicates that the group is a passive Extract. When using PASSIVE, you must also use an alias Extract. See [Section 11, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security"](#) for more information. This option can appear in any order among other ADD EXTRACT options.
- THREADS *n* is required only if Extract is operating in classic capture mode in an Oracle Real Application Cluster (RAC). It specifies the number of redo log threads being used by the cluster.
- PARAMS *pathname* is required if the parameter file for this group will be stored in a location other than the dirprm sub-directory of the Oracle GoldenGate directory. Specify the fully qualified name. The default location is recommended.
- REPORT *pathname* is required if the process report for this group will be stored in a location other than the dirrprt sub-directory of the Oracle GoldenGate directory. Specify the fully qualified name. The default location is recommended.
- DESC '*description*' specifies a description of the group.

### Syntax to Create an Alias Extract Group

```
ADD EXTRACT group
, RMTHOST {host | IP address}
, {MGRPORT port} | {PORT port}
[, RMTNAME name]
[, DESC 'description']
```

Where:

- RMTHOST identifies this group as an alias Extract and specifies either the DNS name of the remote host or its IP address.
- MGRPORT specifies the port on the remote system where Manager is running. Use this option when using a dynamic Collector.

- PORT specifies a static Collector port. Use instead of MGRPORT only if running a static Collector.
- RMTNAME specifies the passive Extract name, if different from that of the alias Extract.
- DESC '*description*' specifies a description of the group.

**Example 14–1 Adding an Extract Group for Log-based Capture**

This example creates an Extract group named finance. Extraction starts with records generated at the time when the group was created.

```
ADD EXTRACT finance, TRANLOG, BEGIN NOW
```

**Example 14–2 Adding a Primary Extract Group for Teradata**

This example creates an Extract group named finance that performs in either Teradata maximum performance or Teradata maximum protection mode. No BEGIN point is used for Teradata sources.

```
ADD EXTRACT finance, VAM
```

**Example 14–3 Adding a VAM-sort Extract Group for Teradata**

This example creates a VAM-sort Extract group named finance. The process reads from VAM trail /ggs/dirdat/vt.

```
ADD EXTRACT finance, VAMTRAILSOURCE /ggs/dirdat/vt
```

**Example 14–4 Adding a Data-pump Extract Group**

This example creates a data-pump Extract group named finance. It reads from the Oracle GoldenGate trail c:\ggs\dirdat\lt.

```
ADD EXTRACT finance, EXTTRAILSOURCE c:\ggs\dirdat\lt
```

**Example 14–5 Adding a Passive Extract Group**

This example creates a passive Extract group named finance. Extraction starts with records generated at the time when the group was created. Because this group is marked as passive, an alias Extract on the target will initiate connections to this Extract.

```
ADD EXTRACT finance, TRANLOG, BEGIN NOW, PASSIVE
```

**Example 14–6 Adding a Passive Data-pump Extract Group**

This example creates a data-pump Extract group named finance. This is a passive data pump Extract that reads from the Oracle GoldenGate trail c:\ggs\dirdat\lt. Because this data pump is marked as passive, an alias Extract on the target will initiate connections to it.

```
ADD EXTRACT finance, EXTTRAILSOURCE c:\ggs\dirdat\lt, PASSIVE
```

**Example 14–7 Adding an Alias Extract Group**

This example creates an alias Extract group named alias.

```
ADD EXTRACT alias, RMTHOST sysA, MGRPORT 7800, RMTNAME finance
```

**Example 14–8 Adding a Primary Extract in Integrated Mode for Oracle**

This example creates an Extract in integrated capture mode for an Oracle source database and sets the start point to the time when the Extract group is registered with the Oracle database by means of the REGISTER EXTRACT command. Integrated capture is available only for an Oracle database.

```
ADD EXTRACT finance INTEGRATED TRANLOG, BEGIN NOW
```

## 14.5 Creating a Trail

After data has been extracted, it must be processed into one or more trails, where it is stored for processing by another Oracle GoldenGate process. A trail is a sequence of files that are created and aged as needed. Processes that read a trail are:

- VAM-sort Extract: Extracts from a local trail that is created as a VAM trail (for Teradata source databases). For more information, see *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Teradata*
- Data-pump Extract: Extracts data from a local trail for further processing, if needed, and transfers it to the target system.
- Replicat: Reads a trail to apply change data to the target database.

You can create more than one trail to separate the data of different tables or applications, or to satisfy the requirements of a specific replication topology, such as a cascading topology. You link tables specified with a TABLE statement to a trail specified with an EXTTRAIL or RMTTRAIL parameter statement in the Extract parameter file. See [Section 1.2.4, "Overview of Trails"](#) for conceptual information about Oracle GoldenGate trails.

### 14.5.1 Assigning Storage for Oracle GoldenGate Trails

In a typical configuration, there is at least one trail on the source system and one on the target system. Allocate enough disk space to allow for the following:

- The primary Extract process captures transactional data from the source database and writes it to the local trail. A data-pump Extract reads that trail and then transfers the data over the network to a remote trail on the target. If the network fails, the data pump fails but the primary Extract continues to process data to the local trail. There must be enough disk space to contain the data accumulation, or the primary Extract will abend.
- For a trail at the target location, provide enough disk space to handle data accumulation according to the purge rules set with the PURGEOLDEXTRACTS parameter. Even with PURGEOLDEXTRACTS in use, data will always accumulate on the target because it is transferred across the network faster than it can be applied to the target database.

To prevent trail activity from interfering with business applications, assign a separate disk or file system to contain the trail files. Trail files can reside on drives that are local to the Oracle GoldenGate installation, or they can reside on NAS or SAN devices. In an Oracle cluster, they can reside on ASM or DBFS storage.

### 14.5.2 Estimating Space for the Trails

The following are guidelines for estimating the amount of disk space that will be required to store Oracle GoldenGate trail data.

1. Estimate the longest time that the network could be unavailable. Plan to store enough data to withstand the longest possible outage, because otherwise you will need to resynchronize the source and target data if the outage outlasts disk capacity.
2. Estimate how much transaction log volume your business applications generate in one hour.
3. Use the following formula to calculate the required disk space.

**[log volume in one hour] x [number of hours downtime] x .4 = trail disk space**

This equation uses a multiplier of 40 percent because only about 40 percent of the data in a transaction log is needed by Oracle GoldenGate.

---

**Note:** This formula is a conservative estimate, and you should run tests once you have configured Oracle GoldenGate to determine exactly how much space you need.

---

### 14.5.3 Adding a Trail

When you create, or *add*, a trail, you do not physically create any files on disk. The files are created automatically by an Extract process. Rather, you specify the name of the trail and associate it with the Extract group that writes to it.

To add a trail, issue the following command in GGSCI on the source system.

```
ADD {RMTTRAIL | EXTTRAIL} pathname, EXTRACT group
[, MEGABYTES n]
```

Where:

- RMTTRAIL specifies a trail on a remote system.
- EXTTRAIL specifies a trail on the local system.
  - EXTTRAIL cannot be used for an Extract in PASSIVE mode.
  - EXTTRAIL must be used to specify a local trail that is read by a data pump or to specify a VAM trail that is linked to a primary Extract which interacts with a Teradata Access Module (TAM). For more information about the Teradata configuration, see *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Teradata*
- *pathname* is the relative or fully qualified name of the trail, including a two-character name that can be any two alphanumeric characters, for example c:\ggs\dirdat\rt. Oracle GoldenGate appends a serial number to each trail file as it is created during processing. Typically, trails are stored in the dirdat sub-directory of the Oracle GoldenGate directory.
- EXTRACT *group* specifies the name of the Extract group that writes to this trail. Only one Extract group can write to a trail.
- MEGABYTES *n* is an optional argument with which you can set the size, in megabytes, of each trail file (default is 100).

#### **Example 14–9 VAM Trail**

This example creates a VAM trail named /ggs/dirdat/vt for Extract group extvam.

```
ADD EXTTRAIL /ggs/dirdat/vt, EXTRACT extvam
```

***Example 14–10 Local Trail***

This example creates a local trail named /ggs/dirdat/lt for Extract group ext.

```
ADD EXTTRAIL /ggs/dirdat/lt, EXTRACT ext
```

***Example 14–11 Creating a Trail***

This example creates a trail named c:\ggs\dirdat\rt for Extract group finance, with each file sized at approximately 50 megabytes.

```
ADD RMTTRAIL c:\ggs\dirdat\rt, EXTRACT finance, MEGABYTES 200
```

## 14.6 Creating a Parameter File for Online Extraction

Follow these instructions to create a parameter file for an online Extract group. A parameter file is not required for an alias Extract group. See [Chapter 11, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security"](#) for more information about using an alias Extract group.

1. In GCSCI on the source system, issue the following command.

```
EDIT PARAMS name
```

Where:

*name* is either the name of the Extract group that you created with the ADD EXTRACT command or the fully qualified name of the parameter file if you defined an alternate location when you created the group.

2. Enter the parameters in [Table 14–1](#) in the order shown, starting a new line for each parameter statement. Some parameters apply only for certain configurations.

**Table 14–1 Online Change-extraction Parameters**

Parameter	Description
EXTRACT <i>group</i>	Configures Extract as an online process with checkpoints. ■ <i>group</i> is the name of the Extract group that you created with the ADD EXTRACT command.
[SOURCEDB <i>dsn</i>   <i>container</i>   <i>catalog</i> ] [, USERIDALIAS <i>alias options</i>   , USERID <i>user, options</i> ]	Specifies database connection information. SOURCEDB specifies the source datasource name (DSN) or SQL/MX catalog. See <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i> for more information. USERID and USERIDALIAS specify database credentials if required. See <a href="#">Chapter 11, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security"</a> for more information about security options. The database connection can be omitted if the group is a data pump on an intermediary system that does not have a database. In this case, there can be no column mapping or conversion performed.
RMTHOSTOPTIONS <i>host</i> , MGRPORT <i>port</i> , [, ENCRYPT <i>algorithm KEYNAME key_name</i> ]	Specifies the target system, the port where Manager is running, and optional encryption of data across TCP/IP. Only required when sending data over IP to a remote system (if ADD RMTTRAIL was used to create the trail). Not required if the trail is on the local system (if ADD EXTTRAIL was used). See <a href="#">Chapter 11, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security"</a> for more information about security options. Not valid for a primary Extract group that interfaces with a Teradata Access Module and writes to a VAM trail. For more information, see <i>Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Teradata</i> . Not valid for a passive Extract group.
ENCRYPTTRAIL <i>algorithm</i>	Encrypts all trails that are specified after this entry. See <a href="#">Chapter 11, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security"</a> for more information about security options.
DECRYPTTRAIL	(For a data pump) Decrypts the data in the input trail. Use only if the data pump must process the data before writing it to the output trail. See <a href="#">Chapter 11, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security"</a> for more information about security options.
RMTTRAIL <i>pathname</i>   EXTTRAIL <i>pathname</i>	Specifies a trail. If specifying multiple trails, follow each designation with the appropriate TABLE statements. EXTTRAIL is not valid for a passive Extract group. If trails or files will be of different versions, use the FORMAT option of RMTTRAIL or EXTTRAIL. For more information, see <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i> .

**Table 14–1 (Cont.) Online Change-extraction Parameters**

Parameter	Description
DSOPTIONS { COMMITTEDTRANLOG, RESTARTAPPEND   CREATETRANLOG   SORTTRANLOG }	<p>Valid only for Teradata extraction.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Use COMMITTEDTRANLOG, RESTART APPEND to indicate that Extract is receiving fully committed data in Teradata maximum performance mode. RESTARTAPPEND appends data to the end of the Oracle GoldenGate trail rather than rewriting data from a previous run.</li> <li>▪ Use CREATETRANLOG to direct Extract to create and write to a local VAM trail in Teradata maximum protection mode. Use for a primary Extract group that interfaces with the Teradata Access Module.</li> <li>▪ Use SORTTRANLOG to cause Extract to read from a local VAM trail and sort the data in commit order in maximum protection mode. Use only for a VAM-sort Extract group.</li> </ul> <p>For more information about the Teradata configuration, see <i>Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Teradata</i>.</p>
LOGALLSUPCOLS	<p>Use when using integrated Replicat for an Oracle target, or when using Conflict Detection and Resolution (CDR) support. Writes the before images of scheduling columns to the trail. (Scheduling columns are primary key, unique index, and foreign key columns.) See <i>Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database</i> for more information on configuring integrated Replicat. See <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i> for more information about LOGALLSUPCOLS.</p>
VAM library, PARAMS ('param' [, 'param'] [, ...])	<p>Valid only for an Extract group that interfaces with a Teradata Access Module. Supplies the name of the library and parameters that must be passed to the Oracle GoldenGate API, such as the name of the TAM initialization file and the program that interacts with the library as the callback library.</p> <p>Example:</p> <pre>VAM vam.dll, PARAMS ('inifile', 'vamerge1.ini', 'callbacklib', 'extract.exe')</pre> <p>See <i>Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Teradata</i> for more information about Teradata VAM and TAM.</p>
PASSTHRU   NOPASSTHU	<p>(For a data pump) Specifies whether or not subsequent TABLE specifications will use normal or pass-through processing. If a data pump is only being used to pass data from the local system to a remote trail, without performing filtering, mapping, or conversion, you can run it in pass-through mode. In this mode, the Extract process bypasses its normal queries for table definitions from the database or a definitions file and can be used on a system with or without a database.</p>
SOURCECATALOG	<p>Specifies a default container in an Oracle multitenant container database or a default SQL/MX catalog for subsequent TABLE or SEQUENCE statements. Enables the use of two-part names (<i>schema.object</i>) where three-part names otherwise would be required for those databases. You can use multiple instances of this parameter to specify different default containers or catalogs for different sets of TABLE or SEQUENCE parameters.</p>

**Table 14–1 (Cont.) Online Change-extraction Parameters**

Parameter	Description
SEQUENCE [container.]owner.sequence;	Specifies the fully qualified name of an Oracle sequence to capture. Include the container name if the database is a multitenant container database (CDB).
TABLE [container.   catalog.]owner.object;	Specifies the fully qualified name of an object or a fully qualified wildcard specification for multiple objects. If the database is an Oracle multitenant container database or SQL/MX, the object name must include the name of the container or catalog unless SOURCECATALOG is used. See <a href="#">Section 4.5, "Specifying Object Names in Oracle GoldenGate Input"</a> for guidelines for specifying object names in parameter files.
CATALOGEXCLUDE	Parameters that can be used in conjunction with one another to exclude specific objects from a wildcard specification in the associated TABLE statement. See <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i> for details.
SCHEMAEXCLUDE	
TABLEEXCLUDE	
EXCLUDEWILDCARDOBJECTSONLY	

3. Enter any appropriate optional Extract parameters listed in the *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.
4. Save and close the parameter file.

## 14.7 Creating an Online Replicat Group

Before creating a Replicat group, you should evaluate which of the Replicat modes is appropriate for your environment: *classic mode* (also known as *nonintegrated mode* in Oracle environments), *coordinated mode*, and *integrated mode*.

[Section 14.7.1, "About Classic Replicat Mode"](#)

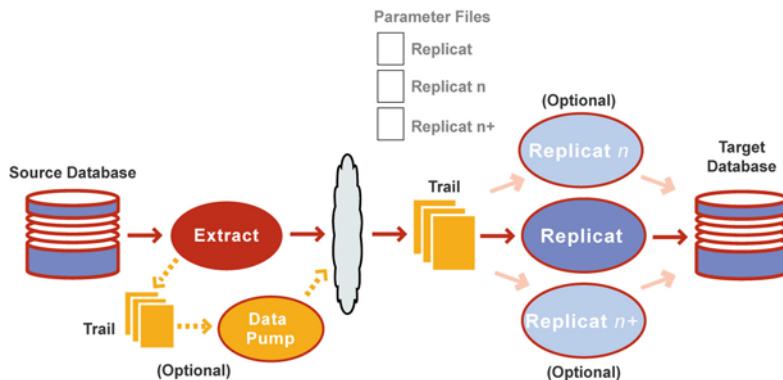
[Section 14.7.2, "About Coordinated Replicat Mode"](#)

[Section 14.7.3, "About Integrated Replicat Mode"](#)

### 14.7.1 About Classic Replicat Mode

In classic mode, Replicat is a single-threaded process that uses standard SQL to apply data to the target tables. In this mode, Replicat operates as follows:

- Reads the Oracle GoldenGate trail.
- Performs data filtering, mapping, and conversion.
- Constructs SQL statements that represent source database DML or DDL transactions (in committed order).
- Applies the SQL to the target through the SQL interface that is supported for the given target database, such as ODBC or the native database interface.

**Figure 14–1 Classic Replicat**

This graphic shows the classic Replicat configuration, where Extract sends data to a trail on the remote target system and then one or more Replicat groups read the trail and apply the data to the target. Multiple Replicat groups may be required in classic mode to improve apply performance.

As shown in [Figure 14–1](#), you can apply transactions in parallel with a classic Replicat, but only by partitioning the workload across multiple Replicat processes. A parameter file must be created for each Replicat.

To determine whether to use classic mode for any objects, you must determine whether the objects in one Replicat group will ever have dependencies on objects in any other Replicat group, transactional or otherwise. Not all workloads can be partitioned across multiple Replicat groups and still preserve the original transaction atomicity. For example, tables for which the workload routinely updates the primary key cannot easily be partitioned in this manner. DDL replication (if supported for the database) is not viable in this mode, nor is the use of some SQLLEXEC or EVENTACTIONS features that base their actions on a specific record.

If your tables do not have any foreign-key dependencies or updates to primary keys, classic mode may be suitable. Classic mode requires less overhead than coordinated mode.

For more information about using parallel Replicat groups, see [Chapter 19, "Tuning the Performance of Oracle GoldenGate"](#).

### 14.7.2 About Coordinated Replicat Mode

In coordinated mode, Replicat operates as follows:

- Reads the Oracle GoldenGate trail.
- Performs data filtering, mapping, and conversion.
- Constructs SQL statements that represent source database DML or DDL transactions (in committed order).
- Applies the SQL to the target through the SQL interface that is supported for the given target database, such as ODBC or the native database interface.

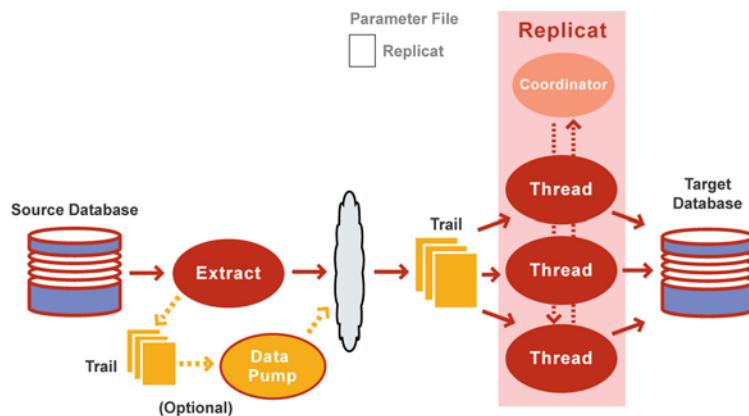
The difference between classic mode and coordinated mode is that Replicat is multi-threaded in coordinated mode. Within a single Replicat instance, multiple threads read the trail independently and apply transactions in parallel. Each thread handles all of the filtering, mapping, conversion, SQL construction, and error handling.

for its assigned workload. A *coordinator* thread coordinates the transactions across threads to account for dependencies among the threads.

Coordinated Replicat allows for user-defined partitioning of the workload so as to apply high volume transactions concurrently. In addition, it automatically coordinates the execution of transactions that require coordination, such as DDL, and primary key updates with THREADRANGE partitioning. Such a transaction is executed as one transaction in the target with full synchronization: it waits until all prior transactions are applied first, and all transactions after this barrier transaction have to wait until this barrier transaction is applied.

Only one parameter file is required for a coordinated Replicat, regardless of the number of threads. You use the THREAD or THREADRANGE option in the MAP statement to specify which threads process the transactions for those objects, and you specify the maximum number of threads when you create the Replicat group.

**Figure 14–2 Coordinated Replicat**



This graphic shows how a coordinated Replicat consists of a coordinator thread and any number of process threads. All threads read the trail independently and apply data to the target independently.

#### 14.7.2.1 About Barrier Transactions

Barrier transactions are managed automatically in a coordinated Replicat configuration. Barrier transactions are transactions that require coordination across threads. Examples include DDL statements, transactions that include updates to primary keys, and certain EVENTACTIONS actions.

Optionally, you can force other transactions to be treated like a barrier transaction through the use of the COORDINATED keyword in a MAP statement. One use case for this would be force a SQLEXEC to be executed in a manner similar to a serial execution. This could be beneficial if the results can become ambiguous unless the state of the target is consistent across all transactions.

#### 14.7.2.2 How Barrier Transactions are Processed

All threads converge and wait at the start of a barrier transaction. The barrier transaction is suspended until the other threads reach its start position. If any threads were already processing part of the barrier transaction, those threads perform a rollback. Grouped transactions, such as those controlled by the BATCHSQL or

GROUPTRANSOPS parameters, are also rolled back and then reapplied until they reach the start of the barrier transaction.

All of the threads converge and wait at the start of the next transaction after the barrier transaction as well. The two synchronization points, before and after the barrier transaction, ensure that metadata operations and EVENTACTIONS actions all occur in the proper order relevant to the data operations.

Once the threads are synchronized at the start of the barrier transaction, the barrier transaction is processed serially by the thread that has the lowest thread ID among all of the threads specified in the MAP statements, and then parallel processing across threads is resumed. You can force barrier transactions to be processed through a specific thread, which is always thread 0, by specifying the USEDEDICATEDCOORDINATIONTHREAD parameter in the Replicat parameter file.

#### 14.7.2.3 About the Global Watermark

A clean shutdown of a coordinated Replicat ensures that all threads stop at the same transaction boundary in the trail, known as the *global watermark*. This is defined as the synchronized point where all records before this position were either committed or ignored by all of their respective threads. If a clean shutdown is not possible, you can use the SYNCHRONIZE REPLICAT command to return all of the threads to the position of the thread that made the most recent checkpoint. See [Section 20.12.3, "Synchronizing threads after an Unclean Stop"](#) for more information about recovering a coordinated Replicat group.

---

**Note:** Coordinated Replicat is an online process only. Do not use it to perform initial loads.

---

#### 14.7.3 About Integrated Replicat Mode

In integrated mode, available for Oracle databases of version 11.2.0.4 or later, Replicat leverages the apply processing functionality that is available within the target Oracle database. In this mode, Replicat reads the trail, constructs logical change records that represent source DML or DDL transactions, and transmits these records to an inbound server in the Oracle target database. The inbound server applies the data to the target database.

For more information about using integrated Replicat, see *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database*.

---

**Note:** Integrated Replicat is an online process only. Do not use it to perform initial loads.

---

#### 14.7.4 Understanding Replicat Processing in Relation to Parameter Changes

Changes to the object specifications in the Replicat configuration cannot be made to affect transactions that are already applied, but only for those not yet applied. This is an important consideration when using coordinated or integrated Replicat.

For a Replicat in classic mode, the boundary between applied and non-applied transactions is a clean one, because transactions are applied serially. For a coordinated or integrated Replicat, however, there is no single point in the trail that marks applied and unapplied transactions, because transactions are being applied asynchronously in parallel.

In coordinated or integrated modes, there are a low watermark, below which all transactions were applied, and a high watermark above which no transactions were applied. In between those boundaries there may be transactions that may or may not have been applied, depending on the progress of individual threads. As a result, if Replicat is forced changes to object specifications in the Replicat configuration may be reflected unevenly in the target after Replicat is restarted. Examples of parameter changes for which this applies are changes to MAP mappings, FILTER clauses, and EXCLUDE parameters.

Changes to the Replicat configuration should not be made after Replicat abends or is forcibly terminated. Replicat should be allowed to recover to its last checkpoint after startup. For coordinated Replicat, you can follow the administrative procedures in [Section 20.12, "Administering a Coordinated Replicat Configuration."](#). Once the recovery is complete, Replicat can be shut down gracefully with the STOP REPLICAT command, and then you can make the changes to the object specifications.

#### 14.7.5 Creating the Replicat Group

To create an online Replicat group, run GGSCI on the target system and issue the ADD REPLICAT command. Separate all command arguments with a comma.

```
ADD REPLICAT group, EXTTRAIL path
[, {INTEGRATED | COORDINATED [MAXTHREADS number] }]
[, BEGIN start_point | , EXTSEQNO seqno, EXTRBA rba]
[, CHECKPOINTTABLE owner.table]
[, NODBCHECKPOINT]
[, PARAMS path]
[, REPORT path]
```

Where:

- *group* is the name of the Replicat group. A group name is required. See [Section 14.2.1, "Naming Conventions for Processes"](#) for Oracle GoldenGate naming conventions.
- *EXTTRAIL path* is the relative or fully qualified name of the trail that you defined with the ADD RMTTRAIL command.
- INTEGRATED specified that this Replicat group will operate in integrated mode. This mode is available for Oracle databases. For more information about using Replicat in integrated mode, see *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database*.
- COORDINATED specifies that this Replicat group will operate in coordinated mode. MAXTHREADS specifies the maximum number of threads allowed for this group. Valid values are from 1 through 500. MAXTHREADS is optional. The default number of threads without MAXTHREADS is 25.

---

**Note:** Each Replicat thread is considered a Replicat group in the context of the MAXGROUPS parameter. MAXGROUPS controls the maximum number of process groups allowed in the Oracle GoldenGate instance. MAXTHREADS plus the number of other process groups in the Oracle GoldenGate instance must not exceed the value set with MAXGROUPS (default is 1000).

---

- BEGIN *start\_point* defines an online Replicat group by establishing an initial checkpoint and start point for processing. Use one of the following:

- NOW to begin replicating changes timestamped at the point when the ADD REPLICAT command is executed to create the group.
- YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM[:SS[.CCCCCC]] as the format for specifying an exact timestamp as the begin point.
- EXTSEQNO *seqno*, EXTRBA *rba* specifies the sequence number of the file in a trail in which to begin reading data and the relative byte address within that file. By default, processing begins at the beginning of a trail unless this option is used. For the sequence number, specify the number, but not any zeroes used for padding. For example, if the trail file is c:\ggs\dirrpt\aa000026, specify EXTSEQNO 26. Contact Oracle Support before using this option.
- CHECKPOINTTABLE *owner.table* specifies the owner and name of a checkpoint table other than the default specified in the GLOBALS file. To use this argument, you must add the checkpoint table to the database with the ADD CHECKPOINTTABLE command (see [Section 14.3, "Creating a Checkpoint Table"](#)).
- NODBCHECKPOINT specifies that this Replicat group will not use a checkpoint table.
- PARAMS *path* is required if the parameter file for this group will be stored in a location other than the dirprm sub-directory of the Oracle GoldenGate directory. Specify the fully qualified name. The default location is recommended.
- REPORT *path* is required if the process report for this group will be stored in a location other than the dirrpt sub-directory of the Oracle GoldenGate directory. Specify the fully qualified name. The default location is recommended.

**Example 14–12 Creating an Online Replicat Group**

This example creates an online Replicat group named finance and specifies a trail of c:\ggs\dirrpt\rt. The parameter file is stored in the alternate location of \ggs\params, and the report file is stored in its default location.

```
ADD REPLICAT finance, EXTTRAIL c:\ggs\dirrpt\rt, PARAMS \ggs\params
```

## 14.8 Creating a Parameter File for Online Replication

Follow these instructions to create a parameter file for an online Replicat group.

1. In GGSCI on the target system, issue the following command.

```
EDIT PARAMS name
```

Where:

*name* is either the name of the Replicat group that you created with the ADD REPLICAT command or the fully qualified name of the parameter file if you defined an alternate location when you created the group.

2. Enter the parameters listed in [Table 14–2](#) in the order shown, starting a new line for each parameter statement.

**Table 14–2** *Online Change-replication Parameters*

Parameter	Description
REPLICAT <i>group</i>	Configures Replicat as an online process with checkpoints.
■ <i>group</i> is the name of the Replicat group that you created with the ADD REPLICAT command.	
{SOURCEDEFS <i>path</i> }   ASSUMETARGETDEFS	Specifies how to interpret data definitions. For Oracle databases that use multi-byte character sets, you must use SOURCEDEFS (with a DEFGEN-generated definitions file) if the source semantics setting is in bytes and the target is in characters. This is required even when the source and target data definitions are identical. See <a href="#">Chapter 13, "Associating Replicated Data with Metadata,"</a> for more information.
■ Use SOURCEDEFS if the source and target tables have different definitions. Specify the source data-definitions file generated by DEFGEN. See <a href="#">Chapter 13, "Associating Replicated Data with Metadata,"</a> for more information.	
■ Use ASSUMETARGETDEFS if the source and target tables have the same definitions.	
[DEFERAPPLYINTERVAL <i>n unit</i> ]	Optional. Specifies an amount of time for Replicat to wait before applying its transactions to the target system.
■ <i>n</i> is a numeric value for the amount of time to delay before applying transactions. Minimum is set by the EOFDELAY parameter. Maximum is seven days.	
■ <i>unit</i> can be: S   SEC   SECS   SECOND   SECONDS   MIN   MINS   MINUTE   MINUTES   HOUR   HOURS   DAY   DAYS	
[TARGETDB <i>dsn</i>   <i>container</i>   <i>catalog</i> ] , USERIDALIAS <i>alias options</i>   , USERID <i>user, options</i>	Specifies database connection information. TARGETDB specifies the target datasource name (DSN) or SQL/MX catalog. See <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i> for more information. USERID and USERIDALIAS specify database credentials if required. See <a href="#">Chapter 11, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security"</a> for more information about security options.
HANDLECOLLISIONS	Specifies collision handling. Use only if you are performing an initial load concurrently with starting online processing and the source database will remain active during the load. HANDLECOLLISIONS resolves the results of the copy with the ongoing replicated transactional changes. It resolves insert operations for which the row already exists and update and delete operations for which the row does not exist. It can be used globally for all MAP statements in a parameter file or within a MAP statement, or both.

**Table 14–2 (Cont.) Online Change-replication Parameters**

Parameter	Description
SOURCECATALOG	Specifies a default container in a source Oracle multitenant container database or a source SQL/MX catalog for subsequent MAP statements. Enables the use of two-part names ( <i>schema.object</i> ) where three-part names otherwise would be required for those databases. You can use multiple instances of this parameter to specify different default containers or catalogs for different sets of MAP parameters.
MAP [container.   catalog.]owner.object, TARGET owner.object[, DEF template] [THREAD (thread_ID)] [THREADRANGE (thread_range[, column_list])] [COORDINATED] ;	Specifies a relationship between a source object or objects and a target object or objects. MAP specifies the source object, and TARGET specifies the target object.  For the source object, specify the fully qualified name of the object or a fully qualified wildcarded specification for multiple objects. For an Oracle multitenant container database or a SQL/MX database, the source object name must include the name of the container or catalog unless SOURCECATALOG is used.  For the target object, specify only the <i>owner.object</i> components of the name, regardless of the type of database. Replicat can only connect to one Oracle container or SQL/MX catalog. Use a separate Replicat process for each container or catalog to which you want to apply data.  See <a href="#">Section 4.5, "Specifying Object Names in Oracle GoldenGate Input"</a> for guidelines for specifying object names in parameter files.
CATALOGEXCLUDE SCHEMAEXCLUDE MAPEXCLUDE EXCLUDEWILDCARDOBJECTSONLY	The THREAD, THREADRANGE, and COORDINATED options are valid for Replicat when in coordinated mode. They enable you to partition the workload to one or more specific Replicat threads. See <a href="#">Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</a> for syntax and usage.  The DEF option specifies a definitions template. See <a href="#">Section 13, "Associating Replicated Data with Metadata"</a> for more information about data definitions. See <a href="#">Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</a> for more information and options for the MAP parameter.
	Parameters that can be used in conjunction with one another to exclude specific source objects from a wildcard specification in the associated MAP statement. See <a href="#">Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</a> for details.

1. Enter any appropriate optional Replicat parameters listed in [Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX](#).
2. Save and close the file.

---

**Note:** If using integrated Replicat for Oracle, see [Section 14.7.4, "Understanding Replicat Processing in Relation to Parameter Changes"](#) for important information about making configuration changes to Replicat once processing is started.

---



# 15

---

## Handling Processing Errors

This chapter describes how to configure the Oracle GoldenGate processes to handle errors.

Oracle GoldenGate reports processing errors in several ways by means of its monitoring and reporting tools. For more information about these tools, see [Chapter 18, "Monitoring Oracle GoldenGate Processing."](#)

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Overview of Oracle GoldenGate Error Handling](#)
- [Handling Extract Errors](#)
- [Handling Replicat Errors during DML Operations](#)
- [Handling Replicat errors during DDL Operations](#)
- [Handling TCP/IP Errors](#)
- [Maintaining Updated Error Messages](#)
- [Resolving Oracle GoldenGate Errors](#)

### 15.1 Overview of Oracle GoldenGate Error Handling

Oracle GoldenGate provides error-handling options for:

- Extract
- Replicat
- TCP/IP

### 15.2 Handling Extract Errors

There is no specific parameter to handle Extract errors when DML operations are being extracted, but Extract does provide a number of parameters that can be used to prevent anticipated problems. These parameters handle anomalies that can occur during the processing of DML operations, such as what to do when a row to be fetched cannot be located, or what to do when the transaction log is not available. The following is a partial list of these parameters.

- FETCHOPTIONS
- WARNLONGTRANS
- DBOPTIONS
- TRANLOGOPTIONS

To handle extraction errors that relate to DDL operations, use the `DDLERROR` parameter.

For a complete parameter list, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 15.3 Handling Replicat Errors during DML Operations

To control the way that Replicat responds to an error during one of its DML statements, use the REPERROR parameter in the Replicat parameter file. You can use REPERROR as a global parameter or as part of a MAP statement. You can handle most errors in a default fashion (for example, to cease processing) with DEFAULT and DEFAULT2 options, and also handle other errors in a specific manner.

The following comprise the range of REPERROR responses:

- ABEND: roll back the transaction and stop processing.
- DISCARD: log the error to the discard file and continue processing.
- EXCEPTION: send the error for exceptions processing. See [Section 15.3.1, "Handling Errors as Exceptions"](#) for more information.
- IGNORE: ignore the error and continue processing.
- RETRYOP [MAXRETRIES *n*]: retry the operation, optionally up to a specific number of times.
- TRANSABORT [, MAXRETRIES *n*] [, DELAY[C]SECS *n*]: abort the transaction and reposition to the beginning, optionally up to a specific number of times at specific intervals.
- RESET: remove all previous REPERROR rules and restore the default of ABEND.
- TRANSDISCARD: discard the entire replicated source transaction if any operation within that transaction, including the commit, causes a Replicat error that is listed in the error specification. This option is useful when integrity constraint checking is disabled on the target.
- TRANSEXCEPTION: perform exceptions mapping for every record in the replicated source transaction, according to its exceptions-mapping statement, if any operation within that transaction (including the commit) causes a Replicat error that is listed in the error specification.

Most options operate on the individual record that generated an error, and Replicat processes the other, successful operations in the transaction. The exceptions are TRANSDISCARD and TRANSEXCEPTION: These options affect all records in a transaction if any record in that transaction generates an error. (The ABEND option also applies to the entire transaction, but does not apply error handling.)

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for REPERROR syntax and usage.

### 15.3.1 Handling Errors as Exceptions

When the action of REPERROR is EXCEPTION or TRANSEXCEPTION, you can map the values of operations that generate errors to an exceptions table and, optionally, map other information about the error that can be used to resolve the error. See [Section 15.3.1.3, "About the Exceptions Table"](#).

To map the exceptions to the exceptions table, use either of the following options of the MAP parameter:

- MAP with EXCEPTIONSONLY

- MAP with MAPEXCEPTION

### 15.3.1.1 Using EXCEPTIONSONLY

EXCEPTIONSONLY is valid for one pair of source and target tables that are explicitly named and mapped one-to-one in a MAP statement; that is, there cannot be wildcards. To use EXCEPTIONSONLY, create two MAP statements for each source table that you want to use EXCEPTIONSONLY for on the target:

- The first, a standard MAP statement, maps the source table to the actual target table.
- The second, an *exceptions MAP statement*, maps the source table to the *exceptions table* (instead of to the target table). An exceptions MAP statement executes immediately after an error on the source table to send the row values to the exceptions table.

To identify a MAP statement as an exceptions MAP statement, use the INSERTALLRECORDS and EXCEPTIONSONLY options. The exceptions MAP statement must immediately follow the regular MAP statement that contains the same source table. Use a COLMAP clause in the exceptions MAP statement if the source and exceptions-table columns are not identical, or if you want to map additional information to extra columns in the exceptions table, such as information that is captured by means of column-conversion functions or SQLEXEC.

For more information about these parameters, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

#### **Example 15–1 EXCEPTIONSONLY**

This example shows how to use REPERROR with EXCEPTIONSONLY and an exceptions MAP statement. This example only shows the parameters that relate to REPERROR; other parameters not related to error handling are also required for Replicat.

```
REPERROR (DEFAULT, EXCEPTION)
MAP ggs.equip_account, TARGET ggs.equip_account2,
COLMAP (USEDEFAULTS);
MAP ggs.equip_account, TARGET ggs.equip_account_exception,
EXCEPTIONSONLY,
INSERTALLRECORDS
COLMAP (USEDEFAULTS,
DML_DATE = @DATENOW (),
OPTYPE = @GETENV ('LASTERR', 'OPTYPE'),
DBERRNUM = @GETENV ('LASTERR', 'DBERRNUM'),
DBERRMSG = @GETENV ('LASTERR', 'DBERRMSG'));
```

In this example, the REPERROR parameter is set for DEFAULT error handling, and the EXCEPTION option causes the Replicat process to treat failed operations as exceptions and continue processing.

There are two MAP statements:

- A regular MAP statement that maps the source table ggs.equip\_account to its target table equip\_account2.
- An exceptions MAP statement that maps the same source table to the exceptions table ggs.equip\_account\_exception.

In this case, four extra columns were created, in addition to the same columns that the table itself contains:

```
DML_DATE
OPTYPE
```

```
DBERRNUM
DBERRMSG
```

To populate the `DML_DATE` column, the `@DATENOW` column-conversion function is used to get the date and time of the failed operation, and the result is mapped to the column. To populate the other extra columns, the `@GETENV` function is used to return the operation type, database error number, and database error message.

The `EXCEPTIONSONLY` option of the exceptions MAP statement causes the statement to execute only after a failed operation on the source table. It prevents every operation from being logged to the exceptions table.

The `INSERTALLRECORDS` parameter causes all failed operations for the specified source table, no matter what the operation type, to be logged to the exceptions table as *inserts*.

---

**Note:** There can be no primary key or unique index restrictions on the exception table. Uniqueness violations are possible in this scenario and would generate errors.

---

### 15.3.1.2 Using MAPEXCEPTION

`MAPEXCEPTION` is valid when the names of the source and target tables in the `MAP` statement are wildcarded. Place the `MAPEXCEPTION` clause in the regular `MAP` statement, the same one where you map the source tables to the target tables. Replicat maps all operations that generate errors from all of the wildcarded tables to the same exceptions table; therefore, the exceptions table should contain a superset of all of the columns in all of the wildcarded tables.

Because you cannot individually map columns in a wildcard configuration, use the `COLMAP` clause with the `USEDEFAULTS` option to handle the column mapping for the wildcarded tables (or use the `COLMATCH` parameter if appropriate), and use explicit column mappings to map any additional information, such as that captured with column-conversion functions or `SQLEXEC`.

When using `MAPEXCEPTION`, include the `INSERTALLRECORDS` parameter in the `MAPEXCEPTION` clause. `INSERTALLRECORDS` causes all operation types to be applied to the exceptions table as `INSERT` operations. This is required to keep an accurate record of the exceptions and to prevent integrity errors on the exceptions table.

For more information about these parameters, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

#### Example 15–2 MAPEXCEPTION

This is an example of how to use `MAPEXCEPTION` for exceptions mapping. The `MAP` and `TARGET` clauses contain wildcarded source and target table names. Exceptions that occur when processing any table with a name beginning with `TRX` are captured to the `fin trxexceptions` table using the designated mapping.

```
MAP src.trx*, TARGET trg.*,
MAPEXCEPTION (TARGET fin trxexceptions,
               INSERTALLRECORDS,
               COLMAP (USEDEFAULTS,
                       ACCT_NO = ACCT_NO,
                       OPTYPE = @GETENV ('LASTERR', 'OPTYPE'),
                       DBERR = @GETENV ('LASTERR', 'DBERRNUM'),
                       DBERRMSG = @GETENV ('LASTERR', 'DBERRMSG')
                      )
                  );
```

### 15.3.1.3 About the Exceptions Table

Use an exceptions table to capture information about an error that can be used for such purposes as troubleshooting your applications or configuring them to handle the error. At minimum, an exceptions table should contain enough columns to receive the entire row image from the failed operation. You can define extra columns to contain other information that is captured by means of column-conversion functions, SQLEXEC, or other external means.

To ensure that the trail record contains values for all of the columns that you map to the exceptions table, you can use either the LOGALLSUPCOLS parameter or the following parameters in the Extract parameter file:

- Use the NOCOMPRESSDELETES parameter so that all columns of a row are written to the trail for DELETE operations.
- Use the GETUPDATEBEFRES parameter so that Extract captures the before image of a row and writes them to the trail.

For more information about these parameters, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 15.4 Handling Replicat errors during DDL Operations

To control the way that Replicat responds to an error that occurs for a DDL operation on the target, use the DDLERROR parameter in the Replicat parameter file. For more information, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 15.5 Handling TCP/IP Errors

To provide instructions for responding to TCP/IP errors, use the TCPERRS file. This file is in the Oracle GoldenGate directory

#### **Example 15–3 TCPERRS File**

```
# TCP/IP error handling parameters
# Default error response is abend
#
# Error          Response    Delay(csecs)  Max Retries

ECONNABORTED    RETRY      1000          10
ECONNREFUSED    RETRY      1000          12
ECONNRESET      RETRY      500           10
ENETDOWN        RETRY      3000          50
ENETRESET       RETRY      1000          10
ENOBUFS         RETRY      100           60
ENOTCONN        RETRY      100           10
EPIPE           RETRY      500           10
ESHUTDOWN       RETRY      1000          10
ETIMEDOUT       RETRY      1000          10
NODYNPORTS      RETRY      100           10
```

The TCPERRS file contains default responses to basic errors. To alter the instructions or add instructions for new errors, open the file in a text editor and change any of the values in the columns shown in [Table 15–1](#):

**Table 15–1 TCPERRS Columns**

Column	Description
Error	Specifies a TCP/IP error for which you are defining a response.
Response	Controls whether or not Oracle GoldenGate tries to connect again after the defined error. Valid values are either RETRY or ABEND.
Delay	Controls how long Oracle GoldenGate waits before attempting to connect again.
Max Retries	Controls the number of times that Oracle GoldenGate attempts to connect again before aborting.

If a response is not explicitly defined in the TCPERRS file, Oracle GoldenGate responds to TCP/IP errors by abending.

## 15.6 Maintaining Updated Error Messages

The error, information, and warning messages that Oracle GoldenGate processes generate are stored in a data file named `gmessage.dat` in the Oracle GoldenGate installation directory. The version of this file is checked upon process startup and must be identical to that of the process in order for the process to operate.

## 15.7 Resolving Oracle GoldenGate Errors

To get help with specific troubleshooting issues, go to My Oracle Support at <http://support.oracle.com> and search the Knowledge Base.

---

## Instantiating Oracle GoldenGate with an Initial Load

This chapter describes running an initial data load to instantiate the replication environment.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Overview of the Initial-Load Procedure](#)
- [Loading Data with a Database Utility](#)
- [Loading data with Oracle Data Pump](#)
- [Loading Data from File to Replicat](#)
- [Loading Data from File to Database Utility](#)
- [Loading Data with an Oracle GoldenGate Direct Load](#)
- [Loading Data with a Direct Bulk Load to SQL\\*Loader](#)
- [Loading Data with Teradata Load Utilities](#)

### 16.1 Overview of the Initial-Load Procedure

You can use Oracle GoldenGate to:

- Perform a standalone batch load to populate database tables for migration or other purposes.
- Load data into database tables as part of an initial synchronization run in preparation for change synchronization with Oracle GoldenGate.

#### 16.1.1 Improving the Performance of an Initial Load

For all initial load methods except those performed with a database utility, you can load large databases more quickly by using parallel Oracle GoldenGate processes. To use parallel processing, take the following steps.

1. Follow the directions in this chapter for creating an initial-load Extract and an initial-load Replicat for each set of parallel processes that you want to use.
2. With the `TABLE` and `MAP` parameters, specify a different set of tables for each pair of Extract-Replicat processes, or you can use the `SQLPREDICATE` option of `TABLE` to partition the rows of large tables among the different Extract processes.

For all initial load methods, testing has shown that using the `TCPBUFSIZE` option in the `RMTHOST` parameter produced three times faster throughput than loads performed without it. Do not use this parameter if the target system is NonStop.

## 16.1.2 Prerequisites for Initial Load

Verify that you meet the following prerequisites for executing an initial load.

### 16.1.2.1 Disable DDL Processing

Before executing an initial load, disable DDL extraction and replication. DDL processing is controlled by the `DDL` parameter in the Extract and Replicat parameter files.

### 16.1.2.2 Prepare the Target Tables

The following are suggestions that can make the load go faster and help you to avoid errors.

- **Data:** Make certain that the target tables are empty. Otherwise, there may be duplicate-row errors or conflicts between existing rows and rows that are being loaded.
- **Constraints:** Disable foreign-key constraints and check constraints. Foreign-key constraints can cause errors, and check constraints can slow down the loading process. Constraints can be reactivated after the load concludes successfully.
- **Indexes:** Remove indexes from the target tables. Indexes are not necessary for inserts. They will slow down the loading process significantly. For each row that is inserted into a table, the database will update every index on that table. You can add back the indexes after the load is finished.

---

**Note:** A primary index is required for all applications that access DB2 for z/OS target tables. You can delete all other indexes from the target tables, except for the primary index.

---

- **Keys:** For Oracle GoldenGate to reconcile the replicated incremental data changes with the results of the load, each target table must have a primary or unique key. If you cannot create a key through your application, use the `KEYCOLS` option of the `TABLE` and `MAP` parameters to specify columns as a substitute key for Oracle GoldenGate's purposes. A key helps identify which row to process. If you cannot create keys, the source database must be quiesced for the load.

### 16.1.2.3 Configure the Manager Process

On the source and target systems, configure and start a Manager process. One Manager can be used for the initial-load processes and the change-synchronization processes. See [Chapter 3, "Configuring Manager and Network Communications"](#) for more information.

### 16.1.2.4 Create a Data-definitions File

A data-definitions file is required if the source and target databases have dissimilar definitions. Oracle GoldenGate uses this file to convert the data to the format required by the target database. See [Chapter 13, "Associating Replicated Data with Metadata"](#) for more information.

### 16.1.2.5 Create Change-synchronization Groups

To prepare for the capture and replication of transactional changes during the initial load, create online Extract and Replicat groups. You will start these groups during the load procedure. See [Section 14, "Configuring Online Change Synchronization"](#) for

more information.

---

**Note:** If the load is performed from a quiet source database and *will not* be followed by continuous change synchronization, you can omit these groups.

---

Do not start the Extract or Replicat groups until instructed to do so in the initial-load instructions. Change synchronization keeps track of transactional changes while the load is being applied, and then the target tables are reconciled with those changes.

---

**Note:** The first time that Extract starts in a new Oracle GoldenGate configuration, any open transactions will be skipped. Only transactions that begin after Extract starts are captured.

---

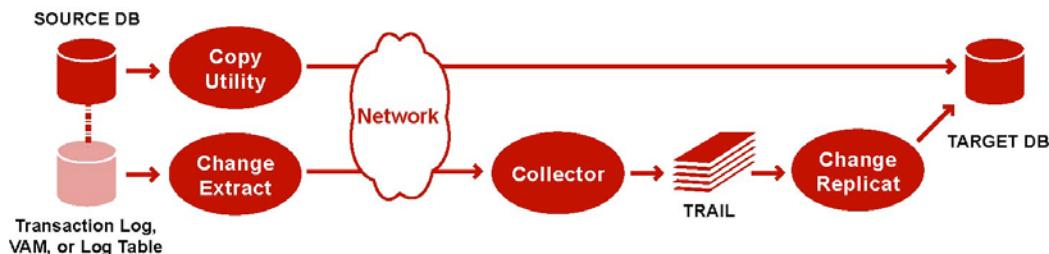
#### 16.1.2.6 Sharing Parameters between Process Groups

Some of the parameters that you use in a change-synchronization parameter file also are required in an initial-load Extract and initial-load Replicat parameter file. You can copy those parameters from one parameter file to another, or you can store them in a central file and use the OBEPY parameter in each parameter file to retrieve them. Alternatively, you can create an Oracle GoldenGate macro for the shared parameters and then call the macro from each parameter file with the MACRO parameter.

See [Chapter 4, "Getting Started with the Oracle GoldenGate Process Interfaces"](#) for more information about using OBEPY and using macros.

## 16.2 Loading Data with a Database Utility

To use a database copy utility to establish the target data, you start a change-synchronization Extract group to extract ongoing data changes while the database utility makes and applies a static copy of the data. When the copy is finished, you start the change-synchronization Replicat group to re-synchronize rows that were changed while the copy was being applied. From that point forward, both Extract and Replicat continue running to maintain data synchronization. This method does not involve any special initial-load Extract or Replicat processes.



This graphic shows loading data with a database utility.

---

**Note:** The objects and data types being loaded in this method must be supported by Oracle GoldenGate for your database and also by the database utility that is being used. For items that are supported for your database, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and configuration documentation for that database. For items that are supported by the database utility, see the database vendor's documentation.

---

1. Make certain that you have addressed the requirements in [Section 16.1.2, "Prerequisites for Initial Load."](#)
2. On the source and target systems, run GGSCI and start the Manager process.

START MANAGER

---

**Note:** In a Windows cluster, start the Manager resource from the Cluster Administrator.

---

3. On the source system, start change extraction.

START EXTRACT *group*

Where:

*group* is the name of the Extract group.

4. (Oracle, if replicating sequences) Issue the DBLOGIN command as the user who has EXECUTE privilege on update.Sequence.

GGSCI> DBLOGIN USERID DBLOGINuser, PASSWORD password [*encryption\_options*]

5. (Oracle, if replicating sequences) Issue the following command to update each source sequence and generate redo. From the redo, Replicat performs initial synchronization of the sequences on the target. You can use an asterisk wildcard for any or all characters in the name of a sequence (but not the owner).

FLUSH SEQUENCE *owner.sequence*

6. On the source system, start making the copy.
7. Wait until the copy is finished and record the time of completion.
8. View the Replicat parameter file to make certain that the HANDLECOLLISIONS parameter is listed. If not, add the parameter to the file.

---

**Caution:** Do not use the VIEW PARAMS or EDIT PARAMS command to view or edit an existing parameter file that is in a character set other than that of the local operating system (such as one where the CHARSET option was used to specify a different character set). View the parameter file from outside GGSCI if this is the case; otherwise, the contents may become corrupted..

---

9. On the target system, start change replication.

START REPLICAT *group*

Where:

*group* is the name of the Replicat group.

10. On the target system, issue the following command to verify the status of change replication.

```
INFO REPLICAT group
```

11. Continue to issue the `INFO REPLICAT` command until you have verified that change replication has posted all of the change data that was generated during the initial load. Reference the time of completion that you recorded. For example, if the copy stopped at 12:05, make sure change replication has posted data up to that point.
12. On the target system, issue the following command to turn off the `HANDLECOLLISIONS` parameter and disable the initial-load error handling.

```
SEND REPLICAT group, NOHANDLECOLLISIONS
```

13. On the target system, edit the Replicat parameter file to remove the `HANDLECOLLISIONS` parameter. This prevents `HANDLECOLLISIONS` from being enabled again the next time Replicat starts.

---

**Caution:** Do not use the `VIEW PARAMS` or `EDIT PARAMS` command to view or edit an existing parameter file that is in a character set other than that of the local operating system (such as one where the `CHARSET` option was used to specify a different character set). View the parameter file from outside GGSCI if this is the case; otherwise, the contents may become corrupted.

---

14. Save and close the parameter file.

From this point forward, Oracle GoldenGate continues to synchronize data changes.

## 16.3 Loading data with Oracle Data Pump

This method uses the Oracle Data Pump utility to establish the target data. After you apply the copy to the target, you record the SCN at which the copy stopped. You then start Extract, data pumps, and Replicat at the specified SCN. Transactions that were included in the copy are skipped to avoid collisions from integrity violations. From the process start point, Oracle GoldenGate maintains data synchronization. No initial-load Oracle GoldenGate processes are required for this method.

To perform instantiation with Oracle Data Pump, see My Oracle Support document 1276058.1. To obtain this document, do the following:

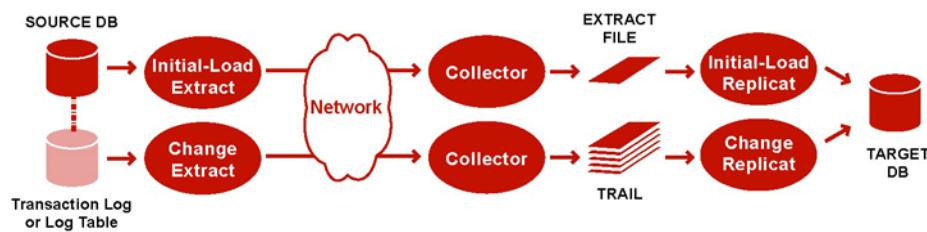
1. Go to <http://support.oracle.com>.
2. Under Sign In, select your language and then log in with your Oracle Single Sign-On (SSO).
3. On the Dashboard, expand the Knowledge Base heading.
4. Under Enter Search Terms, paste or type the document ID of 1276058.1 and then click **Search**.
5. In the search results, select **Oracle GoldenGate Best Practices: Instantiation from an Oracle Source Database [Article ID 1276058.1]**.

6. Click the link under Attachments to open the article.

## 16.4 Loading Data from File to Replicat

To use Replicat to establish the target data, you use an initial-load Extract to extract source records from the source tables and write them to an extract file in canonical format. From the file, an initial-load Replicat loads the data using the database interface. During the load, the change-synchronization groups extract and replicate incremental changes, which are then reconciled with the results of the load.

During the load, the records are applied to the target database one record at a time, so this method is considerably slower than any of the other initial load methods. This method permits data transformation to be done on either the source or target system.



This graphic shows loading data from file to Replicat.

---

### To load data from file to Replicat

1. Make certain that you have addressed the requirements in [Section 16.1.2, "Prerequisites for Initial Load."](#)
2. On the source and target systems, run GGSCI and start Manager.

START MANAGER

---

**Note:** In a Windows cluster, start the Manager resource from the Cluster Administrator.

---

3. On the source system, issue the following command to create an initial-load Extract parameter file.

EDIT PARAMS *initial-load\_Extract*

4. Enter the parameters listed in [Table 16-1](#) in the order shown, starting a new line for each parameter statement. The following is a sample initial-load Extract parameter file for loading data from file to Replicat.

```

SOURCEISTABLE
SOURCEDB mydb, USERIDALIAS ogg
RMTHOSTOPTIONS ny4387, MGRPORT 7888, ENCRYPT AES 192 KEYNAME mykey
ENCRYPTIONTRAIL AES192
RMTFILE /ggs/dirdat/initld, MEGABYTES 2, PURGE
TABLE hr.*;
TABLE sales.*;
  
```

**Table 16–1 Initial-load Extract Parameters**

Parameter	Description
SOURCEISTABLE	Designates Extract as an initial load process extracting records directly from the source tables.
[SOURCEDB <i>dsn   catalog</i> [, USERIDALIAS <i>alias, options</i>   , USERID <i>user, options</i> ]	Specifies database connection information. SOURCEDB specifies the source data source name (DSN) or SQL/MX catalog. See <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i> for more information. USERID and USERIDALIAS specify database credentials if required. See <a href="#">Chapter 11, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security"</a> for more information about security options.
RMTHOSTOPTIONS <i>hostname, MGRPORT portnumber</i> [, ENCRYPT <i>algorithm KEYNAME keyname</i> ]	Specifies the target system, the port where Manager is running, and optional encryption of data across TCP/IP.
ENCRYPTTRAIL <i>algorithm</i>	Encrypts the data in the remote file. See <a href="#">Chapter 11, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security"</a> for more information about security options.
RMTFILE <i>path, [MAXFILES number, MEGABYTES n]</i>	Specifies the extract file to which the load data will be written. Oracle GoldenGate creates this file during the load. Checkpoints are not maintained with RMTFILE.  ■ <i>path</i> is the relative or fully qualified name of the file. ■ MAXFILES creates a series of files that are aged as needed. Use if the file could exceed the operating system's file size limitations. ■ MEGABYTES designates the size of each file.
TABLE [ <i>container.   catalog.</i> ]owner. <i>object</i> ;	Specifies the fully qualified name of an object or a fully qualified wildcarded specification for multiple objects. If the database is an Oracle multitenant container database or a SQL/MX database, the object name must include the name of the container or catalog unless SOURCECATALOG is used.  See <a href="#">Section 4.5, "Specifying Object Names in Oracle GoldenGate Input"</a> for guidelines for specifying object names in parameter files.
CATALOGEXCLUDE SCHEMAEXCLUDE TABLEEXCLUDE EXCLUDEWILDCARDOBJECTSONLY	Parameters that can be used in conjunction with one another to exclude specific objects from a wildcard specification in the associated TABLE statement. See <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i> for details.

5. Enter any appropriate optional Extract parameters listed in the *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

6. Save and close the parameter file.

7. On the target system, issue the following command to create an initial-load Replicat parameter file.

```
EDIT PARAMS initial-load_Replicat
```

8. Enter the parameters listed in [Table 16–2](#) in the order shown, starting a new line for each parameter statement. The following is a sample initial-load Replicat parameter file for loading data from file to Replicat.

```

SPECIALRUN
END RUNTIME
TARGETDB mydb, USERIDALIAS ogg
EXTFILE /ggs/dirdat/initld
SOURCEDEFS /ggs/dirdef/source_defs
MAP hr.* , TARGET hr.*;
MAP sales.* , TARGET hr.*;

```

**Table 16–2 Initial-load Replicat parameters**

Parameter	Description
SPECIALRUN	Implements the initial-load Replicat as a one-time run that does not use checkpoints.
END RUNTIME	Directs the initial-load Replicat to terminate when the load is finished.
[TARGETDB <i>dsn   catalog</i> [, USERIDALIAS <i>alias, options</i>   , USERID <i>user, options</i> ]	Specifies database connection information. TARGETDB specifies the target datasource name (DSN) or SQL/MX catalog. See <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i> for more information. USERID and USERIDALIAS specify database credentials if required. See <a href="#">Chapter 11, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security"</a> for more information about security options.
EXTFILE <i>path</i> ■ <i>path</i> is the relative or fully qualified name of the file.	Specifies the input extract file specified with the Extract parameter RMTFILE.
{SOURCEDEFS <i>file</i> }   ASSUMETARGETDEFS ■ Use SOURCEDEFS if the source and target tables have different definitions. Specify the relative or fully qualified name of the source-definitions file generated by DEFGEN. ■ Use ASSUMETARGETDEFS if the source and target tables have the same definitions.	Specifies how to interpret data definitions. For more information about data definitions files, see <a href="#">Chapter 13, "Associating Replicated Data with Metadata."</a>

**Table 16–2 (Cont.) Initial-load Replicat parameters**

Parameter	Description
SOURCECATALOG	Specifies a default source Oracle container or source SQL/MX catalog for subsequent MAP statements. Enables the use of two-part names ( <i>schema.object</i> ) where three-part names otherwise would be required for those databases. You can use multiple instances of this parameter to specify different default containers or catalogs for different sets of MAP parameters.
MAP [container.   catalog.]owner.object, TARGET owner.object[, DEF template] ;	Specifies a relationship between a source object or objects and a target object or objects. MAP specifies the source object, and TARGET specifies the target object.  For the source object, specify the fully qualified name of the object or a fully qualified wildcarded specification for multiple objects. For an Oracle multitenant container database or a SQL/MX database, the source object name must include the name of the container or catalog unless SOURCECATALOG is used.  For the target object, specify only the <i>owner.object</i> components of the name, regardless of the database. Replicat can only connect to one Oracle container or SQL/MX catalog. Use a separate Replicat process for each container or catalog to which you want to load data.  See <a href="#">Section 4.5, "Specifying Object Names in Oracle GoldenGate Input"</a> for guidelines for specifying object names in parameter files.
CATALOGEXCLUDE SCHEMAEXCLUDE MAPEXCLUDE EXCLUDEWILDCARDOBJECTSONLY	The DEF option specifies a definitions template. For more information about data definitions, see <a href="#">Section 13, "Associating Replicated Data with Metadata"</a> . See <a href="#">Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</a> for more information and options for the MAP parameter.  Parameters that can be used in conjunction with one another to exclude specific source objects from a wildcard specification in the associated MAP statement. See <a href="#">Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</a> for details.

9. Enter any appropriate optional Replicat parameters listed in the [Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX](#).
10. Save and close the file.
11. View the Replicat parameter file to make certain that the HANDLECOLLISIONS parameter is listed. If not, add the parameter to the file.
12. On the source system, start change extraction.

START EXTRACT *group*

13. (Oracle, if replicating sequences) Issue the DBLOGIN command as the user who has EXECUTE privilege on *update.Sequence*.

GGSCI> DBLOGIN USERID *DBLOGINUser*, PASSWORD *password* [*encryption\_options*]

14. (Oracle, if replicating sequences) Issue the following command to update each source sequence and generate redo. From the redo, Replicat performs initial

synchronization of the sequences on the target. You can use an asterisk wildcard for any or all characters in the name of a sequence (but not the owner).

```
FLUSH SEQUENCE owner.sequence
```

15. From the directory where Oracle GoldenGate is installed on the source system, start the initial-load Extract.

UNIX and Linux:

```
$ /GGS directory/extract paramfile dirprm/initial-load_Extract.prm reportfile path
```

Windows:

```
C:\> GGS directory\extract paramfile dirprm\initial-load_Extract.prm reportfile path
```

Where:

*initial-load\_Extract* is the name of the initial-load Extract that you used when creating the parameter file, and *path* is the relative or fully qualified name of the Extract report file.

16. Verify the progress and results of the initial extraction by viewing the Extract report file using the operating system's standard method for viewing files.
17. Wait until the initial extraction is finished.
18. On the target system, start the initial-load Replicat.

UNIX and Linux:

```
$ /GGS directory/replicat paramfile dirprm/initial-load_Replicat.prm reportfile path
```

Windows:

```
C:\> GGS directory\replicat paramfile dirprm\initial-load_Replicat.prm reportfile path
```

Where:

*initial-load\_Replicat* is the name of the initial-load Replicat that you used when creating the parameter file, and *path* is the relative or fully qualified name of the Replicat report file.

19. When the initial-load Replicat is finished running, verify the results by viewing the Replicat report file using the operating system's standard method for viewing files.
20. On the target system, start change replication.

```
START REPLICAT group
```

21. On the target system, issue the following command to verify the status of change replication.

```
INFO REPLICAT group
```

22. Continue to issue the INFO REPLICAT command until you have verified that Replicat posted all of the change data that was generated during the initial load. For example, if the initial-load Extract stopped at 12:05, make sure Replicat posted data up to that point.

23. On the target system, issue the following command to turn off the HANDLECOLLISIONS parameter and disable the initial-load error handling.

```
SEND REPLICAT group, NOHANDLECOLLISIONS
```

24. On the target system, edit the Replicat parameter file to remove the HANDLECOLLISIONS parameter. This prevents HANDLECOLLISIONS from being enabled again the next time Replicat starts.

---

**Caution:** Do not use the VIEW PARAMS or EDIT PARAMS command to view or edit an existing parameter file that is in a character set other than that of the local operating system (such as one where the CHARSET option was used to specify a different character set). View the parameter file from outside GGSCI if this is the case; otherwise, the contents may become corrupted.

---

25. Save and close the parameter file.

From this point forward, Oracle GoldenGate continues to synchronize data changes.

## 16.5 Loading Data from File to Database Utility

To use a database bulk-load utility, you use an initial-load Extract to extract source records from the source tables and write them to an extract file in external ASCII format. The file can be read by Oracle's SQL\*Loader, Microsoft's BCP, DTS, or SQL Server Integration Services (SSIS) utility, or IBM's Load Utility (LOADUTIL).

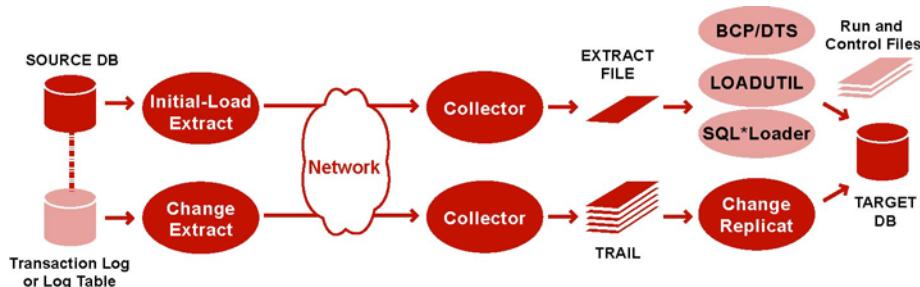
---

**Note:** The objects and data types being loaded in this method must be supported by Oracle GoldenGate for your database and also by the database utility that is being used. For items that are supported for your database, see the Oracle GoldenGate installation and configuration documentation for that database. For items that are supported by the database utility, see the database vendor's documentation.

---

During the load, the change-synchronization groups extract and replicate incremental changes, which are then reconciled with the results of the load. As part of the load procedure, Oracle GoldenGate uses the initial-load Replicat to create run and control files required by the database utility.

Any data transformation must be performed by the initial-load Extract on the source system because the control files are generated dynamically and cannot be pre-configured with transformation rules.



This graphic shows loading data from file to database utility.

---

### To load data from file to database utility

1. Make certain to satisfy "Prerequisites for Initial Load" on page 16-2.
2. On the source and target systems, run GGSCI and start Manager.

```
START MANAGER
```

3. On the source system, issue the following command to create an initial-load Extract parameter file.

```
EDIT PARAMS initial-load_Extract
```

4. Enter the parameters listed in [Table 16–3](#) in the order shown, starting a new line for each parameter statement. The following is a sample initial-load Extract parameter file for loading data from file to database utility.

```
SOURCEISTABLE
SOURCEDB mydb, USERIDALIAS ogg
RMTHOSTOPTIONS ny4387, MGRPORT 7888, ENCRYPT AES 192 KEYNAME mykey
ENCRYPTIONTRAIL AES192
FORMATASCII, SQLLOADER
RMTFILE /ggs/dirdat/initld, MEGABYTES 2, PURGE
TABLE hr.*;
TABLE sales.*;
```

**Table 16–3 Initial-load Extract Parameters**

Parameter	Description
SOURCEISTABLE	Designates Extract as an initial load process that extracts records directly from the source tables.
[SOURCEDB <i>dsn</i> ] [, USERIDALIAS <i>alias</i> , <i>options</i>   , USERID <i>user</i> , <i>options</i> ]	Specifies database connection information. SOURCEDB specifies the source datasource name (DSN). See <a href="#">Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</a> for more information. USERID and USERIDALIAS specify database credentials if required. See <a href="#">Chapter 11, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security"</a> for more information about security options.
RMTHOSTOPTIONS <i>hostname</i> , MGRPORT <i>portnumber</i> [, ENCRYPT <i>algorithm</i> KEYNAME <i>keyname</i> ] [, PARAMS - E -d <i>defs_file</i> ] ■ -E converts ASCII to EBCDIC. ■ -d <i>defs_file</i> specifies the source definitions file.	Specifies the target system, the port where Manager is running, and optional encryption of data across TCP/IP. The PARAMS clause is necessary when loading with IBM's Load Utility, because Oracle GoldenGate will need to refer to the source definitions file.
ENCRYPTIONTRAIL <i>algorithm</i>	Encrypts the data in the remote file. See <a href="#">Chapter 11, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security"</a> for more information about security options.
FORMATASCII, {BCP   SQLLOADER} ■ BCP is used for BCP, DTS, or SSIS. ■ SQLLOADER is used for Oracle SQL*Loader or IBM Load Utility.	Directs output to be formatted as ASCII text rather than the default canonical format. This parameter must be listed before RMTFILE. For information about limitations and options, see <a href="#">Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</a> .

**Table 16–3 (Cont.) Initial-load Extract Parameters**

Parameter	Description
RMTFILE <i>path</i> , [MAXFILES <i>number</i> , MEGABYTES <i>n</i> ]	Specifies the extract file to which the load data will be written. Oracle GoldenGate creates this file during the load. Checkpoints are not maintained with RMTFILE.
■ <i>path</i> is the relative or fully qualified name of the file	
■ MAXFILES creates a series of files that are aged as needed. Use if the file could exceed the operating system's file size limitations.	
■ MEGABYTES designates the size of each file, up to 2MB.	
TABLE [ <i>container</i> .] <i>owner</i> . <i>object</i> ;	Specifies the fully qualified name of an object or a fully qualified wildcarded specification for multiple objects. If the database is an Oracle multitenant container database, the object name must include the name of the container unless SOURCECATALOG is used. See <a href="#">Section 4.5, "Specifying Object Names in Oracle GoldenGate Input"</a> for guidelines for specifying object names in parameter files.
CATALOGEXCLUDE	Parameters that can be used in conjunction with one another to exclude specific objects from a wildcard specification in the associated TABLE statement. See <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i> for details.
SCHEMAEXCLUDE	
TABLEEXCLUDE	
EXCLUDEWILDCARDOBJECTSONLY	

5. Enter any appropriate optional Extract parameters listed in *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.
6. Save and close the parameter file.
7. On the target system, issue the following command to create an initial-load Replicat parameter file.

EDIT PARAMS *initial-load\_Replicat*

8. Enter the parameters listed in [Table 16–4](#) in the order shown, starting a new line for each parameter statement. The following is a sample initial-load Replicat parameter file for loading data from file to database utility.

```
GENLOADFILES sqldr.tpl
USERIDALIAS ogg
EXTFILE /ggs/dirdat/initld
SOURCEDEFS /ggs/dirdef/source_defs
MAP hr.* , TARGET hr.*;
MAP sales.* , TARGET hr.*;
```

**Table 16–4 Initial-load Replicat Parameters**

Parameter	Description
GENLOADFILES <i>template</i>	Generates run and control files for the database utility. For instructions on using this parameter, see <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i> .
[TARGETDB <i>dsn</i>   <i>container</i> ] [, USERIDALIAS <i>alias</i> , <i>options</i>   , USERID <i>user</i> , <i>options</i> ]	Specifies database connection information. TARGETDB specifies the target datasource name (DSN) or Oracle container. See <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i> for more information.
EXTFILE <i>path</i>   EXTTRAIL <i>path</i>	USERID and USERIDALIAS specify database credentials if required. See <a href="#">Chapter 11, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security"</a> for more information about security options.
■ <i>path</i> is the relative or fully qualified name of the file ■ Use EXTTRAIL only if you used the MAXFILES option of the RMTFILE parameter in the Extract parameter file.	Specifies the extract file specified with the Extract parameter RMTFILE.
{SOURCEDEFS <i>path</i> }   ASSUMETARGETDEFS	Specifies how to interpret data definitions. For more information about data definitions files, see <a href="#">Chapter 13, "Associating Replicated Data with Metadata."</a>
■ Use SOURCEDEFS if the source and target tables have different definitions. Specify the relative or fully qualified name of the source-definitions file generated by DEFGEN. ■ Use ASSUMETARGETDEFS if the source and target tables have the same definitions.	

**Table 16–4 (Cont.) Initial-load Replicat Parameters**

Parameter	Description
SOURCECATALOG	Specifies a default source Oracle container in a multitenant container database for subsequent MAP statements. Enables the use of two-part names ( <i>schema.object</i> ) where three-part names otherwise would be required. You can use multiple instances of this parameter to specify different default containers for different sets of MAP parameters.
MAP [container.]owner.object, TARGET owner.object[, DEF template] ;	Specifies a relationship between a source object or objects and a target object or objects. MAP specifies the source object, and TARGET specifies the target object.  For the source object, specify the fully qualified name of the object or a fully qualified wildcarded specification for multiple objects. For an Oracle multitenant container database, the source object name must include the name of the container unless SOURCECATALOG is used.  For the target object, specify only the <i>owner.object</i> components of the name, regardless of the database. Replicat can only connect to one Oracle container. Use a separate Replicat process for each container to which you want to load data.  See <a href="#">Section 4.5, "Specifying Object Names in Oracle GoldenGate Input"</a> for guidelines for specifying object names in parameter files.
	The DEF option specifies a definitions template. For more information about data definitions, see <a href="#">Section 13, "Associating Replicated Data with Metadata"</a> . See <a href="#">Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</a> for more information and options for the MAP parameter.
CATALOGEXCLUDE SCHEMAEXCLUDE MAPEXCLUDE EXCLUDEWILDCARDOBJECTSONLY	Parameters that can be used in conjunction with one another to exclude specific source objects from a wildcard specification in the associated MAP statement. See <a href="#">Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</a> for details.

9. Enter any appropriate optional Replicat parameters listed in [Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX](#).

10. Save and close the parameter file.

11. View the Replicat parameter file to make certain that the HANDLECOLLISIONS parameter is listed. If not, add the parameter to the file.

12. On the source system, start change extraction.

```
START EXTRACT group
```

13. (Oracle, if replicating sequences) Issue the DBLOGIN command as the user who has EXECUTE privilege on update.Sequence.

```
GGSCI> DBLOGIN USERID DBLOGINuser, PASSWORD password [encryption_options]
```

14. (Oracle, if replicating sequences) Issue the following command to update each source sequence and generate redo. From the redo, Replicat performs initial synchronization of the sequences on the target. You can use an asterisk wildcard for any or all characters in the name of a sequence (but not the owner).

```
FLUSH SEQUENCE owner.sequence
```

15. From the directory where Oracle GoldenGate is installed on the source system, start the initial-load Extract.

UNIX and Linux:

```
$ /GGS directory/extract paramfile dirprm/initial-load_Extract.prm reportfile path
```

Windows:

```
C:\> GGS directory\extract paramfile dirprm\initial-load_Extract.prm reportfile path
```

Where:

*initial-load\_Extract* is the name of the initial-load Extract that you used when creating the parameter file, and *path* is the relative or fully qualified name of the Extract report file.

16. Verify the progress and results of the initial extraction by viewing the Extract report file using the operating system's standard method for viewing files.
17. Wait until the initial extraction is finished.
18. On the target system, start the initial-load Replicat.

UNIX and Linux:

```
$ /GGS directory/replicat paramfile dirprm/initial-load_Replicat.prm reportfile path
```

Windows:

```
C:\> GGS directory\replicat paramfile dirprm\initial-load_Replicat.prm reportfile path
```

Where:

*initial-load\_Replicat* is the name of the initial-load Replicat that you used when creating the parameter file, and *path* is the relative or fully qualified name of the Replicat report file.

19. When the initial-load Replicat is finished running, verify the results by viewing the Replicat report file using the operating system's standard method for viewing files.
20. Using the ASCII-formatted extract files and the run and control files created by the initial-load Replicat, load the data with the database utility.
21. Wait until the load into the target tables is complete.
22. On the target system, start change replication.

```
START REPLICAT group
```

23. On the target system, issue the following command to verify the status of change replication.

```
INFO REPLICAT group
```

24. Continue to issue the INFO REPLICAT command until you have verified that Replicat posted all of the change data that was generated during the initial load. For example, if the initial-load Extract stopped at 12:05, make sure Replicat posted data up to that point.

25. On the target system, issue the following command to turn off the HANDLECOLLISIONS parameter and disable the initial-load error handling.

```
SEND REPLICAT group, NOHANDLECOLLISIONS
```

26. On the target system, edit the Replicat parameter file to remove the HANDLECOLLISIONS parameter. This prevents HANDLECOLLISIONS from being enabled again the next time Replicat starts.

---

**Caution:** Do not use the VIEW PARAMS or EDIT PARAMS command to view or edit an existing parameter file that is in a character set other than that of the local operating system (such as one where the CHARSET option was used to specify a different character set). View the parameter file from outside GGSCI if this is the case; otherwise, the contents may become corrupted..

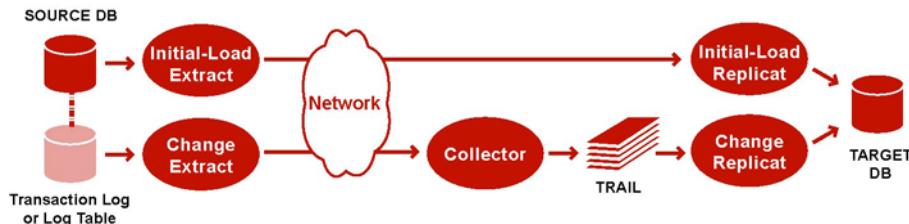
---

27. Save and close the parameter file.

From this point forward, Oracle GoldenGate continues to synchronize data changes.

## 16.6 Loading Data with an Oracle GoldenGate Direct Load

To use an Oracle GoldenGate direct load, you run an Oracle GoldenGate initial-load Extract to extract the source records and send them directly to an initial-load Replicat task. A task is started dynamically by the Manager process and does not require the use of a Collector process or file. The initial-load Replicat task delivers the load in large blocks to the target database. Transformation and mapping can be done by Extract, Replicat, or both. During the load, the change-synchronization groups extract and replicate incremental changes, which are then reconciled with the results of the load.



This graphic shows loading data with an Oracle GoldenGate direct load.

To control which port is used by Replicat, and to speed up the search and bind process, use the DYNAMICPORTLIST parameter in the Manager parameter file. Manager passes the list of port numbers that are specified with this parameter to the Replicat task process. Replicat first searches for a port from this list, and only if no ports are available from the list does Replicat begin scanning in ascending order from the default Manager port number until it finds an available port.

This method supports standard character, numeric, and datetime data types, as well as CLOB, NCLOB, BLOB, LONG, XML, and user-defined datatypes (UDT) embedded with the following attributes: CHAR, NCHAR, VARCHAR, NVARCHAR, RAW, NUMBER, DATE, FLOAT, TIMESTAMP, CLOB, BLOB, XML, and UDT. Character sets are converted between source and target where applicable.

This method supports Oracle internal tables, but does not convert between the source and target character sets during the load.

#### To load data with an Oracle GoldenGate direct load

1. Make certain to satisfy "Prerequisites for Initial Load" on page 16-2.
2. On the source and target systems, run GGSCI and start Manager.

```
START MANAGER
```

---

**Note:** In a Windows cluster, start the Manager resource from the Cluster Administrator.

---

3. On the source, issue the following command to create the initial-load Extract.

```
ADD EXTRACT initial-load_Extract, SOURCEISTABLE
```

Where:

- *initial-load\_Extract* is the name of the initial-load Extract, up to eight characters.
- SOURCEISTABLE designates Extract as an initial-load process that reads complete records directly from the source tables. Do not use any of the other ADD EXTRACT service options or datasource arguments.

4. On the source system, issue the following command to create an initial-load Extract parameter file.

```
EDIT PARAMS initial-load_Extract
```

5. Enter the parameters listed in [Table 16-5](#) in the order shown, starting a new line for each parameter statement. The following is a sample initial-load Extract parameter file for an Oracle GoldenGate direct load.

```
EXTRACT initext
SOURCEDB mydb, USERIDALIAS ogg
RMTHOSTOPTIONS ny4387, MGRPORT 7888, ENCRYPT AES 192 KEYNAME mykey
RMTTASK REPLICAT, GROUP initrep
TABLE hr.*;
TABLE sales.*;
```

**Table 16–5 Initial-load Extract Parameters for Oracle GoldenGate Direct Load**

Parameter	Description
EXTRACT <i>initial-load_Extract</i>	Specifies the initial-load Extract.
[SOURCEDB <i>dsn   catalog</i> [, USERIDALIAS <i>alias, options</i>   , USERID <i>user, options</i> ]	Specifies database connection information. SOURCEDB specifies the source datasource name (DSN) or SQL/MX catalog. See <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i> for more information. USERID and USERIDALIAS specify database credentials if required. See <a href="#">Chapter 11, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security"</a> for more information about security options.
RMTHOSTOPTIONS <i>hostname,</i> MGRPORT <i>portnumber</i> [, ENCRYPT <i>algorithm KEYNAME keyname</i> ]	Specifies the target system, the port where Manager is running, and optional encryption of data across TCP/IP.
RMTTASK <i>replicat,</i> GROUP <i>initial-load_Replicat</i> ■ <i>initial-load_Replicat</i> is the name of the initial-load Replicat group	Directs Manager on the target system to dynamically start the initial-load Replicat as a one-time task.
TABLE [ <i>container.   catalog.</i> ] <i>owner.object</i> ;	Specifies the fully qualified name of an object or a fully qualified wildcarded specification for multiple objects. If the database is an Oracle multitenant database or a SQL/MX database, the object name must include the name of the container or catalog unless SOURCECATALOG is used. See <a href="#">Section 4.5, "Specifying Object Names in Oracle GoldenGate Input"</a> for guidelines for specifying object names in parameter files.
CATALOGEXCLUDE SCHEMAEXCLUDE TABLEEXCLUDE EXCLUDEWILDCARDOBJECTSONLY	Parameters that can be used in conjunction with one another to exclude specific objects from a wildcard specification in the associated TABLE statement. See <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i> for details.

6. Enter any appropriate optional Extract parameters listed in *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.
7. Save and close the file.
8. On the target system, issue the following command to create the initial-load Replicat task.

ADD REPLICAT *initial-load\_Replicat*, SPECIALRUN

Where:

- *initial-load\_Replicat* is the name of the initial-load Replicat task.
  - SPECIALRUN identifies the initial-load Replicat as a one-time run, not a continuous process.
9. On the target system, issue the following command to create an initial-load Replicat parameter file.
- EDIT PARAMS *initial-load\_Replicat*
10. Enter the parameters listed in [Table 16–6](#) in the order shown, starting a new line for each parameter statement. The following is a sample initial-load Replicat parameter file for an Oracle GoldenGate direct load.

```

REPLICAT initrep
TARGETDB mydb, USERIDALIAS ogg
SOURCEDEFS /ggs/dirdef/source_defs
MAP hr.*, TARGET hr.*;
MAP sales.*, TARGET hr.*;

```

**Table 16–6 Initial-load Replicat parameters for Oracle GoldenGate Direct Load**

Parameter	Description
REPLICAT <i>initial-load_Replicat</i>	Specifies the initial-load Replicat task to be started by Manager. Use the name that you specified when you created the initial-load Replicat.
[TARGETDB <i>dsn   container   catalog</i> ] [, USERIDALIAS <i>alias, options</i>   , USERID <i>user, options</i> ]	Specifies database connection information. TARGETDB specifies the target datasource name (DSN), Oracle container, or SQL/MX catalog. See <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i> for more information.
{SOURCEDEFS <i>full_pathname</i> }   ASSUMETARGETDEFS	USERID and USERIDALIAS specify database credentials if required. See <a href="#">Chapter 11, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security"</a> for more information about security options.
■ Use SOURCEDEFS if the source and target tables have different definitions. Specify the source-definitions file generated by DEFGEN. ■ Use ASSUMETARGETDEFS if the source and target tables have the same definitions.	Specifies how to interpret data definitions. For more information about data definitions files, see <a href="#">Chapter 13, "Associating Replicated Data with Metadata."</a>

**Table 16–6 (Cont.) Initial-load Replicat parameters for Oracle GoldenGate Direct Load**

Parameter	Description
SOURCECATALOG	Specifies a default source Oracle container or a source SQL/MX catalog for subsequent MAP statements. Enables the use of two-part names ( <i>schema.object</i> ) where three-part names otherwise would be required for those databases. You can use multiple instances of this parameter to specify different default containers or catalogs for different sets of MAP parameters.
MAP [container.   catalog.]owner.object, TARGET owner.object[, DEF template] ;	Specifies a relationship between a source object or objects and a target object or objects. MAP specifies the source object, and TARGET specifies the target object.  For the source object, specify the fully qualified name of the object or a fully qualified wildcarded specification for multiple objects. For an Oracle multitenant container database or a SQL/MX database, the source object name must include the name of the container or catalog unless SOURCECATALOG is used.  For the target object, specify only the <i>owner.object</i> components of the name, regardless of the database. Replicat can only connect to one Oracle container or SQL/MX catalog. Use a separate Replicat process for each container or catalog to which you want to load data.  See <a href="#">Section 4.5, "Specifying Object Names in Oracle GoldenGate Input"</a> for guidelines for specifying object names in parameter files.
CATALOGEXCLUDE SCHEMAEXCLUDE MAPEXCLUDE EXCLUDEWILDCARDOBJECTSONLY	The DEF option specifies a definitions template. For more information about data definitions, see <a href="#">Section 13, "Associating Replicated Data with Metadata"</a> . See <a href="#">Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</a> for more information and options for the MAP parameter.  Parameters that can be used in conjunction with one another to exclude specific source objects from a wildcard specification in the associated MAP statement. See <a href="#">Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</a> for details.

11. Enter any appropriate optional Replicat parameters listed in [Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX](#).

12. Save and close the parameter file.

13. On the source system, start change extraction.

```
START EXTRACT group
```

14. View the Replicat parameter file to make certain that the HANDLECOLLISIONS parameter is listed. If not, add the parameter to the file.
15. (Oracle, if replicating sequences) Issue the DBLOGIN command as the user who has EXECUTE privilege on update.Sequence.

```
GGSCI> DBLOGIN USERID DBLOGINuser, PASSWORD password [encryption_options]
```

16. (Oracle, if replicating sequences) Issue the following command to update each source sequence and generate redo. From the redo, Replicat performs initial synchronization of the sequences on the target. You can use an asterisk wildcard for any or all characters in the name of a sequence (but not the owner).

---

```
FLUSH SEQUENCE owner.sequence
```

17. On the source system, start the initial-load Extract.

```
START EXTRACT initial-load_Extract
```

---

**Note:** Do not start the initial-load Replicat. The Manager process starts it automatically and terminates it when the load is finished.

---

18. On the target system, issue the following command to find out if the load is finished. Wait until the load is finished before going to the next step.

```
VIEW REPORT initial-load_Replicat
```

19. On the target system, start change replication.

```
START REPLICAT group
```

20. On the target system, issue the following command to verify the status of change replication.

```
INFO REPLICAT group
```

21. Continue to issue the INFO REPLICAT command until you have verified that Replicat posted all of the change data that was generated during the initial load. For example, if the initial-load Extract stopped at 12:05, make sure Replicat posted data up to that point.

22. On the target system, issue the following command to turn off the HANDLECOLLISIONS parameter and disable the initial-load error handling.

```
SEND REPLICAT group, NOHANDLECOLLISIONS
```

23. On the target system, edit the Replicat parameter file to remove the HANDLECOLLISIONS parameter. This prevents HANDLECOLLISIONS from being enabled again the next time Replicat starts.

---

**Caution:** Do not use the VIEW PARAMS or EDIT PARAMS command to view or edit an existing parameter file that is in a character set other than that of the local operating system (such as one where the CHARSET option was used to specify a different character set). View the parameter file from outside GGSCI if this is the case; otherwise, the contents may become corrupted.

---

24. Save and close the parameter file. From this point forward, Oracle GoldenGate continues to synchronize data changes.

## 16.7 Loading Data with a Direct Bulk Load to SQL\*Loader

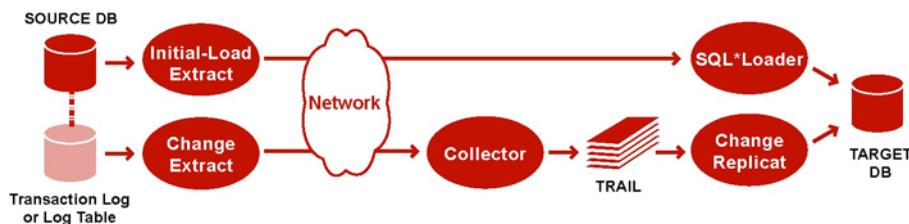
To use Oracle's SQL\*Loader utility to establish the target data, you run an Oracle GoldenGate initial-load Extract to extract the source records and send them directly to an initial-load Replicat *task*. A task is a process that is started dynamically by the Manager process and does not require the use of a Collector process or file. The initial-load Replicat task interfaces with the API of SQL\*Loader to load data as a direct-path bulk load. Data mapping and transformation can be done by either the initial-load Extract or initial-load Replicat, or both. During the load, the

change-synchronization groups extract and replicate incremental changes, which are then reconciled with the results of the load.

To control which port is used by Replicat, and to speed up the search and bind process, use the DYNAMICPORTLIST parameter in the Manager parameter file. Manager passes the list of port numbers that are specified with this parameter to the Replicat task process. Replicat first searches for a port from this list, and only if no ports are available from the list does Replicat begin scanning in ascending order from the default Manager port number until it finds an available port.

This method supports standard character, numeric, and datetime data types, as well as CLOB, NCLOB, BLOB, LONG, XML, and user-defined datatypes (UDT) embedded with the following attributes: CHAR, NCHAR, VARCHAR, NVARCHAR, RAW, NUMBER, DATE, FLOAT, TIMESTAMP, CLOB, BLOB, XML, and UDT. VARRAYS are not supported. Character sets are converted between source and target where applicable.

This method supports Oracle internal tables, but does not convert between the source and target character sets during the load.



This graphic shows loading data with a direct bulk load to SQL\*Loader.

### To load data with a direct bulk load to SQL\*Loader

1. Make certain that you have addressed the requirements in "Prerequisites for Initial Load" on page 16-2.
2. Grant LOCK ANY TABLE to the Replicat database user on the target Oracle database.
3. On the source and target systems, run GGSCI and start Manager.

START MANAGER

4. On the source system, issue the following command to create the initial-load Extract.

`ADD EXTRACT initial-load_Extract, SOURCEISTABLE`

Where:

- *initial-load\_Extract* is the name of the initial-load Extract, up to eight characters.
  - SOURCEISTABLE designates Extract as an initial-load process that reads complete records directly from the source tables. Do not use any of the other ADD EXTRACT service options or datasource arguments.
5. On the source system, issue the following command to create an initial-load Extract parameter file.

`EDIT PARAMS initial-load_Extract`

6. Enter the parameters listed in [Table 16–7](#) in the order shown, starting a new line for each parameter statement. The following is a sample initial-load Extract parameter file for a direct bulk load to SQL\*Loader.

```
EXTRACT initext
SOURCEDB mydb, USERIDALIAS ogg
RMTHOSTOPTIONS ny4387, MGRPORT 7888, ENCRYPT AES 192 KEYNAME mykey
RMTTASK REPLICAT, GROUP initrep
TABLE hr.*;
TABLE sales.*;
```

**Table 16–7 Initial-load Extract Parameters for a Direct Bulk Load to SQL\*Loader**

Parameter	Description
EXTRACT <i>initial-load_Extract</i>	Specifies the initial-load Extract.
[, USERIDALIAS <i>alias</i> , <i>options</i>   , USERID <i>user</i> , <i>options</i> ]	Specifies database connection information. USERID and USERIDALIAS specify database credentials if required. See <a href="#">Chapter 11, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security"</a> for more information about security options.
RMTHOSTOPTIONS <i>hostname</i> , MGRPORT <i>portnumber</i> [, ENCRYPT <i>algorithm</i> KEYNAME <i>keyname</i> ]	Specifies the target system, the port where Manager is running, and optional encryption of data across TCP/IP.
RMTTASK <i>replicat</i> , GROUP <i>initial-load_Replicat</i>	Directs Manager on the target system to dynamically start the initial-load Replicat as a one-time task.
■ <i>initial-load_Replicat</i> is the name of the initial-load Replicat group.	
TABLE [ <i>container</i> .] <i>owner</i> . <i>object</i> ;	Specifies the fully qualified name of an object or a fully qualified wildcarded specification for multiple objects. If the database is an Oracle multitenant container database, the object name must include the name of the container unless SOURCECATALOG is used. See <a href="#">Section 4.5, "Specifying Object Names in Oracle GoldenGate Input"</a> for guidelines for specifying object names in parameter files.
CATALOGEXCLUDE	Parameters that can be used in conjunction with one another to exclude specific objects from a wildcard specification in the associated TABLE statement. See <a href="#">Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</a> for details.
SCHEMAEXCLUDE	
TABLEEXCLUDE	
EXCLUDEWILDCARDOBJECTSONLY	

7. Enter any appropriate optional parameters.
8. Save and close the file.
9. On the target system, issue the following command to create the initial-load Replicat.

```
ADD REPLICAT initial-load_Replicat, SPECIALRUN
```

Where:

- *initial-load\_Replicat* is the name of the initial-load Replicat task.
- SPECIALRUN identifies the initial-load Replicat as a one-time task, not a continuous process.

10. On the target system, issue the following command to create an initial-load Replicat parameter file.

```
EDIT PARAMS initial-load_Replicat
```

11. Enter the parameters listed in [Table 16–8](#) in the order shown, starting a new line for each parameter statement. The following is a sample initial-load Replicat parameter file for a direct load to SQL\*Loader.

```
REPLICAT initrep
USERIDALIAS ogg
BULKLOAD
SOURCEDEFS /ggs/dirdef/source_defs
MAP hr.* , TARGET hr.*;
MAP sales.* , TARGET hr.*;
```

**Table 16–8 Initial-load Replicat Parameters for Direct Load to SQL\*Loader**

Parameter	Description
REPLICAT <i>initial-load_Replicat</i>	Specifies the initial-load Replicat task to be started by Manager. Use the name that you specified when you created the initial-load Replicat.
[TARGETDB <i>container</i> ] [, USERIDALIAS <i>alias</i> , <i>options</i>   , USERID <i>user</i> , <i>options</i> ]	Specifies database connection information. TARGETDB specifies the target Oracle container. See <a href="#">Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</a> for more information. USERID and USERIDALIAS specify database credentials if required. See <a href="#">Chapter 11, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security"</a> for more information about security options.
BULKLOAD	Directs Replicat to interface directly with the Oracle SQL*Loader interface. See <a href="#">Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</a> for more information.
{SOURCEDEFS <i>full_pathname</i> }   ASSUMETARGETDEFS <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Use SOURCEDEFS if the source and target tables have different definitions. Specify the source-definitions file generated by DEFGEN.</li><li>■ Use ASSUMETARGETDEFS if the source and target tables have the same definitions.</li></ul>	Specifies how to interpret data definitions. For more information about data definitions files, see <a href="#">Chapter 13, "Associating Replicated Data with Metadata."</a>

**Table 16–8 (Cont.) Initial-load Replicat Parameters for Direct Load to SQL\*Loader**

Parameter	Description
SOURCECATALOG	Specifies a default source Oracle container for subsequent MAP statements. Enables the use of two-part names ( <i>schema.object</i> ) where three-part names otherwise would be required. You can use multiple instances of this parameter to specify different default containers for different sets of MAP parameters.
MAP [container.]owner.object, TARGET owner.object[, DEF template] ;	Specifies a relationship between a source object or objects and a target object or objects. MAP specifies the source object, and TARGET specifies the target object.  For the source object, specify the fully qualified name of the object or a fully qualified wildcarded specification for multiple objects. For an Oracle multitenant container database, the source object name must include the name of the container unless SOURCECATALOG is used.  For the target object, specify only the <i>owner.object</i> components of the name, regardless of the database. Replicat can only connect to one Oracle container. Use a separate Replicat process for each container to which you want to load data.  See <a href="#">Section 4.5, "Specifying Object Names in Oracle GoldenGate Input"</a> for guidelines for specifying object names in parameter files.
	The DEF option specifies a definitions template. For more information about data definitions, see <a href="#">Section 13, "Associating Replicated Data with Metadata"</a> . See <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i> for more information and options for the MAP parameter.
CATALOGEXCLUDE SCHEMAEXCLUDE MAPEXCLUDE	Parameters that can be used in conjunction with one another to exclude specific source objects from a wildcard specification in the associated MAP statement. See <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i> for details.
EXCLUDEWILDCARDOBJECTSONLY	

12. Enter any appropriate optional Replicat parameters listed in *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.
13. Save and close the parameter file.
14. On the source system, start change extraction.

```
START EXTRACT group
```

15. View the Replicat parameter file to make certain that the HANDLECOLLISIONS parameter is listed. If not, add the parameter to the file.
16. (Oracle, if replicating sequences) Issue the DBLOGIN command as the user who has EXECUTE privilege on update.Sequence.

```
GGSCI> DBLOGIN USERID DBLOGINuser, PASSWORD password [encryption_options]
```

17. (Oracle, if replicating sequences) Issue the following command to update each source sequence and generate redo. From the redo, Replicat performs initial synchronization of the sequences on the target. You can use an asterisk wildcard for any or all characters in the name of a sequence (but not the owner).

```
FLUSH SEQUENCE owner.sequence
```

18. On the source system, start the initial-load Extract.

```
START EXTRACT initial-load_Extract
```

---

**Caution:** Do not start the initial-load Replicat. The Manager process starts it automatically and terminates it when the load is finished.

---

19. On the target system, issue the following command to determine when the load is finished. Wait until the load is finished before proceeding to the next step.

```
VIEW REPORT initial-load_Extract
```

20. On the target system, start change replication.

```
START REPLICAT group
```

21. On the target system, issue the following command to verify the status of change replication.

```
INFO REPLICAT group
```

22. Continue to issue the INFO REPLICAT command until you have verified that Replicat posted all of the change data that was generated during the initial load. For example, if the initial-load Extract stopped at 12:05, make sure Replicat posted data up to that point.

23. On the target system, issue the following command to turn off the HANDLECOLLISIONS parameter and disable the initial-load error handling.

```
SEND REPLICAT group, NOHANDLECOLLISIONS
```

24. On the target system, edit the Replicat parameter file to remove the HANDLECOLLISIONS parameter. This prevents HANDLECOLLISIONS from being enabled again the next time Replicat starts.

---

**Caution:** Do not use the VIEW PARAMS or EDIT PARAMS command to view or edit an existing parameter file that is in a character set other than that of the local operating system (such as one where the CHARSET option was used to specify a different character set). View the parameter file from outside GGSCI if this is the case; otherwise, the contents may become corrupted..

---

25. Save and close the parameter file.

From this point forward, Oracle GoldenGate continues to synchronize data changes.

## 16.8 Loading Data with Teradata Load Utilities

The preferred methods for synchronizing two Teradata databases is to use any of the Teradata data load utilities. The recommended utility is MultiLoad.

This procedure requires Extract and Replicat change-synchronization groups to be available and properly configured for Teradata replication. For more information, see [Chapter 14, "Configuring Online Change Synchronization."](#)

If you are using multiple Extract and Replicat groups, perform each step for all of them as appropriate.

**To load data with a Teradata load utility**

1. Create the scripts that are required by the utility.
2. Start the primary Extract group(s).

```
START EXTRACT group
```

3. Start the data pump(s), if used.

```
START EXTRACT data_pump
```

4. Open the Replicat parameter file(s) for editing.

---

**Caution:** Do not use the VIEW PARAMS or EDIT PARAMS command to view or edit an existing parameter file that is in a character set other than that of the local operating system (such as one where the CHARSET option was used to specify a different character set). View the parameter file from outside GGSCI if this is the case; otherwise, the contents may become corrupted..

---

5. Add the following parameters to the Replicat parameter file(s):

```
END RUNTIME  
HANDLECOLLISIONS
```

- END RUNTIME directs Replicat to terminate normally when it reads an Oracle GoldenGate trail record that has a timestamp that is the same as, or after, the time that Replicat was started.
- HANDLECOLLISIONS directs Replicat to overwrite duplicate records and ignore missing ones, as a means of resolving errors that occur from collisions between transactional changes and the results of the copy.

6. Save and close the Replicat parameter file(s).
7. Start the load utility.
8. When the load completes on the target, start the Replicat process(es).
9. When each Replicat process stops, remove the HANDLECOLLISIONS and END RUNTIME parameters from the parameter file.
10. Restart the Replicat process(es). The two databases are now synchronized, and Oracle GoldenGate will keep them current through replication.

---

# Customizing Oracle GoldenGate Processing

This chapter describes how to customize Oracle GoldenGate processing.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Executing Commands, Stored Procedures, and Queries with SQLEXEC](#)
- [Using Oracle GoldenGate Macros to Simplify and Automate Work](#)
- [Using User Exits to Extend Oracle GoldenGate Capabilities](#)
- [Using the Oracle GoldenGate Event Marker System to Raise Database Events](#)

## 17.1 Executing Commands, Stored Procedures, and Queries with SQLEXEC

The SQLEXEC parameter of Oracle GoldenGate enables Extract and Replicat to communicate with the database to do the following:

- Execute a database command, stored procedure, or SQL query to perform a database function, return results (SELECT statements) or perform DML (INSERT, UPDATE, DELETE) operations.
- Retrieve output parameters from a procedure for input to a FILTER or COLMAP clause.

### 17.1.1 Performing Processing with SQLEXEC

SQLEXEC extends the functionality of both Oracle GoldenGate and the database by allowing Oracle GoldenGate to use the native SQL of the database to execute custom processing instructions.

- Stored procedures and queries can be used to select or insert data into the database, to aggregate data, to denormalize or normalize data, or to perform any other function that requires database operations as input. Oracle GoldenGate supports stored procedures that accept input and those that produce output.
- Database commands can be issued to perform database functions required to facilitate Oracle GoldenGate processing, such as disabling triggers on target tables and then enabling them again.

### 17.1.2 Using SQLEXEC

The SQLEXEC parameter can be used as follows:

- as a clause of a TABLE or MAP statement
- as a standalone parameter at the root level of the Extract or Replicat parameter file.

### 17.1.3 Executing SQLEXEC within a TABLE or MAP Statement

When used within a TABLE or MAP statement, SQLEXEC can pass and accept parameters. It can be used for procedures and queries, but not for database commands.

#### Syntax

This syntax executes a procedure within a TABLE or MAP statement.

```
SQLEXEC (SPNAME sp_name,  
[ID logical_name,]  
{PARAMS param_spec | NOPARAMS})
```

Argument	Description
SPNAME	Required keyword that begins a clause to execute a stored procedure.
<i>sp_name</i>	Specifies the name of the stored procedure to execute. For Informix, the stored procedure should be specified as a three-part name. For example, <code>mydatabase.myschema.myproc</code> .
ID <i>logical_name</i>	Defines a logical name for the procedure. Use this option to execute the procedure multiple times within a TABLE or MAP statement. Not required when executing a procedure only once.
PARAMS <i>param_spec</i>   NOPARAMS	Specifies whether or not the procedure accepts parameters. One of these options must be used (see <a href="#">Section 17.1.5, "Using Input and Output Parameters"</a> ).

#### Syntax

This syntax executes a query within a TABLE or MAP statement.

```
SQLEXEC (ID logical_name, QUERY ' query ',  
{PARAMS param_spec | NOPARAMS})
```

Argument	Description
ID <i>logical_name</i>	Defines a logical name for the query. A logical name is required in order to extract values from the query results. ID <i>logical_name</i> references the column values returned by the query.
QUERY ' <i>sql_query</i> '	Specifies the SQL query syntax to execute against the database. It can either return results with a SELECT statement or change the database with an INSERT, UPDATE, or DELETE statement. The query must be within single quotes and must be contained all on one line. Specify case-sensitive object names the way they are stored in the database, such as within quotes for Oracle case-sensitive names.  SQLEXEC 'SELECT "col1" from "schema"."table"'
PARAMS <i>param_spec</i>   NOPARAMS	Defines whether or not the query accepts parameters. One of these options must be used (see <a href="#">Section 17.1.5, "Using Input and Output Parameters"</a> ).

If you want to execute a query on a table residing on a different database than the current database, then the different database name has to be specified with the table. The delimiter between the database name and the tablename should be a colon (:). The following are some example use cases:

```
select col1 from db1:tab1  
select col2 from db2:schema2.tab2
```

```
select col3 from tab3
select col3 from schema4.tab4
```

## 17.1.4 Executing SQLEXEC as a Standalone Statement

When used as a standalone parameter statement in the Extract or Replicat parameter file, SQLEXEC can execute a stored procedure, query, or database command. As such, it need not be tied to any specific table and can be used to perform general SQL operations. For example, if the Oracle GoldenGate database user account is configured to time-out when idle, you could use SQLEXEC to execute a query at a defined interval, so that Oracle GoldenGate does not appear idle. As another example, you could use SQLEXEC to issue an essential database command, such as to disable target triggers. A standalone SQLEXEC statement cannot accept input parameters or return output parameters.

Parameter syntax	Purpose
SQLEXEC 'call procedure_name()'	Execute a stored procedure
SQLEXEC 'sql_query'	Execute a query
SQLEXEC 'database_command'	Execute a database command

Argument	Description
'call procedure_name ()'	Specifies the name of a stored procedure to execute. The statement must be enclosed within single quotes.  Example:  SQLEXEC 'call prc_job_count ()'
'sql_query'	Specifies the name of a query to execute. The query must be contained all on one line and enclosed within single quotes.  Specify case-sensitive object names the way they are stored in the database, such as within double quotes for Oracle object names that are case-sensitive.  SQLEXEC 'SELECT "col1" from "schema"."table"'
'database_command'	Specifies a database command to execute. Must be a valid command for the database.

SQLEXEC provides options to control processing behavior, memory usage, and error handling. For more information, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 17.1.5 Using Input and Output Parameters

Oracle GoldenGate provides options for passing input and output values to and from a procedure or query that is executed with SQLEXEC within a TABLE or MAP statement.

### 17.1.5.1 Passing Values to Input Parameters

To pass data values to input parameters within a stored procedure or query, use the PARAMS option of SQLEXEC.

#### Syntax

```
PARAMS ([OPTIONAL | REQUIRED] param = {source_column | function})
```

```
[, ...] )
```

Where:

- OPTIONAL indicates that a parameter value is not required for the SQL to execute. If a required source column is missing from the database operation, or if a column-conversion function cannot complete successfully because a source column is missing, the SQL executes anyway.
- REQUIRED indicates that a parameter value must be present. If the parameter value is not present, the SQL will not be executed.
- *param* is one of the following:
  - For a stored procedure, it is the name of any parameter in the procedure that can accept input, such as a column in a lookup table.
  - For an Oracle query, it is the name of any input parameter in the query excluding the leading colon. For example, :*param1* would be specified as *param1* in the PARAMS clause.
  - For a non-Oracle query, it is *pn*, where *n* is the number of the parameter within the statement, starting from 1. For example, in a query with two parameters, the *param* entries are *p1* and *p2*.
- {*source\_column* | *function*} is the column or Oracle GoldenGate conversion function that provides input to the procedure.

#### 17.1.5.2 Passing Values to Output Parameters

To pass values from a stored procedure or query as input to a FILTER or COLMAP clause, use the following syntax:

##### Syntax

```
{procedure_name | logical_name}.parameter
```

Where:

- *procedure\_name* is the actual name of the stored procedure. Use this argument only if executing a procedure one time during the life of the current Oracle GoldenGate process.
- *logical\_name* is the logical name specified with the ID option of SQLEXEC. Use this argument if executing a query or a stored procedure that will be executed multiple times.
- *parameter* is either the name of the parameter or RETURN\_VALUE, if extracting returned values.

#### 17.1.5.3 SQLEXEC Examples Using Parameters

These examples use stored procedures and queries with input and output parameters.

##### **Example 17–1 SQLEXEC with a Stored Procedure**

This example uses SQLEXEC to run a stored procedure named LOOKUP that performs a query to return a description based on a code. It then maps the results to a target column named NEWACCT\_VAL.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE LOOKUP
(CODE_PARAM IN VARCHAR2, DESC_PARAM OUT VARCHAR2)
BEGIN
```

```

SELECT DESC_COL
INTO DESC_PARAM
FROM LOOKUP_TABLE
WHERE CODE_COL = CODE_PARAM
END;

```

Contents of MAP statement:

```

MAP sales.account, TARGET sales.newacct, &
SQLEXEC (SPNAME lookup, PARAMS (code_param = account_code)), &
COLMAP (newacct_id = account_id, newacct_val = lookup.desc_param);

```

SQLEXEC executes the LOOKUP stored procedure. Within the SQLEXEC clause, the PARAMS (code\_param = account\_code) statement identifies code\_param as the procedure parameter to accept input from the account\_code column in the account table.

Replicat executes the LOOKUP stored procedure prior to executing the column map, so that the COLMAP clause can extract and map the results to the newacct\_val column.

#### **Example 17-2 SQLEXEC with a Query**

This example implements the same logic as used in the previous example, but it executes a SQL query instead of a stored procedure and uses the @GETVAL function in the column map.

A query must be on one line. To split an Oracle GoldenGate parameter statement into multiple lines, an ampersand (&) line terminator is required.

Query for an Oracle database:

```

MAP sales.account, TARGET sales.newacct, &
SQLEXEC (ID lookup, &
QUERY 'select desc_col desc_param from lookup_table where code_col = :code_param',
&
PARAMS (code_param = account_code)), &
COLMAP (newacct_id = account_id, newacct_val = &
@getval (lookup.desc_param));

```

Query for a non-Oracle database:

```

MAP sales.account, TARGET sales.newacct, &
SQLEXEC (ID lookup, &
QUERY 'select desc_col desc_param from lookup_table where code_col = ?', &
PARAMS (p1 = account_code)), &
COLMAP (newacct_id = account_id, newacct_val = &
@getval (lookup.desc_param));

```

---

**Note:** Additional SQLEXEC options are available for use when a procedure or query includes parameters. See the full SQLEXEC documentation in *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

---

### 17.1.6 Handling SQLEXEC Errors

There are two types of error conditions to consider when implementing SQLEXEC:

- The column map requires a column that is missing from the source database operation. This can occur for an update operation if the database only logs the values of columns that changed, rather than all of the column values. By default, when a required column is missing, or when an Oracle GoldenGate

column-conversion function results in a "column missing" condition, the stored procedure does not execute. Subsequent attempts to extract an output parameter from the stored procedure results in a "column missing condition" in the COLMAP or FILTER clause.

- The database generates an error.

#### 17.1.6.1 Handling Missing Column Values

Use the @COLTEST function to test the results of the parameter that was passed, and then map an alternative value for the column to compensate for missing values, if desired. Otherwise, to ensure that column values are available, you can use the FETCHCOLS or FETCHCOLSEXCEPT option of the TABLE parameter to fetch the values from the database if they are not present in the log. As an alternative to fetching columns, you can enable supplemental logging for those columns.

#### 17.1.6.2 Handling Database Errors

Use the ERROR option in the SQLEXEC clause to direct Oracle GoldenGate to respond in one of the following ways:

**Table 17-1    *ERROR Options***

Action	Description
IGNORE	Causes Oracle GoldenGate to ignore all errors associated with the stored procedure or query and continue processing. Any resulting parameter extraction results in a "column missing" condition. This is the default.
REPORT	Ensures that all errors associated with the stored procedure or query are reported to the discard file. The report is useful for tracing the cause of the error. It includes both an error description and the value of the parameters passed to and from the procedure or query. Oracle GoldenGate continues processing after reporting the error.
RAISE	Handles errors according to rules set by a REPEROR parameter specified in the Replicat parameter file. Oracle GoldenGate continues processing other stored procedures or queries associated with the current TABLE or MAP statement before processing the error.
FINAL	Performs in a similar way to RAISE except that when an error associated with a procedure or query is encountered, any remaining stored procedures and queries are bypassed. Error processing is called immediately after the error.
FATAL	Causes Oracle GoldenGate to abend immediately upon encountering an error associated with a procedure or query.

#### 17.1.7 Additional SQLEXEC Guidelines

Observe the following SQLEXEC guidelines:

- Up to 20 stored procedures or queries can be executed per TABLE or MAP entry. They execute in the order listed in the parameter statement.
- A database login by the Oracle GoldenGate user must precede the SQLEXEC clause. Use the SOURCEDB and/or USERID or USERIDALIAS parameter in the Extract parameter file or the TARGETDB and/or USERID or USERIDALIAS parameter in the Replicat parameter file, as needed for the database type and configured authentication method.
- The SQL is executed by the Oracle GoldenGate user. This user must have the privilege to execute stored procedures and call RDBM-supplied procedures.

- Database operations within a stored procedure or query are committed in same context as the original transaction.
- Do not use `SQLEXEC` to update the value of a primary key column. If `SQLEXEC` is used to update the value of a key column, then the Replicat process will not be able to perform a subsequent update or delete operation, because the original key value will be unavailable. If a key value must be changed, you can map the original key value to another column and then specify that column with the `KEYCOLS` option of the `TABLE` or `MAP` parameter.
- For DB2, Oracle GoldenGate uses the ODBC `SQLExecDirect` function to execute a SQL statement dynamically. This means that the connected database server must be able to prepare the statement dynamically. ODBC prepares the SQL statement every time it is executed (at the requested interval). Typically, this does not present a problem to Oracle GoldenGate users. See the IBM DB2 documentation for more information.
- Do not use `SQLEXEC` for objects being processing by a data-pump Extract in pass-through mode.
- All object names in a `SQLEXEC` statement must be fully qualified with their two-part or three-part names, as appropriate for the database.
- All objects that are affected by a `SQLEXEC` stored procedure or query must exist with the correct structures prior to the execution of the SQL. Consequently, DDL on these objects that affects structure (such as `CREATE` or `ALTER`) must happen before the `SQLEXEC` executes.
- All objects affected by a standalone `SQLEXEC` statement must exist before the Oracle GoldenGate processes start. Because of this, DDL support must be disabled for those objects; otherwise, DDL operations could change the structure or delete the object before the `SQLEXEC` procedure or query executes on it.
- For Informix, when Replicate is used to replicate data to multiple target databases in the same process, the `DBOPTIONS SPTHREAD` parameter and option must be used in the Replicat parameter file. For other uses of `SQLEXEC`, this parameter is not mandatory.

## 17.2 Using Oracle GoldenGate Macros to Simplify and Automate Work

You can use Oracle GoldenGate macros in parameter files to configure and reuse parameters, commands, and conversion functions, reducing the amount of text you must enter to do common tasks. A macro is a built-in automation tool that enables you to call a stored set of processing steps from within the Oracle GoldenGate parameter file. A macro can consist of a simple set of frequently used parameter statements to a complex series of parameter substitutions, calculations, or conversions. You can call other macros from a macro. You can store commonly used macros in a library, and then call the library rather than call the macros individually.

Oracle GoldenGate macros work with the following parameter files:

- `DEFGEN`
- `Extract`
- `Replicat`

Do not use macros to manipulate data for tables that are being processed by a data-pump Extract in pass-through mode.

There are two steps to using macros:

- [Defining a Macro](#)
- [Calling a Macro](#)

### 17.2.1 Defining a Macro

To define an Oracle GoldenGate macro, use the MACRO parameter in the parameter file. MACRO defines any input parameters that are needed and it defines the work that the macro performs.

#### Syntax

```
MACRO #macro_name
PARAMS (#p1, #p2 [, ...])
BEGIN
macro_body
END;
```

**Table 17–2 Macro Definition Arguments**

Argument	Description
MACRO	Required. Indicates the start of an Oracle GoldenGate macro definition.
#macro_name	The name of the macro. Macro and parameter names must begin with a macro character. The default macro character is the pound (#) character, as in #macro1 and #param1.
	A macro or parameter name can be one word consisting of letters and numbers, or both. Special characters, such as the underscore character (_) or hyphen (-), can be used. Some examples of macro names are: #mymacro, #macro1, #macro_1, #macro-1, #macro\$. Some examples of parameter names are #sourcecol, #s, #col1, and #col_1.
	To avoid parsing errors, the macro character cannot be used as the first character of a macro name. For example, ##macro is invalid. If needed, you can change the macro character by using the MACROCHAR parameter. See <i>Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX</i> .
	Macro and parameter names are not case-sensitive. Macro or parameter names within quotation marks are ignored.
PARAMS (#p1, #p2)	Optional definition of input parameters. Specify a comma-separated list of parameter names and enclose it within parentheses. Each parameter must be referenced in the macro body where you want input values to be substituted. You can list each parameter on a separate line to improve readability (making certain to use the open and close parentheses to enclose the parameter list). See <a href="#">Section 17.2.2.1, "Calling a Macro that Contains Parameters"</a> for more information.
BEGIN	Begins the macro body. Must be specified before the macro body.

**Table 17-2 (Cont.) Macro Definition Arguments**

Argument	Description
<i>macro_body</i>	The macro body. The body is a syntax statement that defines the function that is to be performed by the macro. A macro body can include any of the following types of statements. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Simple parameter statements, as in: COL1 = COL2</li> <li>▪ Complex parameter statements with parameter substitution as in: MAP #o.#t, TARGET #o.#t, KEYCOLS (#k), COLMAP (USEDEFAULTS);</li> <li>▪ Invocations of other macros, as in: #colmap (COL1, #sourcecol)</li> </ul>
END;	Ends the macro definition. The semicolon is required to complete the definition.

The following is an example of a macro definition that includes parameters. In this case, the macro simplifies the task of object and column mapping by supplying the base syntax of the MAP statement with input parameters that resolve to the names of the owners, the tables, and the KEYCOLS columns.

```
MACRO #macro1
PARAMS ( #o, #t, #k )
BEGIN
MAP #o.#t, TARGET #o.#t, KEYCOLS (#k), COLMAP (USEDEFAULTS);
END;
```

The following is an example of a macro that does not define parameters. It executes a frequently used set of parameters.

```
MACRO #option_defaults
BEGIN
GETINSERTS
GETUPDATES
GETDELETES
INSERTDELETES
END;
```

## 17.2.2 Calling a Macro

This section shows you how to call a macro. (To define a macro, see [Section 17.2.1, "Defining a Macro"](#)).

To call a macro, use the following syntax where you want the macro to run within the parameter file.

### Syntax

```
[target =] macro_name (val[, ...])
[target =] macro_name (val | {val, val, ...}[, ...])
```

**Table 17–3 Syntax Elements for Calling a Macro**

Argument	Description
<code>target =</code>	Optional. Specifies the target to which the results of the macro are assigned or mapped. For example, <code>target</code> can be used to specify a target column in a <code>COLMAP</code> statement. In the following call to the <code>#make_date</code> macro, the column <code>DATECOL1</code> is the target and will be mapped to the macro results.  <code>DATECOL1 = #make_date (YR1, M01, DAY1)</code> Without a target, the syntax to call <code>#make_date</code> is:  <code>#make_date (YR1, M01, DAY1)</code>
<code>macro_name</code>	The name of the macro that is being called, for example: <code>#make_date</code> .
<code>( val[, ...])</code>	The parameter input values. This component is required whether or not the macro defines parameters. If the macro defines parameters, specify a comma-separated list of input values, in the order that corresponds to the parameter definitions in the <code>MACRO</code> parameter, and enclose the list within parentheses. If the macro does not define parameters, specify the open and close parentheses with nothing between them <code>()</code> . For more information about this syntax, see the following:  <a href="#">Section 17.2.2.1, "Calling a Macro that Contains Parameters."</a> <a href="#">Section 17.2.2.2, "Calling a Macro without Input Parameters."</a>
<code>( val   {val, val, ...}) [, ...]</code>	The parameter input values. This component is required whether or not the macro defines parameters. If the macro defines parameters, specify a comma-separated list of input values, in the order that corresponds to the parameter definitions in the <code>MACRO</code> parameter, and enclose the list within parentheses. To pass multiple values to one parameter, separate them with commas and enclose the list within curly brackets. If the macro does not define parameters, specify the open and close parentheses with nothing between them <code>()</code> . For more information about this syntax, see the following:  <a href="#">Section 17.2.2.1, "Calling a Macro that Contains Parameters."</a> <a href="#">Section 17.2.2.2, "Calling a Macro without Input Parameters."</a>

### 17.2.2.1 Calling a Macro that Contains Parameters

To call a macro that contains parameters, the call statement must supply the input values that are to be substituted for those parameters when the macro runs. See the syntax in [Table 17–3](#).

Valid input for a macro parameter is any of the following, preceded by the macro character (default is `#`):

- A single value in plain or quoted text, such as: `#macro (#name, #address, #phone)` or `#macro (#"name", #"address", #"phone")`.
- A comma-separated list of values enclosed within curly brackets, such as: `#macro1 (SCOTT, DEPT, {DEPTNO1, DEPTNO2, DEPTNO3})`. The ability to substitute a block of values for any given parameter add flexibility to the macro definition and its usability in the Oracle GoldenGate configuration.
- Calls to other macros, such as: `#macro (#mycalc (col2, 100), #total)`. In this example, the `#mycalc` macro is called with the input values of `col2` and `100`.

Oracle GoldenGate substitutes parameter values within the macro body according to the following rules.

1. The macro processor reads through the macro body looking for instances of parameter names specified in the PARAMS statement.
2. For each occurrence of the parameter name, the corresponding parameter value specified during the call is substituted.
3. If a parameter name does not appear in the PARAMS statement, the macro processor evaluates whether or not the item is, instead, a call to another macro. (See [Section 17.2.3, "Calling Other Macros from a Macro"](#).) If the call succeeds, the nested macro is executed. If it fails, the whole macro fails.

**Example 17–3 Using Parameters to Populate a MAP Statement**

The following macro definition specifies three parameter that must be resolved. The parameters substitute for the names of the table owner (parameter #o), the table (parameter #t), and the KEYCOLS columns (parameter #k) in a MAP statement.

```
MACRO #macro1
PARAMS ( #o, #t, #k )
BEGIN
MAP #o.#t, TARGET #o.#t, KEYCOLS (#k), COLMAP (USEDEFAULTS);
END;
```

Assuming a table in the MAP statement requires only one KEYCOLS column, the following syntax can be used to call #macro1. In this syntax, the #k parameter can be resolved with only one value.

```
#macro1 (SCOTT, DEPT, DEPTNO1)
```

**Example 17–4 Using a Macro to Perform Conversion**

In this example, a macro defines the parameters #year, #month, and #day to convert a proprietary date format.

```
MACRO #make_date
PARAMS (#year, #month, #day)
BEGIN
@DATE ('YYYY-MM-DD', 'CC', @IF (#year < 50, 20, 19), 'YY', #year, 'MM', #month,
'DD', #day)
END;
```

The macro is called in the COLMAP clause:

```
MAP sales.acct_tab, TARGET sales.account,
COLMAP
(
targcol1 = sourcecol1,
datecol1 = #make_date(YR1, MO1, DAY1),
datecol2 = #make_date(YR2, MO2, DAY2)
);
```

The macro expands as follows:

```
MAP sales.acct_tab, TARGET sales.account,
COLMAP
(
targcol1 = sourcecol1,
datecol1 = @DATE ('YYYY-MM-DD', 'CC', @IF (YR1 < 50, 20, 19), 'YY', YR1, 'MM', MO1,
'DD', DAY1),
datecol2 = @DATE ('YYYY-MM-DD', 'CC', @IF (YR2 < 50, 20, 19), 'YY', YR2, 'MM', MO2,
'DD', DAY2)
);
```

### 17.2.2.2 Calling a Macro without Input Parameters

To call a macro without input parameters, the call statement must supply the open and close parentheses, but without any input values: #macro () .

The following macro is defined without input parameters. The body contains frequently used parameters.

```
MACRO #option_defaults
BEGIN
GETINSERTS
GETUPDATES
GETDELETES
INSERTDELETES
END;
```

This macro is called as follows:

```
#option_defaults ()
IGNOREUPDATES
MAP owner.srctab, TARGET owner.targtab;

#option_defaults ()
MAP owner.srctab2, TARGET owner.targtab2;
```

The macro expands as follows:

```
GETINSERTS
GETUPDATES
GETDELETES
INSERTDELETES
IGNOREUPDATES
MAP owner.srctab, TARGET owner.targtab;

GETINSERTS
GETUPDATES
GETDELETES
INSERTDELETES
MAP owner.srctab2, TARGET owner.targtab2;
```

### 17.2.3 Calling Other Macros from a Macro

To call other macros from a macro, create a macro definition similar to the following. In this example, the #make\_date macro is nested within the #assign\_date macro, and it is called when #assign\_date runs.

The nested macro must define all, or a subset of, the same parameters that are defined in the base macro. In other words, the input values when the base macro is called must resolve to the parameters in both macros.

The following defines #assign\_date:

```
MACRO #assign_date
PARAMS (#target_col, #year, #month, #day)
BEGIN
#target_col = #make_date (#year, #month, #day)
END;
```

The following defines #make\_date. This macro creates a date format that includes a four-digit year, after first determining whether the two-digit input date should be

prefixed with a century value of 19 or 20. Notice that the PARAMS statement of #make\_date contains a subset of the parameters in the #assign\_date macro.

```
MACRO #make_date
PARAMS (#year, #month, #day)
BEGIN
@DATE ('YYYY-MM-DD', 'CC', @IF (#year < 50, 20, 19), 'YY', #year, 'MM', #month,
'DD', #day)
END;
```

The following syntax calls #assign\_date:

```
#assign_date (COL1, YEAR, MONTH, DAY)
```

The macro expands to the following given the preceding input values and the embedded #make\_date macro:

```
COL1 = @DATE ('YYYY-MM-DD', 'CC', @IF (YEAR < 50, 20, 19), 'YY', YEAR, 'MM', MONTH,
'DD', DAY)
```

#### 17.2.4 Creating Macro Libraries

You can create a macro library that contains one or more macros. By using a macro library, you can define a macro once and then use it within many parameter files.

##### To create a macro library

1. Open a new file in a text editor.
2. Use commented lines to describe the library, if needed.
3. Using the syntax described in [Section 17.2.1, "Defining a Macro"](#), enter the syntax for each macro.
4. Save the file in the `dirprm` sub-directory of the Oracle GoldenGate directory as:

`filename.mac`

Where:

`filename` is the name of the file. The `.mac` extension defines the file as a macro library.

The following sample library named `datelib` contains two macros, #make\_date and #assign\_date.

```
-- datelib macro library
--
MACRO #make_date
PARAMS (#year, #month, #day)
BEGIN
@DATE ('YYYY-MM-DD', 'CC', @IF (#year < 50, 20, 19), 'YY', #year, 'MM', #month,
'DD', #day)
END;

MACRO #assign_date
PARAMS (#target_col, #year, #month, #day)
BEGIN
#target_col = #make_date (#year, #month, #day)
END;
```

To use a macro library, use the `INCLUDE` parameter at the beginning of a parameter file, as shown in the following sample Replicat parameter file.

```
INCLUDE /ggs/dirprm/datelib.mac
REPLICAT rep
ASSUMETARGETDEFS
USERIDALIAS ogg
MAP fin.acct_tab, TARGET fin.account;
```

When including a long macro library in a parameter file, you can use the NOLIST parameter to suppress the listing of each macro in the Extract or Replicat report file. Listing can be turned on and off by placing the LIST and NOLIST parameters anywhere within the parameter file or within the macro library file. In the following example, NOLIST suppresses the listing of each macro in the hugelib macro library. Specifying LIST after the INCLUDE statement restores normal listing to the report file.

```
NOLIST
INCLUDE /ggs/dirprm/hugelib.mac
LIST
INCLUDE /ggs/dirprm/mdateilib.mac
REPLICAT REP
```

## 17.2.5 Tracing Macro Expansion

You can trace macro expansion with the CMDTRACE parameter. With CMDTRACE enabled, macro expansion steps are shown in the Extract or Replicat report file.

### Syntax

```
CMDTRACE [ON | OFF | DETAIL]
```

Where:

- ON enables tracing.
- OFF disables tracing.
- DETAIL produces a verbose display of macro expansion.

In the following example, tracing is enabled before #testmac is called, then disabled after the macro's execution.

```
REPLICAT REP
MACRO #testmac
BEGIN
COL1 = COL2,
COL3 = COL4,
END;
...
CMDTRACE ON
MAP test.table1, TARGET test.table2,
COLMAP (#testmac);
CMDTRACE OFF
```

## 17.3 Using User Exits to Extend Oracle GoldenGate Capabilities

User exits are custom routines that you write in C programming code and call during Extract or Replicat processing. User exits extend and customize the functionality of the Extract and Replicat processes with minimal complexity and risk. With user exits, you can respond to database events when they occur, without altering production programs.

### 17.3.1 When to Implement User Exits

You can employ user exits as an alternative to, or in conjunction with, the column-conversion functions that are available within Oracle GoldenGate. User exits can be a better alternative to the built-in functions because a user exit processes data only once (when the data is extracted) rather than twice (once when the data is extracted and once to perform the transformation).

The following are some ways in which you can implement user exits:

- Perform arithmetic operations, date conversions, or table lookups while mapping from one table to another.
- Implement record archival functions offline.
- Respond to unusual database events in custom ways, for example by sending an e-mail message or a page based on an output value.
- Accumulate totals and gather statistics.
- Manipulate a record.
- Repair invalid data.
- Calculate the net difference in a record before and after an update.
- Accept or reject records for extraction or replication based on complex criteria.
- Normalize a database during conversion.

### 17.3.2 Making Oracle GoldenGate Record Information Available to the Routine

The basis for most user exit processing is the `EXIT_CALL_PROCESS_RECORD` function. For Extract, this function is called just before a record buffer is output to the trail. For Replicat, it is called just before a record is applied to the target. If source-target mapping is specified in the parameter file, the `EXIT_CALL_PROCESS_RECORD` event takes place after the mapping is performed.

When `EXIT_CALL_PROCESS_RECORD` is called, the record buffer and other record information are available to it through callback routines. The user exit can map, transform, clean, or perform any other operation with the data record. When it is finished, the user exit can return a status indicating whether the record should be processed or ignored by Extract or Replicat.

### 17.3.3 Creating User Exits

The following instructions help you to create user exits on Windows and UNIX systems. For more information about the parameters and functions that are described in these instructions, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

---

**Note:** User exits are case-sensitive for database object names. Names are returned exactly as they are defined in the hosting database. Object names must be fully qualified.

---

#### To create user exits

1. In C code, create either a shared object (UNIX systems) or a DLL (Windows) and create or export a routine to be called from Extract or Replicat. This routine is the communication point between Oracle GoldenGate and your routines. Name the routine whatever you want. The routine must accept the following Oracle GoldenGate user exit parameters:

- EXIT\_CALL\_TYPE: Indicates when, during processing, the routine is called.
  - EXIT\_CALL\_RESULT: Provides a response to the routine.
  - EXIT\_PARAMS: Supplies information to the routine. This function enables you to use the EXITPARAM option of the TABLE or MAP statement to pass a parameter that is a literal string to the user exit. This is only valid during the exit call to process a specific record. This function also enables you to pass parameters specified with the PARAMS option of the CUSEREXIT parameter at the exit call startup.
2. In the source code, include the `usrdecs.h` file. The `usrdecs.h` file is the include file for the user exit API. It contains type definitions, return status values, callback function codes, and a number of other definitions. The `usrdecs.h` file is installed within the Oracle GoldenGate directory. Do not modify this file.
  3. Include Oracle GoldenGate callback routines in the user exit when applicable. Callback routines retrieve record and application context information, and they modify the contents of data records. To implement a callback routine, use the `ERCALLBACK` function in the shared object. The user callback routine behaves differently based on the function code that is passed to the callback routine.

```
ERCALLBACK (function_code, buffer, result_code);
```

Where:

- `function_code` is the function to be executed by the callback routine.
  - `buffer` is a void pointer to a buffer containing a predefined structure associated with the specified function code.
  - `result_code` is the status of the function that is executed by the callback routine. The result code that is returned by the callback routine indicates whether or not the callback function was successful.
  - On Windows systems, Extract and Replicat export the `ERCALLBACK` function that is to be called from the user exit routine. The user exit must explicitly load the callback function at run-time using the appropriate Windows API calls.
4. Include the `CUSEREXIT` parameter in your Extract or Replicat parameter file. This parameter accepts the name of the shared object or DLL and the name of the exported routine that is to be called from Extract or Replicat. You can specify the full path of the shared object or DLL or let the operating system's standard search strategy locate the shared object.

```
CUSEREXIT {DLL | shared_object} routine
[, PASSTHRU]
[, INCLUDEUPDATEBEFORES]
[, PARAMS 'startup_string']
```

Where:

- `DLL` is a Windows DLL and `shared_object` is a UNIX shared object that contains the user exit function.
- `PASSTHRU` allows the use of a user exit with a data pump that is operating in pass-through mode.
- `INCLUDEUPDATEBEFORES` gets before images for UPDATE operations.
- `PARAMS 'startup_string'` supplies a startup string, such as a startup parameter.

**Example 17–5 Example of Base Syntax, UNIX**

```
CUSEREXIT eruserexit.so MyUserExit
```

**Example 17–6 Example Base Syntax, Windows**

```
CUSEREXIT eruserexit.dll MyUserExit
```

### 17.3.4 Supporting Character-set Conversion in User Exits

To maintain data integrity, a user exit needs to understand the character set of the character-type data that it exchanges with an Oracle GoldenGate process. Oracle GoldenGate user exit logic provides globalization support for:

- character-based database metadata, such as the names of catalogs, schemas, tables, and columns
- the values of character-type columns, such as CHAR, VARCHAR2, CLOB, NCHAR, NVARCHAR2, and NCLOB, as well as string-based numbers, date-time, and intervals.

Properly converting between character sets allows column data to be compared, manipulated, converted, and mapped properly from one type of database and character set to another. Most of this processing is performed when the EXIT\_CALL\_PROCESS\_RECORD call type is called and the record buffer and other record information is made available through callback routines.

The user exit has its own session character set. This is defined by the GET\_SESSION\_CHARSET and SET\_SESSION\_CHARSET callback functions. The caller process provides conversion between character sets if the character set of the user exit is different from the hosting context of the process.

To enable this support in user exits, there is the GET\_DATABASE\_METADATA callback function code. This function enables the user exit to get database metadata, such as the locale and the character set of the character-type data that it exchanges with the process that calls it (Extract, data pump, Replicat). It also returns how the database treats the case-sensitivity of object names, how it treats quoted and unquoted names, and how it stores object names.

For more information about these components, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

### 17.3.5 Using Macros to Check Name Metadata

The object name that is passed by the user exit API is the exact name that is encoded in the user-exit session character set, and exactly the same name that is retrieved from the database. If the user exit compares the object name with a literal string, the user exit must retrieve the database locale and then normalize the string so that it is compared with the object name in the same encoding.

Oracle GoldenGate provides the following macros that can be called by the user exit to check the metadata of database object names. For example, a macro can be used to check whether a quoted table name is case-sensitive and whether it is stored as mixed-case in the database server. These macros are defined in the usrdecs.h file.

**Table 17–4 Macros for metadata checking**

Macro	What it verifies
supportsMixedCaseIdentifiers( nameMeta, DbObjType )	Whether the database treats a mixed-case unquoted name of a specified data type as case-sensitive and stores the name in mixed case.

**Table 17–4 (Cont.) Macros for metadata checking**

<b>Macro</b>	<b>What it verifies</b>
<code>supportsMixedCaseQuotedIdentifiers( nameMeta, DbObjType )</code>	Whether the database treats the mixed-case quoted name of a specified data type as case-sensitive and stores the name in mixed case.
<code>storesLowerCaseIdentifiers( nameMeta, DbObjType )</code>	Whether the database treats the mixed-case unquoted name of a specified data type as case-insensitive and stores the name in lower case.
<code>storesLowerCaseQuotedIdentifiers( nameMeta, DbObjType )</code>	Whether the database treats the mixed-case quoted name of a specified data type as case-insensitive and stores the name in lower case.
<code>storesMixedCaseIdentifiers( nameMeta, DbObjType )</code>	Whether the database treats the mixed-case unquoted name of a specified data type as case-insensitive and stores the name in mixed case.
<code>storesMixedCaseQuotedIdentifiers( nameMeta, DbObjType )</code>	Whether the database treats the mixed-case quoted name of a specified data type as case-insensitive and stores the name in mixed case.
<code>storesUpperCaseIdentifiers( nameMeta, DbObjType )</code>	Whether the database treats the mixed-case unquoted name of a specified data type as case-insensitive and stores the name in upper case.
<code>storesUpperCaseQuotedIdentifiers( nameMeta, DbObjType )</code>	Whether the database treats the mixed-case quoted name of a specified data type as case-insensitive and stores the name in upper case.

### 17.3.6 Describing the Character Format

The input parameter `column_value_mode` describes the character format of the data that is being processed and is used in several of the function codes. The following table describes the meaning of the `EXIT_FN_RAW_FORMAT`, `EXIT_FN_CHAR_FORMAT`, and `EXIT_FN_CNVTED_SESS_FORMAT` format codes, per data type.

**Table 17-5 column\_value\_mode\_matrix Meanings**

<b>Data Type</b>	<b>EXIT_FN_RAW_FORMAT</b>	<b>EXIT_FN_CHAR_FORMAT</b>	<b>EXIT_FN_CNVTED_SESS_FORMAT</b>
CHAR "abc"	2-byte null indicator + 2-byte length info + column value 0000 0004 61 62 63 20	"abc" encoded in ASCII or EBCDIC. NULL terminated. Tailing spaces are trimmed.	"abc" encoded in user exit session character set. NOT NULL terminated. Tailing spaces are trimmed by default unless the GLOBALS parameter NOTRIMSPACES is specified.
NCHAR 0061 0062 0063 0020	2-byte null indicator + 2-byte length info + column value. 0000 0008 00 61 0062 0063 0020	"abc" (encoded in UTF8) or truncated at the first byte, depending on whether NCHAR is treated as UTF-8. NULL terminated. Trailing spaces are trimmed.	"abc" encoded in user exit session character set. NOT NULL terminated. Tailing spaces are trimmed by default unless the GLOBALS parameter NOTRIMSPACES is specified.
VARCHAR2 "abc"	2-byte null indicator + 2-byte length info + column value	"abc" encoded in ASCII or EBCDIC. NULL terminated. No trimming.	"abc" encoded in user exit session character set. NOT NULL terminated. No trimming.
NVARCHAR2 0061 0062 0063 0020	2-byte null indicator + 2-byte length info + column value	"abc" (encoded in UTF8) or truncated at the first byte, depending on whether NVARCHAR2 is treated as UTF-8. NULL terminated. No trimming.	"abc" encoded in user exit session character set. NOT NULL terminated. No trimming.
CLOB	2-byte null indicator + 2-byte length info + column value	Similar to VARCHAR2, but only output up to 4K bytes. NULL Terminated. No trimming.	Similar to VARCHAR2, but only output data requested in user exit session character set. NOT NULL terminated. No trimming.
NCLOB	2-byte null indicator + 2-byte length info + column value	Similar to NVARCHAR2, but only output up to 4K bytes. NULL terminated. No trimming.	Similar to NVARCHAR2, but only output data requested in user exit session character set. NOT NULL terminated. No trimming.
NUMBER 123 . 89	2-byte null indicator + 2-byte length info + column value	"123.89" encoded in ASCII or EBCDIC. NULL terminated.	"123.89" encoded in user exit session character set. NOT NULL terminated.
DATE 31-May-11	2-byte null indicator + 2-byte length info + column value	"2011-05-31" encoded in ASCII or EBCDIC. NULL terminated.	"2011-05-31" encoded in user exit session character set. NOT NULL terminated.

**Table 17–5 (Cont.) column\_value\_mode\_matrix Meanings**

Data Type	EXIT_FN_RAW_FORMAT	EXIT_FN_CHAR_FORMAT	EXIT_FN_CNVTED_SESS_FORMAT
TIMESTAMP 31-May-11 12.00.00 AM	2-byte null indicator + 2-byte length info + column value	"2011-05-31 12.00.00 AM" encoded in ASCII or EBCDIC. NULL terminated.	"2011-05-31 12.00.00 AM" encoded in user exit session character set. NOT NULL terminated.
Interval Year to Month or Interval Day to Second	2-byte null indicator + 2-byte length info + column value	NA	NA
RAW	2-byte null indicator + 2-byte length info + column value	2-byte null indicator + 2-byte length info + column value	2-byte null indicator + 2-byte length info + column value

### 17.3.7 Upgrading User Exits

The `usrdecs.h` file is versioned to allow backward compatibility with existing user exits when enhancements or upgrades, such as new functions or structural changes, are added to a new Oracle GoldenGate release. The version of the `usrdecs.h` file is printed in the report file at the startup of Replicat or Extract.

To use new user exit functionality, you must recompile your routines to include the new `usrdecs` file. Routines that do not use new features do not need to be recompiled.

### 17.3.8 Viewing Examples of How to Use the User Exit Functions

Oracle GoldenGate installs the following sample user exit files into the `UserExitExamples` directory of the Oracle GoldenGate installation directory:

- `exitdemo.c` shows how to initialize the user exit, issue callbacks at given exit points, and modify data. It also demonstrates how to retrieve the fully qualified table name or a specific metadata part, such as the name of the catalog or container, or the schema, or just the unqualified table name. In addition, this demo shows how to process DDL data. The demo is not specific to any database type.
- `exitdemo_utf16.c` shows how to use UTF16-encoded data (both metadata and column data) in the callback structures for information exchanged between the user exit and the caller process.
- `exitdemo_passthru.c` shows how the `PASSTHRU` option of the `CUSEREXIT` parameter can be used in an Extract data pump.
- `exitdemo_more_recs.c` shows an example of how to use the same input record multiple times to generate several target records.
- `exitdemo_lob.c` shows an example of how to get read access to LOB data.
- `exitdemo_pk_befores.c` shows how to access the before and after image portions of a primary key update record, as well as the before images of regular updates (non-key updates). It also shows how to get target row values with `SQLEXEC` in the Replicat parameter file as a means for conflict detection. The resulting fetched values from the target are mapped as the target record when it enters the user exit.

Each directory contains the `*.c` files as well as makefiles and a `readme.txt` file.

## 17.4 Using the Oracle GoldenGate Event Marker System to Raise Database Events

Oracle GoldenGate provides an event marker system, also known as the event marker infrastructure (EMI), which enables the Oracle GoldenGate processes to take a defined action based on an *event record* in the transaction log or in the trail (depending on the data source of the process). The event record is a record that satisfies a specific filter criterion for which you want an action to occur. You can use this system to customize Oracle GoldenGate processing based on database events.

For example, you can use the event marker system to start, suspend, or stop a process, to perform a transformation, or to report statistics. The event marker system can be put to use for purposes such as:

- To establish a synchronization point at which SQLEXEC or user exit functions can be performed
- To execute a shell command that executes a data validation script or sends an email
- To activate tracing when a specific account number is detected
- To capture lag history
- To stop or suspend a process to run reports or batch processes at the end of the day

The event marker feature is supported for the replication of data changes, but not for initial loads.

The system requires the following input components:

1. The *event record* that triggers the action can be specified with FILTER, WHERE, or SQLEXEC in a TABLE or MAP statement. Alternatively, a special TABLE statement in a Replicat parameter file enables you to perform EVENTACTIONS actions without mapping a source table to a target table.
2. In the TABLE or MAP statement where you specify the event record, include the EVENTACTIONS parameter with the appropriate option to specify the action that is to be taken by the process.

You can combine EVENTACTIONS options, as shown in the following examples.

The following causes the process to issue a checkpoint, log an informational message, and ignore the entire transaction (without processing any of it), plus generate a report.

```
EVENTACTIONS (CP BEFORE, REPORT, LOG, IGNORE TRANSACTION)
```

The following writes the event record to the discard file and ignores the entire transaction.

```
EVENTACTIONS (DISCARD, IGNORE TRANS)
```

The following logs an informational message and gracefully stop the process.

```
EVENTACTIONS (LOG INFO, STOP)
```

The following rolls over the trail file and does not write the event record to the new file.

```
EVENTACTIONS (ROLLOVER, IGNORE)
```

For syntax details and additional usage instructions, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 17.4.1 Case Studies in the Usage of the Event Marker System

These examples highlight some use cases for the event marker system. For syntax details and additional usage instructions, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

### 17.4.1.1 Trigger End-of-day Processing

This example specifies the capture of operations that are performed on a special table named `event_table` in the source database. This table exists solely for the purpose of receiving inserts at a predetermined time, for example at 5:00 P.M. every day. When Replicat receives the transaction record for this operation, it stops gracefully to allow operators to start end-of-day processing jobs. By using the insert on the `event_table` table every day, the operators know that Replicat has applied all committed transactions up to 5:00. `IGNORE` causes Replicat to ignore the event record itself, because it has no purpose in the target database. `LOG INFO` causes Replicat to log an informational message about the operation.

```
TABLE source.event_table, EVENTACTIONS (IGNORE, LOG INFO, STOP);
```

### 17.4.1.2 Simplify Transition from Initial Load to Change Synchronization

Event actions and event tables can be used to help with the transition from an initial load to ongoing change replication. For example, suppose an existing, populated source table must be added to the Oracle GoldenGate configuration. This table must be created on the target, and then the two must be synchronized by using an export/import. This example assumes that an event table named `source.event_table` exists in the source database and is specified in a Replicat `TABLE` statement.

```
TABLE source.event_table, EVENTACTIONS (IGNORE, LOG INFO, STOP);
```

To allow users to continue working with the new source table, it is added to the Extract parameter file, but not to the Replicat parameter file. Extract begins capturing data from this table to the trail, where it is stored.

At the point where the source and target are read-consistent after the export, an event record is inserted into the event table on the source, which propagates to the target. When Replicat receives the event record (marking the read-consistent point), the process stops as directed by `EVENTACTIONS STOP`. This allows the new table to be added to the Replicat `MAP` statement. Replicat can be positioned to start replication from the timestamp of the event record, eliminating the need to use the `HANDLECOLLISIONS` parameter. Operations in the trail from before the event record can be ignored because it is known that they were applied in the export.

The event record itself is ignored by Replicat, but an informational message is logged.

### 17.4.1.3 Stop Processing When Data Anomalies are Encountered

This example uses `ABORT` to stop Replicat immediately with a fatal error if an anomaly is detected in a bank record, where the customer withdraws more money than the account contains. In this case, the source table is mapped to a target table in a Replicat `MAP` statement for actual replication to the target. A `TABLE` statement is also used for the source table, so that the `ABORT` action stops Replicat before it applies the anomaly to the target database. `ABORT` takes precedence over processing the record.

```
MAP source.account, TARGET target.account;
TABLE source.account, FILTER (withdrawal > balance), EVENTACTIONS (ABORT);
```

#### 17.4.1.4 Use a Heartbeat Table and Logging to Analyze Lag

This example shows how to configure log actions. A heartbeat table is periodically updated with the current time in the source database. The updates to the heartbeat table are captured and written to the trail by Extract. Using the heartbeat record as the event record, Replicat logs messages based on lag calculations in two different MAP statements with FILTER clauses.

```
ALLOWDUPTARGETMAPS
MAP source.heartbeat, TARGET target.heartbeat, &
FILTER ( &
@DATEDIFF ('SS', hb_timestamp, @DATENOW ()) > 60 AND &
@DATEDIFF ('SS', hb_timestamp, @DATENOW ()) < 120), &
EVENTACTIONS (LOG INFO);
MAP source.heartbeat, TARGET target.heartbeat, &
FILTER (@DATEDIFF ('SS', hb_timestamp, @DATENOW ()) > 120), &
EVENTACTIONS (LOG WARNING);
```

In the first FILTER clause, an informational message is written if the lag exceeds 60 seconds but is less than 120 seconds. In the second FILTER clause, a warning message is logged if the lag exceeds 120 seconds.

In this example, the heartbeat record is also written to a heartbeat audit table in the target database, which can be used for historical lag analysis. An alternate option would be to IGNORE or DISCARD the heartbeat record.

---

**Note:** ALLOWDUPTARGETMAPS is used because there are duplicate MAP statements for the same source and target objects.

---

#### 17.4.1.5 Trace a Specific Order Number

The following example enables Replicat tracing only for an order transaction that contains an insert operation for a specific order number (order\_no = 1). The trace information is written to the order\_1.trc trace file. The MAP parameter specifies the mapping of the source table to the target table.

```
MAP sales.order, TARGET rpt.order;
TABLE source.order,
FILTER (@GETENV ('GGHEADER', 'OPTYPE') = 'INSERT' AND order_no = 1), &
EVENTACTIONS (TRACE order_1.trc TRANSACTION);
```

#### 17.4.1.6 Execute a Batch Process

In this example, a batch process executes once a month to clear the source database of accumulated data. At the beginning of the transaction, typically a batch transaction, a record is written to a special job table to indicate that the batch job is starting.

TRANSACTION is used with IGNORE to specify that the entire transaction must be ignored by Extract, because the target system does not need to reflect the deleted records. By ignoring the work on the Extract side, unnecessary trail and network overhead is eliminated.

```
TABLE source.job, FILTER (@streq (job_type = 'HOUSEKEEPING')=1), &
EVENTACTIONS (IGNORE TRANSACTION);
```

---

**Note:** If a logical batch delete were to be composed of multiple smaller batches, each smaller batch would require an insert into the job table as the first record in the transaction.

---

#### 17.4.1.7 Propagate Only a SQL Statement without the Resultant Operations

This example shows how different EVENTACTIONS clauses can be used in combination on the source and target to replicate just a SQL statement rather than the operations that result from that statement. In this case, it is an `INSERT INTO...SELECT` transaction. Such a transaction could generate millions of rows that would need to be propagated, but with this method, all that is propagated is the initial SQL statement to reduce trail and network overhead. The `SELECTs` are all performed on the target. This configuration requires perfectly synchronized source and target tables in order to maintain data integrity.

Extract:

```
TABLE source.statement, EVENTACTIONS (IGNORE TRANS INCLUDEEVENT);
```

Replicat:

```
TABLE source.statement, SQLEXEC (execute SQL statement), &
EVENTACTIONS (INFO, IGNORE);
```

To use this configuration, a statement table is populated with the first operation in the transaction, that being the `INSERT INTO...SELECT`, which becomes the event record.

---

**Note:** For large SQL statements, the statement can be written to multiple columns in the table. For example, eight `VARCHAR (4000)` columns could be used to store SQL statements up to 32 KB in length.

---

Because of the `IGNORE TRANS INCLUDEEVENT`, Extract ignores all of the subsequent inserts that are associated with the `SELECT` portion of the statement, but writes the event record that contains the SQL text to the trail. Using a `TABLE` statement, Replicat passes the event record to a `SQLEXEC` statement that concatenates the SQL text columns, if necessary, and executes the `INSERT INTO...SELECT` statement using the target tables as the input for the `SELECT` sub-query.

#### 17.4.1.8 Committing Other Transactions Before Starting a Long-running Transaction

This use of `EVENTACTIONS` ensures that all open transactions that are being processed by Replicat get committed to the target before the start of a long running transaction. It forces Replicat to write a checkpoint before beginning work on the large transaction. Forcing a checkpoint constrains any potential recovery to just the long running transaction. Because a Replicat checkpoint implies a commit to the database, it frees any outstanding locks and makes the pending changes visible to other sessions.

```
TABLE source.batch_table, EVENTACTIONS (CHECKPOINT BEFORE);
```

#### 17.4.1.9 Execute a Shell Script to Validate Data

This example executes a shell script that runs another script that validates data after Replicat applies the last transaction in a test run. On the source, an event record is written to an event table named `source.event`. The record inserts the value `COMPARE` into the `event_type` column of the event table, and this record gets replicated at the end of the other test data. In the `TABLE` statement in the Replicat parameter file, the `FILTER` clause qualifies the record and then triggers the shell script `compare_db.sh` to run as specified by `SHELL` in the `EVENTACTIONS` clause. After that, Replicat stops immediately as specified by `FORCESTOP`.

Extract:

```
TABLE src.*;
TABLE test.event;

Replicat:

MAP src.* , TARGET targ.*;
MAP test.event, TARGET test.event, FILTER (@streq (event_type, 'COMPARE')=1), &
EVENTACTIONS (SHELL 'compare_db.sh', FORCESTOP);
```



---

## Monitoring Oracle GoldenGate Processing

This chapter describes the monitoring of Oracle GoldenGate processing.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Using the Information Commands in GGSCI](#)
- [Monitoring an Extract Recovery](#)
- [Monitoring Lag](#)
- [Monitoring Processing Volume](#)
- [Using the Error Log](#)
- [Using the Process Report](#)
- [Using the Discard File](#)
- [Maintaining the Discard and Report Files](#)
- [Using the System Logs](#)
- [Reconciling Time Differences](#)
- [Sending Event Messages to a NonStop System](#)
- [Getting Help with Performance Tuning](#)

### 18.1 Using the Information Commands in GGSCI

The primary way to view processing information is through GGSCI. For more information about these commands, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

**Table 18–1 Commands to View Process Information**

Command	What it shows
INFO {EXTRACT   REPLICAT} group [DETAIL]	Run status, checkpoints, approximate lag, and environmental information.
INFO MANAGER	Run status and port number
INFO ALL	INFO output for all Oracle GoldenGate processes on the system
STATS {EXTRACT   REPLICAT} group	Statistics on processing volume, such as number of operations performed.
STATUS {EXTRACT   REPLICAT} group	Run status (starting, running, stopped, abended)
STATUS MANAGER	Run status

**Table 18–1 (Cont.) Commands to View Process Information**

<b>Command</b>	<b>What it shows</b>
LAG {EXTRACT   REPLICAT} group	Latency between last record processed and timestamp in the data source
INFO {EXTTRAIL   RMTTRAIL} trail	Name of associated process, position of last data processed, maximum file size
SEND MANAGER	Run status, information about child processes, port information, trail purge settings
SEND {EXTRACT   REPLICAT} group	Depending on the process and selected options, returns information about memory pool, lag, TCP statistics, long-running transactions, process status, recovery progress, and more.
VIEW REPORT group	Contents of the discard file or process report
VIEW GGSEVT	Contents of the Oracle GoldenGate error log
COMMAND ER wildcard	Information dependent on the <i>COMMAND</i> type: INFO LAG SEND STATS STATUS  <i>wildcard</i> is a wildcard specification for the process groups to be affected, for example: INFO ER ext* STATS ER *

## 18.2 Monitoring an Extract Recovery

**Note:** This topic applies to all types of databases except Oracle, for which a different recovery mechanism known as *Bounded Recovery* is used. For more information, see the *BR* parameter in *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

If Extract abends when a long-running transaction is open, it can seem to take a long time to recover when it is started again. To recover its processing state, Extract must search back through the online and archived logs (if necessary) to find the first log record for that long-running transaction. The farther back in time that the transaction started, the longer the recovery takes, in general, and Extract can appear to be stalled.

To confirm that Extract is recovering properly, use the SEND EXTRACT command with the STATUS option. One of the following status notations appears, and you can follow the progress as Extract changes its log read position over the course of the recovery.

- In recovery[1] – Extract is recovering to its checkpoint in the transaction log.
- In recovery[2] – Extract is recovering from its checkpoint to the end of the trail.
- Recovery complete – The recovery is finished, and normal processing will resume.

## 18.3 Monitoring Lag

Lag statistics show you how well the Oracle GoldenGate processes are keeping pace with the amount of data that is being generated by the business applications. With this information, you can diagnose suspected problems and tune the performance of the Oracle GoldenGate processes to minimize the latency between the source and target databases. See [Section 19, "Tuning the Performance of Oracle GoldenGate"](#) for help with tuning Oracle GoldenGate to minimize lag.

### 18.3.1 About Lag

For Extract, lag is the difference, in seconds, between the time that a record was processed by Extract (based on the system clock) and the timestamp of that record in the data source.

For Replicat, lag is the difference, in seconds, between the time that the last record was processed by Replicat (based on the system clock) and the timestamp of the record in the trail.

To view lag statistics, use either the `LAG` or `SEND` command in GGSCI. For more information, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

---

**Note:** The `INFO` command also returns a lag statistic, but this statistic is taken from the last record that was checkpointed, not the current record that is being processed. It is less accurate than `LAG` or `INFO`.

---

### 18.3.2 Controlling How Lag is Reported

Use the `LAGREPORTMINUTES` or `LAGREPORTHOURS` parameter to specify the interval at which Manager checks for Extract and Replicat lag. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

Use the `LAGCRITICALSECONDS`, `LAGCRITICALMINUTES`, or `LAGCRITICALHOURS` parameter to specify a lag threshold that is considered critical, and to force a warning message to the error log when the threshold is reached. This parameter affects Extract and Replicat processes on the local system. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

Use the `LAGINFOSECONDS`, `LAGINFOMINUTES`, or `LAGINFOHOURS` parameter to specify a lag threshold; if lag exceeds the specified value, Oracle GoldenGate reports lag information to the error log. If the lag exceeds the value specified with the `LAGCRITICAL` parameter, Manager reports the lag as critical; otherwise, it reports the lag as an informational message. A value of zero (0) forces a message at the frequency specified with the `LAGREPORTMINUTES` or `LAGREPORTHOURS` parameter. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 18.4 Monitoring Processing Volume

The `STATS` commands in GGSCI show you the amount of data that is being processed by an Oracle GoldenGate process, and how fast it is being moved through the Oracle GoldenGate system. With this information, you can diagnose suspected problems and tune the performance of the Oracle GoldenGate processes. These commands provide a variety of options to select and filter the output.

The `STATS` commands are: `STATS EXTRACT`, `STATS REPLICAT`, or `STATS ER` command. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

You can send interim statistics to the report file at any time with the SEND EXTRACT or SEND REPLICAT command with the REPORT option. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 18.5 Using the Error Log

Use the Oracle GoldenGate error log to view:

- a history of GGSCI commands
- Oracle GoldenGate processes that started and stopped
- processing that was performed
- errors that occurred
- informational and warning messages

Because the error log shows events as they occurred in sequence, it is a good tool for detecting the cause (or causes) of an error. For example, you might discover that:

- someone stopped a process
- a process failed to make a TCP/IP or database connection
- a process could not open a file

To view the error log, use any of the following:

- Standard shell command to view the ggserr.log file within the root Oracle GoldenGate directory
- Oracle GoldenGate Director or Oracle GoldenGate Monitor
- VIEW GGSEVT command in GGSCI. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

Because the error log will continue to grow as you use Oracle GoldenGate, consider archiving and deleting the oldest entries in the file.

## 18.6 Using the Process Report

Use the process report to view (depending on the process):

- parameters in use
- table and column mapping
- database information
- runtime messages and errors
- runtime statistics for the number of operations processed

Every Extract, Replicat, and Manager process generates a report file. The report can help you diagnose problems that occurred during the run, such as invalid mapping syntax, SQL errors, and connection errors.

To view a process report, use any of the following:

- standard shell command for viewing a text file
- Oracle GoldenGate Director or Oracle GoldenGate Monitor
- VIEW REPORT command in GGSCI. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

- To view information if a process abends without generating a report, use the following command to run the process from the command shell of the operating system (not GGSCI) to send the information to the terminal.

```
process paramfile path.prm
```

Where:

- The value for *process* is either *extract* or *replicat*.
- The value for *path.prm* is the fully qualified name of the parameter file, for example:

```
replicat paramfile /ogg/dirdat/repora.prm
```

By default, reports have a file extension of *.rpt*, for example *EXTORA.rpt*. The default location is the *drrprt* sub-directory of the Oracle GoldenGate directory. However, these properties can be changed when the group is created. Once created, a report file must remain in its original location for Oracle GoldenGate to operate properly after processing has started.

To determine the name and location of a process report, use the *INFO EXTRACT*, *INFO REPLICAT*, or *INFO MANAGER* command in GGSCI. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

### 18.6.1 Scheduling Runtime Statistics in the Process Report

By default, runtime statistics are written to the report once, at the end of each run. For long or continuous runs, you can use optional parameters to view these statistics on a regular basis, without waiting for the end of the run.

To set a schedule for reporting runtime statistics, use the *REPORT* parameter in the Extract or Replicat parameter file to specify a day and time to generate runtime statistics in the report. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

To send runtime statistics to the report on demand, use the *SEND EXTRACT* or *SEND REPLICAT* command with the *REPORT* option to view current runtime statistics when needed. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

### 18.6.2 Viewing Record Counts in the Process Report

Use the *REPORTCOUNT* parameter to report a count of transaction records that Extract or Replicat processed since startup. Each transaction record represents a logical database operation that was performed within a transaction that was captured by Oracle GoldenGate. The record count is printed to the report file and to the screen. For more information, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

### 18.6.3 Preventing SQL Errors from Filling the Replicat Report File

Use the *WARNRATE* parameter to set a threshold for the number of SQL errors that can be tolerated on any target table before being reported to the process report and to the error log. The errors are reported as a warning. If your environment can tolerate a large number of these errors, increasing *WARNRATE* helps to minimize the size of those files. For more information, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 18.7 Using the Discard File

By default, a discard file is generated whenever a process is started with the *START* command through GGSCI. The discard file captures information about Oracle

GoldenGate operations that failed. This information can help you resolve data errors, such as those that involve invalid column mapping.

The discard file reports such information as:

- The database error message
- The sequence number of the data source or trail file
- The relative byte address of the record in the data source or trail file
- The details of the discarded operation, such as column values of a DML statement or the text of a DDL statement.

To view the discard file, use a text editor or use the `VIEW REPORT` command in GGSCI. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

The default discard file has the following properties:

- The file is named after the process that creates it, with a default extension of `.dsc`. Example: `finance.dsc`.
- The file is created in the `dirrpt` sub-directory of the Oracle GoldenGate installation directory.
- The maximum file size is 50 megabytes.
- At startup, if a discard file exists, it is purged before new data is written.

You can change these properties by using the `DISCARDFILE` parameter. You can disable the use of a discard file by using the `NODISCARDFILE` parameter. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

If a process is started from the command line of the operating system, it does not generate a discard file by default. You can use the `DISCARDFILE` parameter to specify the use of a discard file and its properties.

Once created, a discard file must remain in its original location for Oracle GoldenGate to operate properly after processing has started.

## 18.8 Maintaining the Discard and Report Files

By default, discard files and report files are aged the same way. A new discard or report file is created at the start of a new process run. Old files are aged by appending a sequence number from 0 (the most recent) to 9 (the oldest) to their names.

If the active report or discard file reaches its maximum file size before the end of a run (or over a continuous run), the process abends unless there is an aging schedule in effect. Use the `DISCARDROLLOVER` and `REPORTROLLOVER` parameters to set aging schedules for the discard and report files respectively. These parameters set instructions for rolling over the files at regular intervals, in addition to when the process starts. Not only does this control the size of the files and prevent process outages, but it also provides a predictable set of archives that can be included in your archiving routine. For more information, see the following documentation:

- *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*
- *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*

No process ever has more than ten aged reports or discard files and one active report or discard file. After the tenth aged file, the oldest is deleted when a new report is created. It is recommended that you establish an archiving schedule for aged reports and discard files in case they are needed to resolve a service request.

**Table 18–2 Current Extract and Manager Reports Plus Aged Reports**

Permissions	X	Date	Report
-rw-rw-rw-	1 ggs ggs	1193 Oct 11 14:59	MGR.rpt
-rw-rw-rw-	1 ggs ggs	3996 Oct 5 14:02	MGR0.rpt
-rw-rw-rw-	1 ggs ggs	4384 Oct 5 14:02	TCUST.rpt
-rw-rw-rw-	1 ggs ggs	1011 Sep 27 14:10	TCUST0.rpt
-rw-rw-rw-	1 ggs ggs	3184 Sep 27 14:10	TCUST1.rpt
-rw-rw-rw-	1 ggs ggs	2655 Sep 27 14:06	TCUST2.rpt
-rw-rw-rw-	1 ggs ggs	2655 Sep 27 14:04	TCUST3.rpt
-rw-rw-rw-	1 ggs ggs	2744 Sep 27 13:56	TCUST4.rpt
-rw-rw-rw-	1 ggs ggs	3571 Aug 29 14:27	TCUST5.rpt

## 18.9 Using the System Logs

Oracle GoldenGate writes errors that are generated at the level of the operating system to the Event Viewer on Windows or to the syslog on UNIX and Linux. Oracle GoldenGate events are basically the same format in the UNIX, Linux, and Windows system logs. Oracle GoldenGate errors that appear in the system logs also appear in the Oracle GoldenGate error log.

On UNIX and Linux, Oracle GoldenGate messaging to the syslog is enabled by default. On Windows, Oracle GoldenGate messaging to the Event Viewer must be installed by registering the Oracle GoldenGate message DLL during the installation process. You can add this functionality at any time by running the `install` program with the `addevents` option. This program is stored in the root of the Oracle GoldenGate directory.

Use the `SYSLOG` parameter to control the types of messages that Oracle GoldenGate sends to the system logs on a Windows or UNIX system. You can:

- include all Oracle GoldenGate messages
- suppress all Oracle GoldenGate messages
- filter to include information, warning, or error messages, or any combination of those types

You can use `SYSLOG` as a `GLOBALS` or `Manager` parameter, or both. For more information, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 18.10 Reconciling Time Differences

To account for time differences between source and target systems, use the `TCPSOURCETIMER` parameter in the Extract parameter file. This parameter adjusts the timestamps of replicated records for reporting purposes, making it easier to interpret synchronization lag. For more information, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 18.11 Sending Event Messages to a NonStop System

Event messages created by Collector and Replicat processes on a Windows or UNIX system can be captured and sent to EMS on NonStop systems. This feature enables

centralized viewing of Oracle GoldenGate messages across platforms. To use this feature, there are two procedures:

- Run the EMS client on the Windows or UNIX system
- Start a Collector process on the NonStop system

### 18.11.1 Running EMSCLNT on a Windows or UNIX System

The EMSCLNT utility captures Oracle GoldenGate event messages that originate on a Windows or UNIX system and sends them to a TCP/IP Collector process on the NonStop system. EMSCLNT reads a designated error log and runs indefinitely, waiting for more messages to send.

Run emsclnt from the Oracle GoldenGate directory on the Windows or UNIX system, using the following syntax:

```
emsclnt -h host_name | IP_address  
-p port_number  
-f file_name  
-c Collector
```

Where:

- `-h host_name | IP_address` is either the name or IP address of the NonStop server to which EMS messages will be sent.
- `-p port_number` is the port number of the NonStop Collector process.
- `-f file_name` is the name of the local file from which to distribute error messages. Use the full path name if the file resides somewhere other than the Oracle GoldenGate directory.
- `-c Collector` is the EMS Collector for this client.

The following Windows example, executed from the DOS prompt, reads the file `D:\ogg\ggserr.log` for error messages. Error messages are sent to the Collector on NonStop host `myhost.us.example.com` listening on port 9876. The Collector process on NonStop writes formatted messages to EMS Collector \$0.

#### **Example 18–1 Reading the Log File for Error Messages (Windows)**

```
> emsclnt -h myhost.us.example.com -p 9876 -f d:\ogg\ggserr.log -c $0
```

The following UNIX example reads the file `ggserr.log` for error messages. Error messages are sent to the Collector on the NonStop server at IP address 10.0.0.0 listening on port 7850. The Collector on NonStop writes formatted messages to ems Collector \$0.

#### **Example 18–2 Reading the Log File for Error Messages (UNIX)**

```
emsclnt -h 10.0.0.0 -p 7850 -f ggserr.log -c '$0'
```

---

**Note:** Because the dollar sign on UNIX denotes a variable, the \$0 must be within single quotes.

---

### 18.11.2 Running the Collector on NonStop

The Collector on the NonStop system (called Server-Collector on that platform) collects and distributes the ems messages. To start the Collector, run the server

program. For each EMSCLNT process that you will be running on a Windows or UNIX system, start one server process on the NonStop system.

For example, the following runs server and outputs messages to \$DATA1.GGSERRS.SERVLOG.

```
> ASSIGN STDERR, $DATA1.GGSERRS.SERVLOG  
> RUN SERVER /NOWAIT/ -p 7880
```

See *Administering Oracle GoldenGate for Mainframe for HP NonStop Guardian* for more information about running Collector on NonStop.

## 18.12 Getting Help with Performance Tuning

See [Chapter 19, "Tuning the Performance of Oracle GoldenGate"](#) for help with tuning the performance of Oracle GoldenGate.



---

## Tuning the Performance of Oracle GoldenGate

This chapter contains suggestions for improving the performance of Oracle GoldenGate components.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Using Multiple Process Groups](#)
- [Splitting large tables into row ranges across process groups](#)
- [Configuring Oracle GoldenGate to use the network efficiently](#)
- [Eliminating disk I/O bottlenecks](#)
- [Managing Virtual Memory and Paging](#)
- [Optimizing data filtering and conversion](#)
- [Tuning Replicat transactions](#)

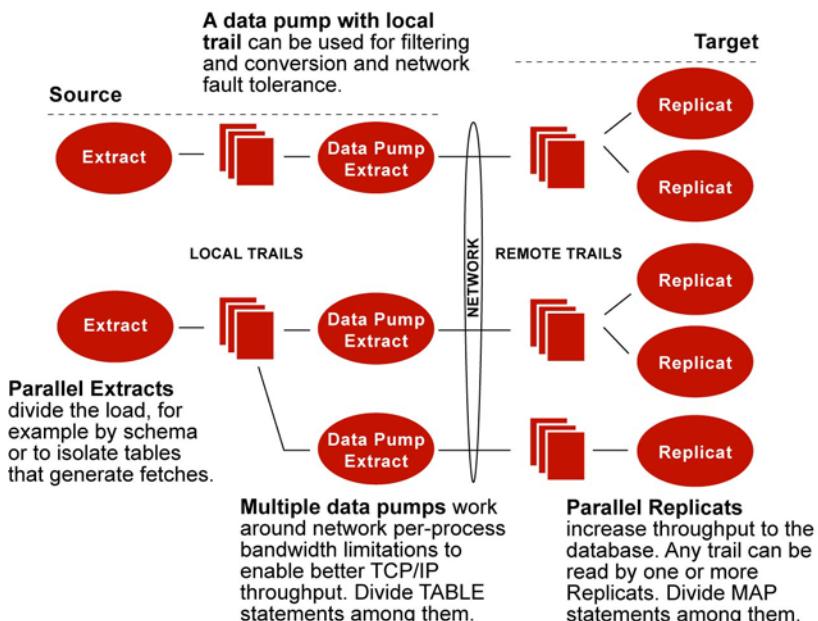
### 19.1 Using Multiple Process Groups

Typically, only one Extract group is required to efficiently capture from a database. However, depending on the database size and type, or the data and operation types, you may find that you are required to add one or more Extract group to the configuration.

Similarly, only one Replicat group is typically needed to apply data to a target database if using Replicat in coordinated mode. (See [Section 14.7.2, "About Coordinated Replicat Mode"](#) for more information.) However, even in some cases when using Replicat in coordinated mode, you may be required to use multiple Replicat groups. If you are using Replicat in classic mode and your applications generate a high transaction volume, you probably will need to use parallel Replicat groups.

Because each Oracle GoldenGate component — Extract, data pump, trail, Replicat — is an independent module, you can combine them in ways that suit your needs. You can use multiple trails and parallel Extract and Replicat processes (with or without data pumps) to handle large transaction volume, improve performance, eliminate bottlenecks, reduce latency, or isolate the processing of specific data.

[Figure 19-1](#) shows some of the ways that you can configure Oracle GoldenGate to improve throughput speed and overcome network bandwidth issues.

**Figure 19–1 Load-balancing configurations that improve performance**

## 19.1.1 Considerations for using multiple process groups

Before configuring multiple processing groups, review the following considerations to ensure that your configuration produces the desired results and maintains data integrity.

### 19.1.1.1 Maintaining data integrity

Not all workloads can be partitioned across multiple groups and still preserve the original transaction atomicity. You must determine whether the objects in one group will ever have dependencies on objects in any other group, transactional or otherwise. For example, tables for which the workload routinely updates the primary key cannot easily be partitioned in this manner. DDL replication (if supported for the database) is not viable in this mode, nor is the use of some SQLLEXEC or EVENTACTIONS features that base their actions on a specific record.

If your tables do not have any foreign-key dependencies or updates to primary keys, you may be able to use multiple processes. Keep related DML together in the same process stream to ensure data integrity.

### 19.1.1.2 Number of groups

The number of concurrent Extract and Replicat process groups that can run on a system depends on how much system memory is available. Each Extract and Replicat process needs approximately 25-55 MB of memory, or more depending on the size of the transactions and the number of concurrent transactions.

The Oracle GoldenGate GGSCI command interface fully supports up to 5,000 concurrent Extract and Replicat groups per instance of Oracle GoldenGate Manager. At the supported level, all groups can be controlled and viewed in full with GGSCI commands such as the INFO and STATUS commands. Beyond the supported level, group information is not displayed and errors can occur. Oracle GoldenGate recommends keeping the number of Extract and Replicat groups (combined) at the default level of 300 or below in order to manage your environment effectively. The number of groups is controlled by the MAXGROUPS parameter.

---

**Note:** When creating the groups, keep tables that have relational constraints to each other in the same group.

---

### 19.1.1.3 Memory

The system must have sufficient swap space for each Oracle GoldenGate Extract and Replicat process that will be running. To determine the required swap space:

1. Start up one Extract or Replicat.
2. Run GGSCI.
3. View the report file and find the line PROCESS VM AVAIL FROM OS (min).
4. Round up the value to the next full gigabyte if needed. For example, round up 1.76GB to 2 GB.
5. Multiply that value by the number of Extract and Replicat processes that will be running. The result is the maximum amount of swap space that could be required

See the CACHEMGR parameter in *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information about how memory is managed.

### 19.1.1.4 Isolating processing-intensive tables

You can use multiple process groups to support certain kinds of tables that tend to interfere with normal processing and cause latency to build on the target. For example:

- Extract may need to perform a fetch from the database because of the data type of the column, because of parameter specifications, or to perform SQL procedures. When data must be fetched from the database, it affects the performance of Extract. You can get fetch statistics from the STATS EXTRACT command if you include the STATOPTIONS REPORTFETCH parameter in the Extract parameter file. You can then isolate those tables into their own Extract groups, assuming that transactional integrity can be maintained.
- In its classic mode, Replicat process can be a source of performance bottlenecks because it is a single-threaded process that applies operations one at a time by using regular SQL. Even with BATCHSQL enabled (see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*) Replicat may take longer to process tables that have large or long-running transactions, heavy volume, a very large number of columns that change, and LOB data. You can then isolate those tables into their own Replicat groups, assuming that transactional integrity can be maintained.

## 19.1.2 Using parallel Replicat groups on a target system

This section contains instructions for creating a configuration that pairs one Extract group with multiple Replicat groups. Although it is possible for multiple Replicat processes to read a single trail (no more than three of them to avoid disk contention) it is recommended that you pair each Replicat with its own trail and corresponding Extract process.

- Refer to *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for command and parameter syntax.
- For detailed instructions on configuring change synchronization, see [Chapter 14, "Configuring Online Change Synchronization"](#).

### 19.1.2.1 To create the Extract group

---

**Note:** This configuration includes Extract data-pumps.

---

1. On the source, use the ADD EXTRACT command to create a primary Extract group.
2. On the source, use the ADD EXTTRAIL command to specify as many local trails as the number of Replicat groups that you will be creating. All trails must be associated with the primary Extract group.
3. On the source create a data-pump Extract group.
4. On the source, use the ADD RMTTRAIL command to specify as many remote trails as the number of Replicat groups that you will be creating. All trails must be associated with the data-pump Extract group.
5. On the source, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create Extract parameter files, one for the primary Extract and one for the data pump, that contain the parameters required for your database environment. When configuring Extract, do the following:
  - Divide the source tables among different TABLE parameters.
  - Link each TABLE statement to a different trail. This is done by placing the TABLE statements after the EXTTRAIL or RMTTRAIL parameter that specifies the trail you want those statements to be associated with.

### 19.1.2.2 To create the Replicat groups

1. On the target, create a Replicat checkpoint table. For instructions, see [Section 14.3, "Creating a Checkpoint Table."](#) All Replicat groups can use the same checkpoint table.
2. On the target, use the ADD REPLICAT command to create a Replicat group for each trail that you created. Use the EXTTRAIL argument of ADD REPLICAT to link the Replicat group to the appropriate trail.
3. On the target, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a Replicat parameter file for each Replicat group that contains the parameters required for your database environment. All MAP statements for a given Replicat group must specify the same objects that are contained in the trail that is linked to that group.
4. In the Manager parameter file on the target system, use the PURGEOLDEXTRACTS parameter to control the purging of files from the trails.

## 19.1.3 Using multiple Extract groups with multiple Replicat groups

Multiple Extract groups write to their own trails. Each trail is read by a dedicated Replicat group.

- Refer to *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for command and parameter syntax.
- For detailed instructions on configuring change synchronization, see [Chapter 14, "Configuring Online Change Synchronization"](#).

### 19.1.3.1 To create the Extract groups

---

**Note:** This configuration includes data pumps.

---

1. On the source, use the ADD EXTRACT command to create the primary Extract groups.
2. On the source, use the ADD EXTTRAIL command to specify a local trail for each of the Extract groups that you created.
3. On the source create a data-pump Extract group to read each local trail that you created.
4. On the source, use the ADD RMTTRAIL command to specify a remote trail for each of the data-pumps that you created.
5. On the source, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create an Extract parameter file for each primary Extract group and each data-pump Extract group.

### 19.1.3.2 To create the Replicat groups

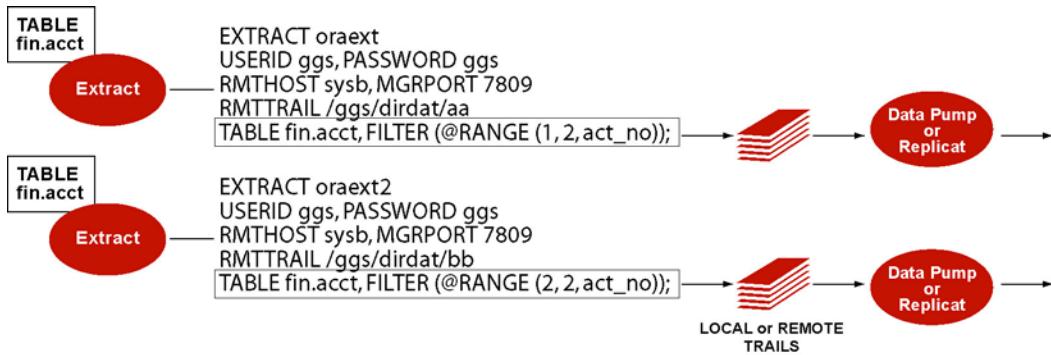
1. On the target, create a Replicat checkpoint table. For instructions, see [Section 14.3, "Creating a Checkpoint Table."](#) All Replicat groups can use the same checkpoint table.
2. On the target, use the ADD REPLICAT command to create a Replicat group for each trail. Use the EXTTRAIL argument of ADD REPLICAT to link the group to the trail.
3. On the target, use the EDIT PARAMS command to create a Replicat parameter file for each Replicat group. All MAP statements for a given Replicat group must specify the same objects that are contained in the trail that is linked to the group.
4. In the Manager parameter files on the source system and the target system, use the PURGEOLDEXTRACTS parameter to control the purging of files from the trails.

## 19.2 Splitting large tables into row ranges across process groups

You can use the @RANGE function to divide the rows of any table across two or more Oracle GoldenGate processes. It can be used to increase the throughput of large and heavily accessed tables and also can be used to divide data into sets for distribution to different destinations. Specify each range in a FILTER clause in a TABLE or MAP statement.

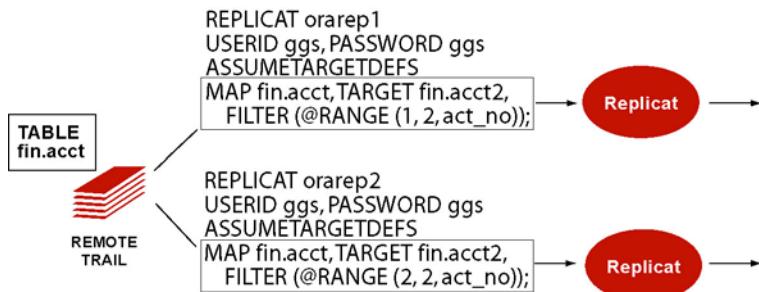
@RANGE is safe and scalable. It preserves data integrity by guaranteeing that the same row will always be processed by the same process group.

It might be more efficient to use the primary Extract or a data pump to calculate the ranges than to use Replicat. To calculate ranges, Replicat must filter through the entire trail to find data that meets the range specification. However, your business case should determine where this filtering is performed.

**Figure 19–2 Dividing rows of a table between two Extract groups**

This graphic shows how to divide rows of a table between two Extract groups.

\*\*\*\*\*

**Figure 19–3 Dividing rows of a table between two Replicat groups**

This graphic shows how to divide rows of a table between two Replicat groups.

\*\*\*\*\*

## 19.3 Configuring Oracle GoldenGate to use the network efficiently

Inefficiencies in the transfer of data across the network can cause lag in the Extract process and latency on the target. If not corrected, it can eventually cause process failures.

When you first start a new Oracle GoldenGate configuration:

1. Establish benchmarks for what you consider to be acceptable lag and throughput volume for Extract and for Replicat. Keep in mind that Extract will normally be faster than Replicat because of the kind of tasks that each one performs. Over time you will know whether the difference is normal or one that requires tuning or troubleshooting.
2. Set a regular schedule to monitor those processes for lag and volume, as compared to the benchmarks. Look for lag that remains constant or is growing, as opposed to occasional spikes. Continuous, excess lag indicates a bottleneck somewhere in the Oracle GoldenGate configuration. It is a critical first indicator that Oracle GoldenGate needs tuning or that there is an error condition.

To view volume statistics, use the `STATS EXTRACT` or `STATS REPLICAT` command. To view lag statistics, use the `LAG EXTRACT` or `LAG REPLICAT` command. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information.

### 19.3.1 Detecting a network bottleneck that is affecting Oracle GoldenGate

To detect a network bottleneck that is affecting the throughput of Oracle GoldenGate, follow these steps.

- Issue the following command to view the ten most recent Extract checkpoints. If you are using a data-pump Extract on the source system, issue the command for the primary Extract and also for the data pump.

```
INFO EXTRACT group, SHOWCH 10
```

- Look for the Write Checkpoint statistic. This is the place where Extract is writing to the trail.

```
Write Checkpoint #1
```

```
GGS Log Trail
Current Checkpoint (current write position):
Sequence #: 2
RBA: 2142224
Timestamp: 2011-01-09 14:16:50.567638
Extract Trail: ./dirdat/eh
```

- For both the primary Extract and data pump:

- Determine whether there are more than one or two checkpoints. There can be up to ten.
  - Find the Write Checkpoint  $n$  heading that has the highest increment number (for example, Write Checkpoint #8) and make a note of the Sequence, RBA, and Timestamp values. This is the most recent checkpoint.
- Refer to the information that you noted, and make the following validation:
    - Is the primary Extract generating a series of checkpoints, or just the initial checkpoint?
    - If a data pump is in use, is it generating a series of checkpoints, or just one?
  - Issue INFO EXTRACT for the primary and data pump Extract processes again.
    - Has the most recent write checkpoint increased? Look at the most recent Sequence, RBA, and Timestamp values to see if their values were incremented forward since the previous INFO EXTRACT command.
  - Issue the following command to view the status of the Replicat process.

```
SEND REPLICAT group, STATUS
```

- The status indicates whether Replicat is delaying (waiting for data to process), processing data, or at the end of the trail (EOF).

There is a network bottleneck if the status of Replicat is either in delay mode or at the end of the trail file and either of the following is true:

- You are only using a primary Extract and its write checkpoint is not increasing or is increasing too slowly. Because this Extract process is responsible for sending data across the network, it will eventually run out of memory to contain the backlog of extracted data and abend.
- You are using a data pump, and its write checkpoint is not increasing, but the write checkpoint of the primary Extract is increasing. In this case, the primary Extract can write to its local trail, but the data pump cannot write to the remote trail. The data pump will abend when it runs out of memory to contain the

backlog of extracted data. The primary Extract will run until it reaches the last file in the trail sequence and will abend because it cannot make a checkpoint.

---

**Note:** Even when there is a network outage, Replicat will process in a normal manner until it applies all of the remaining data from the trail to the target. Eventually, it will report that it reached the end of the trail file.

---

### 19.3.2 Working around bandwidth limitations by using data pumps

Using parallel data pumps may enable you to work around bandwidth limitations that are imposed on a per-process basis in the network configuration. You can use parallel data pumps to send data to the same target system or to different target systems. Data pumps also remove TCP/IP responsibilities from the primary Extract, and their local trails provide fault tolerance.

### 19.3.3 Reducing the bandwidth requirements of Oracle GoldenGate

Use the compression options of the RMTHOST parameter to compress data before it is sent across the network. Weigh the benefits of compression against the CPU resources that are required to perform the compression. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information.

### 19.3.4 Increasing the TCP/IP packet size

Use the TCPBUFSIZE option of the RMTHOST parameter to control the size of the TCP socket buffer that Extract maintains. By increasing the size of the buffer, you can send larger packets to the target system. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information.

Use the following steps as a guideline to determine the optimum buffer size for your network.

1. Use the ping command from the command shell obtain the average round trip time (RTT), shown in the following example:

```
C:\home\ggs>ping ggsoftware.com
Pinging ggsoftware.com [192.168.116.171] with 32 bytes of data:
Reply from 192.168.116.171: bytes=32 time=31ms TTL=56
Reply from 192.168.116.171: bytes=32 time=61ms TTL=56
Reply from 192.168.116.171: bytes=32 time=32ms TTL=56
Reply from 192.168.116.171: bytes=32 time=34ms TTL=56
Ping statistics for 192.168.116.171:
    Packets: Sent = 4, Received = 4, Lost = 0 (0% loss),
    Approximate round trip times in milli-seconds:
        Minimum = 31ms, Maximum = 61ms, Average = 39ms
```

2. Multiply that value by the network bandwidth. For example, if average RTT is .08 seconds, and the bandwidth is 100 megabits per second, then the optimum buffer size is:

0.08 second \* 100 megabits per second = 8 megabits

3. Divide the result by 8 to determine the number of bytes (8 bits to a byte). For example:

8 megabits / 8 = 1 megabyte per second

The required unit for `TCPBUFSIZE` is bytes, so you would set it to a value of 1000000.

The maximum socket buffer size for non-Windows systems is usually limited by default. Ask your system administrator to increase the default value on the source and target systems so that Oracle GoldenGate can increase the buffer size configured with `TCPBUFSIZE`.

## 19.4 Eliminating disk I/O bottlenecks

I/O activity can cause bottlenecks for both Extract and Replicat.

- A regular Extract generates disk writes to a trail and disk reads from a data source.
- A data pump and Replicat generate disk reads from a local trail.
- Each process writes a recovery checkpoint to its checkpoint file on a regular schedule.

### 19.4.1 Improving I/O performance within the system configuration

If there are I/O waits on the disk subsystems that contain the trail files, put the trails on the fastest disk controller possible.

Check the RAID configuration. Because Oracle GoldenGate writes data sequentially, RAID 0+1 (striping and mirroring) is a better choice than RAID 5, which uses checksums that slow down I/O and are not necessary for these types of files.

### 19.4.2 Improving I/O performance within the Oracle GoldenGate configuration

You can improve I/O performance by making configurations changes within Oracle GoldenGate. Try increasing the values of the following parameters.

- Use the `CHECKPOINTSECS` parameter to control how often Extract and Replicat make their routine checkpoints.

---

**Note:** `CHECKPOINTSECS` is not valid for an integrated Replicat on an Oracle database system.

---

- Use the `GROUPTRANSOPS` parameter to control the number of SQL operations that are contained in a Replicat transaction when operating in its normal mode. Increasing the number of operations in a Replicat transaction improves the performance of Oracle GoldenGate by reducing the number of transactions executed by Replicat, and by reducing I/O activity to the checkpoint file and the checkpoint table, if used. Replicat issues a checkpoint whenever it applies a transaction to the target, in addition to its scheduled checkpoints.

---

**Note:** `GROUPTRANSOPS` is not valid for an integrated Replicat on an Oracle database system, unless the inbound server parameter `parallelism` is set to 1.

---

- Use the `EOFDELAY` or `EOFDELAYCSECS` parameter to control how often Extract, a data pump, or Replicat checks for new data after it has reached the end of the current data in its data source. You can reduce the system I/O overhead of these reads by increasing the value of this parameter.

---

**Note:** Increasing the values of these parameters improves performance, but it also increases the amount of data that must be reprocessed if the process fails. This has an effect on overall latency between source and target. Some testing will help you determine the optimal balance between recovery and performance.

---

## 19.5 Managing Virtual Memory and Paging

Because Oracle GoldenGate replicates only committed transactions, it stores the operations of each transaction in a managed virtual-memory pool known as a *cache* until it receives either a commit or a rollback for that transaction. One global cache operates as a shared resource of an Extract or Replicat process. The Oracle GoldenGate cache manager takes advantage of the memory management functions of the operating system to ensure that Oracle GoldenGate processes work in a sustained and efficient manner. The CACHEMGR parameter controls the amount of virtual memory and temporary disk space that is available for caching uncommitted transaction data that is being processed by Oracle GoldenGate.

When a process starts, the cache manager checks the availability of resources for virtual memory, as shown in the following example:

```
CACHEMGR virtual memory values (may have been adjusted)
CACHESIZE: 32G
CACHEPAGEOUTSIZE (normal): 8M
PROCESS VM AVAIL FROM OS (min): 63.97G
CACHESIZEMAX (strict force to disk): 48G
```

If the current resources are not sufficient, a message like the following may be returned:

```
2013-11-11 14:16:22 WARNING OGG-01842 CACHESIZE PER DYNAMIC DETERMINATION (32G)
LESS THAN RECOMMENDED: 64G (64bit system)
vm found: 63.97G
Check swap space. Recommended swap/extract: 128G (64bit system) .
```

If the system exhibits excessive paging and the performance of critical processes is affected, you can reduce the CACHESIZE option of the CACHEMGR parameter. You can also control the maximum amount of disk space that can be allocated to the swap directory with the CACHEDIRECTORY option. For more information about CACHEMGR, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

## 19.6 Optimizing data filtering and conversion

Heavy amounts of data filtering or data conversion add processing overhead. The following are suggestions for minimizing the impact of this overhead on the other processes on the system.

- Avoid using the primary Extract to filter and convert data. Keep it dedicated to data capture. It will perform better and is less vulnerable to any process failures that result from those activities. The objective is to make certain the primary Extract process is running and keeping pace with the transaction volume.
- Use Replicat or a data-pump to perform filtering and conversion. Consider any of the following configurations:
  - Use a data pump on the source if the system can tolerate the overhead. This configuration works well when there is a high volume of data to be filtered,

because it uses less network bandwidth. Only filtered data gets sent to the target, which also can help with security considerations.

- Use a data pump on an intermediate system. This configuration keeps the source and target systems free of the overhead, but uses more network bandwidth because unfiltered data is sent from the source to the intermediate system.
- Use a data pump or Replicat on the target if the system can tolerate the overhead, and if there is adequate network bandwidth for sending large amounts of unfiltered data.
- If you have limited system resources, a least-best option is to divide the filtering and conversion work between Extract and Replicat.

## 19.7 Tuning Replicat transactions

Replicat uses regular SQL, so its performance depends on the performance of the target database and the type of SQL that is being applied (inserts, versus updates or deletes). However, you can take certain steps to maximize Replicat efficiency.

### 19.7.1 Tuning coordination performance against barrier transactions

In a coordinated Replicat configuration, barrier transactions such as updates to the primary key cause an increased number of commits to the database, and they interrupt the benefit of the GROUPTRANSOPS feature of Replicat. When there is a high number of barrier transactions in the overall workload of the coordinated Replicat, using a high number of threads can actually degrade Replicat performance.

To maintain high performance when large numbers of barrier transactions are expected, you can do the following:

- Reduce the number of active threads in the group. This reduces the overall number of commits that Replicat performs.
- Move the tables that account for the majority of the barrier transactions, and any tables with which they have dependencies, to a separate coordinated Replicat group that has a small number of threads. Keep the tables that have minimal barrier transactions in the original Replicat group with the higher number of threads, so that parallel performance is maintained without interruption by barrier transactions.
- (Oracle RAC) In a new Replicat configuration, you can increase the PCTFREE attribute of the Replicat checkpoint table. However, this must be done before Replicat is started for the first time. The recommended value of PCTFREE is 90.

### 19.7.2 Applying similar SQL statements in arrays

Use the BATCHSQL parameter to increase the performance of Replicat. BATCHSQL causes Replicat to organize similar SQL statements into arrays and apply them at an accelerated rate. In its normal mode, Replicat applies one SQL statement at a time.

When Replicat is in BATCHSQL mode, smaller row changes will show a higher gain in performance than larger row changes. At 100 bytes of data per row change, BATCHSQL has been known to improve the performance of Replicat by up to 300 percent, but actual performance benefits will vary, depending on the mix of operations. At around 5,000 bytes of data per row change, the benefits of using BATCHSQL diminish.

The gathering of SQL statements into batches improves efficiency but also consumes memory. To maintain optimum performance, use the following BATCHSQL options:

```
BATCHESPERQUEUE  
BYTESPERQUEUE  
OPSPERBATCH  
OPSPERQUEUE
```

As a benchmark for setting values, assume that a batch of 1,000 SQL statements at 500 bytes each would require less than 10 megabytes of memory.

You can use BATCHSQL with the BATCHTRANSOPS option to tune array sizing. BATCHTRANSOPS controls the maximum number of batch operations that can be grouped into a transaction before requiring a commit. The default for non-integrated Replicat is 1000. The default for integrated Replicat is 50. If there are many wait dependencies when using integrated Replicat, try reducing the value of BATCHTRANSOPS. To determine the number of wait dependencies, view the TOTAL\_WAIT\_DEPS column of the V\$GG\_APPLY\_COORDINATOR database view in the Oracle database.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for additional usage considerations and syntax.

### 19.7.3 Preventing full table scans in the absence of keys

If a target table does not have a primary key, a unique key, or a unique index, Replicat uses all of the columns to build its WHERE clause. This is, essentially, a full table scan.

To make row selection more efficient, use a KEYCOLUMNS clause in the TABLE and MAP statements to identify one or more columns as unique. Replicat will use the specified columns as a key. The following example shows a KEYCOLUMNS clause in a TABLE statement:

```
TABLE hr.emp, KEYCOLUMNS (FIRST_NAME, LAST_NAME, DOB, ID_NO);
```

For usage guidelines and syntax, see the TABLE and MAP parameters in *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*.

### 19.7.4 Splitting large transactions

If the target database cannot handle large transactions from the source database, you can split them into a series of smaller ones by using the Replicat parameter MAXTRANSOPS. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information.

---

**Note:** MAXTRANSOPS is not valid for an integrated Replicat on an Oracle database system.

---

### 19.7.5 Adjusting open cursors

The Replicat process maintains cursors for cached SQL statements and for SQLEXEC operations. Without enough cursors, Replicat must age more statements. By default, Replicat maintains as many cursors as allowed by the MAXSQLSTATEMENTS parameter. You might find that the value of this parameter needs to be increased. If so, you might also need to adjust the maximum number of open cursors that are permitted by the database. See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information.

## 19.7.6 Improving update speed

Excessive block fragmentation causes Replicat to apply SQL statements at a slower than normal speed. Reorganize heavily fragmented tables, and then stop and start Replicat to register the new object ID.

## 19.7.7 Set a Replicat transaction timeout

Use the TRANSACTIONTIMEOUT parameter to prevent an uncommitted Replicat target transaction from holding locks on the target database and consuming its resources unnecessarily. You can change the value of this parameter so that Replicat can work within existing application timeouts and other database requirements on the target.

TRANSACTIONTIMEOUT limits the amount of time that Replicat can hold a target transaction open if it has not received the end-of-transaction record for the last source transaction in that transaction. By default, Replicat groups multiple source transactions into one target transaction to improve performance, but it will not commit a partial source transaction and will wait indefinitely for that last record. The Replicat parameter GROUPTRANSOPS controls the minimum size of a grouped target transaction.

The following events could last long enough to trigger TRANSACTIONTIMEOUT:

- Network problems prevent trail data from being delivered to the target system.
- Running out of disk space on any system, preventing trail data from being written.
- Collector abends (a rare event).
- Extract abends or is terminated in the middle of writing records for a transaction.
- An Extract data pump abends or is terminated.
- There is a source system failure, such as a power outage or system crash.

See *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for more information.



# 20

---

## Performing Administrative Operations

This chapter contains instructions for making changes to applications, systems, and Oracle GoldenGate while the replication environment is active and processing data changes.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Performing Application Patches](#)
- [Initializing the Transaction Logs](#)
- [Shutting Down the System](#)
- [Changing Database Attributes](#)
- [Adding Process Groups to an Active Configuration](#)
- [Changing the Size of Trail Files](#)
- [Switching Extract from Classic Mode to Integrated Mode](#)
- [Switching Extract from Integrated Mode to Classic Mode](#)
- [Switching Replicat from Nonintegrated Mode to Integrated Mode](#)
- [Switching Replicat from Integrated Mode to Nonintegrated Mode](#)
- [Switching Replicat to Coordinated Mode](#)
- [Administering a Coordinated Replicat Configuration](#)
- [Restarting a Primary Extract after System Failure or Corruption](#)

### 20.1 Performing Application Patches

Application patches and application upgrades typically perform DDL such as adding new objects or changing existing objects. To apply applications patches or upgrades in an Oracle GoldenGate environment, you can do one of the following:

- If Oracle GoldenGate supports DDL replication for your database type, you can use it to replicate the DDL without stopping replication processes. To use this method, the source and target table structures must be identical.
- You can apply the patch or upgrade manually on both source and target after taking the appropriate steps to ensure replication continuity.

#### To use Oracle GoldenGate to replicate patch DDL

1. If you have not already done so, dedicate some time to learn, install, and configure the Oracle GoldenGate DDL support. See the instructions for your database in this documentation. Once the DDL environment is in place, future patches and upgrades will be easier to apply.

2. If the application patch or upgrade adds new objects that you want to include in data replication, make certain that you include them in the DDL parameter statement. To add new objects to your TABLE and MAP statements, see the procedure on [Section 20.4.2, "Adding Tables to the Oracle GoldenGate Configuration"](#).
3. If the application patch or upgrade installs triggers or cascade constraints, disable those objects on the target to prevent collisions between DML that they execute on the target and the same DDL that is replicated from the source trigger or cascaded operation.

**To apply a patch manually on the source and target**

1. Stop access to the source database.
2. Allow Extract to finish capturing the transaction data that remains in the transaction log. To determine when Extract is finished, issue the following command in GGSCI until it returns At EOF.  

```
SEND EXTRACT group GETLAG
```
3. Stop Extract.  

```
STOP EXTRACT group
```
4. Start applying the patch on the source.
5. Wait until the data pump (if used) and Replicat are finished processing the data in their respective trails. To determine when they are finished, use the following commands until they return At EOF.  

```
SEND EXTRACT group GETLAG  
SEND REPLICAT group GETLAG
```
6. Stop the data pump and Replicat.  

```
STOP EXTRACT group  
STOP REPLICAT group
```

At this point, the data in the source and target should be identical, because all of the replicated transactional changes from the source have been applied to the target.

7. Apply the patch on the target.
8. If the patches changed table definitions, run DEFGEN for the source tables to generate updated source definitions, and then replace the old definitions with the new ones in the existing source definitions file on the target system.
9. Start the Oracle GoldenGate processes whenever you are ready to begin capturing user activity again.

## 20.2 Initializing the Transaction Logs

When you initialize a transaction log, you must ensure that all of the data is processed by Oracle GoldenGate first, and then you must delete and re-add the Extract group and its associated trail.

1. Stop the application from accessing the database. This stops more transaction data from being logged.

- 2.** Run GGSCI and issue the SEND EXTRACT command with the LOGEND option for the primary Extract group. This command queries Extract to determine whether or not Extract is finished processing the records that remain in the transaction log.

```
SEND EXTRACT group LOGEND
```

- 3.** Continue issuing the command until it returns a YES status, indicating that there are no more records to process.
- 4.** On the target system, run GGSCI and issue the SEND REPLICAT command with the STATUS option. This command queries Replicat to determine whether or not it is finished processing the data that remains in the trail.

```
SEND REPLICAT group STATUS
```

- 5.** Continue issuing the command until it shows 0 records in the current transaction, for example:

```
Sending STATUS request to REPLICAT REPSTAB...
Current status:
  Seqno 0, Rba 9035
  0 records in current transaction.
```

- 6.** Stop the primary Extract group, the data pump (if used), and the Replicat group.

```
STOP EXTRACT group
STOP EXTRACT pump_group
STOP REPLICAT group
```

- 7.** Delete the Extract, data pump, and Replicat groups.

```
DELETE EXTRACT group
DELETE EXTRACT pump_group
DELETE REPLICAT group
```

- 8.** Using standard operating system commands, delete the trail files.

- 9.** Stop the database.

- 10.** Initialize and restart the database.

- 11.** Recreate the primary Extract group.

```
ADD EXTRACT group TRANLOG, BEGIN NOW
```

- 12.** Recreate the local trail (if used).

```
ADD EXTTRAIL trail, EXTRACT group
```

- 13.** Recreate the data pump (if used).

```
ADD EXTRACT pump_group, EXTTRAILSOURCE trail
```

- 14.** Recreate the remote trail.

```
ADD RMTTRAIL trail, EXTRACT pump_group
```

- 15.** Recreate the Replicat group.

```
ADD REPLICAT group, EXTTRAIL trail
```

- 16.** Start Extract, the data pump (if used), and Replicat.

```
START EXTRACT group
START EXTRACT pump_group
```

```
START REPLICAT group
```

## 20.3 Shutting Down the System

When shutting down a system for maintenance and other procedures that affect Oracle GoldenGate, follow these steps to make certain that Extract has processed all of the transaction log records. Otherwise, you might lose synchronization data.

1. Stop all application and database activity that generates transactions that are processed by Oracle GoldenGate.
2. Run GGSCI.
3. In GGSCI, issue the `SEND EXTRACT` command with the `LOGEND` option. This command queries the Extract process to determine whether or not it is finished processing the records in the data source.

```
SEND EXTRACT group LOGEND
```

4. Continue issuing the command until it returns a YES status. At that point, all transaction log data has been processed, and you can safely shut down Oracle GoldenGate and the system.

## 20.4 Changing Database Attributes

This section addresses administrative operations that are performed on database tables and structures.

[Section 20.4.1, "Changing Database Metadata"](#)

[Section 20.4.2, "Adding Tables to the Oracle GoldenGate Configuration"](#)

[Section 20.4.3, "Coordinating Table Attributes between Source and Target"](#)

[Section 20.4.4, "Performing an ALTER TABLE to Add a Column on DB2 z/OS Tables"](#)

[Section 20.4.5, "Dropping and Recreating a Source Table"](#)

[Section 20.4.6, "Changing the Number of Oracle RAC Threads when Using Classic Capture"](#)

[Section 20.4.7, "Changing the ORACLE\\_SID"](#)

[Section 20.4.8, "Purging Archive Logs"](#)

[Section 20.4.9, "Reorganizing a DB2 Table \(z/OS Platform\)"](#)

### 20.4.1 Changing Database Metadata

This procedure is required to prevent Replicat errors when changing the following metadata of the source database:

- Database character set
- National character set
- Locale
- Timezone
- Object name case-sensitivity

If these changes are made without performing this procedure, the following error occurs:

---

```
2013-05-26 20:10:09  ERROR  OGG-05500  Detected database metadata mismatch
between current trail file ./dirdat/_p/v1000003 and the previous sequence.
*DBTIMEZONE: [GMT] / [UTC].
```

This procedure stops Extract, and then creates a new trail file. The new database metadata is included in this new file with the transactions that started after the change.

- 1.** Stop transaction activity on the source database. Do not make the metadata change to the database yet.
- 2.** In GGSCI on the source system, issue the SEND EXTRACT command with the LOGEND option until it shows there is no more redo data to capture.

```
SEND EXTRACT group LOGEND
```

- 3.** Stop Extract.

```
STOP EXTRACT group
```

- 4.** On each target system, issue the SEND REPLICAT command with the STATUS option until it shows a status of "At EOF" to indicate that it finished processing all of the data in the trail. This must be done on all target systems until all Replicat processes return "At EOF."

```
SEND REPLICAT group STATUS
```

- 5.** Stop the data pumps and Replicat.

```
STOP EXTRACT group
```

```
STOP REPLICAT group
```

- 6.** Change the database metadata.

- 7.** In GGSCI on the source system, issue the ALTER EXTRACT command with the ETROLLOVER option for the primary Extract to roll over the local trail to the start of a new file.

```
ALTER EXTRACT group, ETROLLOVER
```

- 8.** Issue the ALTER EXTRACT command with the ETROLLOVER option for the data pumps to roll over the remote trail to the start of a new file.

```
ALTER EXTRACT pump, ETROLLOVER
```

- 9.** Start Extract.

```
START EXTRACT group
```

- 10.** In GGSCI, reposition the data pumps and Replicat processes to start at the new trail sequence number.

```
ALTER EXTRACT pump, EXTSEQNO seqno, EXTRBA RBA
```

```
ALTER REPLICAT group, EXTSEQNO seqno, EXTRBA RBA
```

- 11.** Start the data pumps.

```
START EXTRACT group
```

- 12.** Start the Replicat processes.

```
START REPLICAT group
```

## 20.4.2 Adding Tables to the Oracle GoldenGate Configuration

This procedure assumes that the Oracle GoldenGate DDL support feature is not in use, or is not supported for, your database.

---

**Note:** For Oracle and Teradata databases, you can enable the DDL support feature of Oracle GoldenGate to automatically capture and apply the DDL that adds new tables, instead of using this procedure. See the appropriate instructions for your database in this documentation.

---

Review these steps before starting. The process varies slightly, depending on whether or not the new tables satisfy wildcards in the TABLE parameter, and whether or not names or data definitions must be mapped on the target.

### Prerequisites for adding tables to the Oracle GoldenGate configuration

- This procedure assumes that the source and target tables are either empty or contain identical (already synchronized) data.
- You may be using the DBLOGIN and ADD TRANDATA commands. Before starting this procedure, see *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* for the proper usage of these commands for your database.

### To add a table to the Oracle GoldenGate configuration

1. Stop user access to the new tables.
2. (*If new tables do not satisfy a wildcard*) If you are adding numerous tables that do not satisfy a wildcard, make a copy of the Extract and Replicat parameter files, and then add the new tables with TABLE and MAP statements. If you do not want to work with a copy, then edit the original parameter files after you are prompted to stop each process.
3. (*If new tables satisfy wildcards*) In the Extract and Replicat parameter files, make certain the WILDCARDRESOLVE parameter is not being used, unless it is set to the default of DYNAMIC.
4. (*If new tables do not satisfy a wildcard*) If the new tables *do not* satisfy a wildcard definition, stop Extract.

`STOP EXTRACT group`

5. Add the new tables to the source and target databases.
6. If required for the source database, issue the ADD TRANDATA command in GGSCI for the new tables. Before using ADD TRANDATA, issue the DBLOGIN command.
7. Depending on whether the source and target definitions are identical or different, use either ASSUMETARGETDEFS or SOURCEDEFS in the Replicat parameter file. If SOURCEDEFS is needed, you can do either of the following:
  - Run DEFGEN, then copy the new definitions to the source definitions file on the target.
  - If the new tables match a definitions template, specify the template with the DEF option of the MAP parameter. (DEFGEN not needed.)
8. To register the new source definitions or new MAP statements, stop and then start Replicat.

---

```
STOP REPLICAT group
START REPLICAT group
```

9. Start Extract, if applicable.

```
START EXTRACT group
```

10. Permit user access to the new tables.

### 20.4.3 Coordinating Table Attributes between Source and Target

Follow this procedure if you are changing an attribute of a source table that is in the Oracle GoldenGate configuration, such as adding or changing columns or partitions, or changing supplemental logging details (Oracle). It directs you how to make the same change to the target table without incurring replication latency.

---

**Note:** See also [Section 20.4.4, "Performing an ALTER TABLE to Add a Column on DB2 z/OS Tables"](#).

---



---

**Note:** This procedure assumes that the Oracle GoldenGate DDL support feature is not in use, or is not supported for your database. For Oracle and Teradata databases, you can enable the DDL support feature of Oracle GoldenGate to propagate the DDL changes to the target, instead of using this procedure.

---

1. On the source and target systems, create a table, to be known as the *marker table*, that can be used for the purpose of generating a marker that denotes a stopping point in the transaction log. Just create two simple columns: one as a primary key and the other as a regular column. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE marker
(
  id int NOT NULL,
  column varchar(25) NOT NULL,
  PRIMARY KEY (id)
);
```

2. Insert a row into the marker table on both the source and target systems.

```
INSERT INTO marker VALUES (1, 1);
COMMIT;
```

3. On the source system, run GGSCI.
4. Open the Extract parameter file for editing.

---

**Caution:** Do not use the `VIEW PARAMS` or `EDIT PARAMS` command to view or edit an existing parameter file that is in a character set other than that of the local operating system (such as one where the `CHARSET` option was used to specify a different character set). View the parameter file from outside GGSCI if this is the case; otherwise, the contents may become corrupted..

---

5. Add the marker table to the Extract parameter file in a `TABLE` statement.

---

```
TABLE marker;
```

6. Save and close the parameter file.
7. Add the marker table to the TABLE statement of the data pump, if one is being used.
8. Stop the Extract and data pump processes, and then restart them immediately to prevent capture lag.

```
STOP EXTRACT group
START EXTRACT group
STOP EXTRACT pump_group
START EXTRACT pump_group
```

9. On the target system, run GGSCI.
10. Open the Replicat parameter file for editing.

---

**Caution:** Do not use the VIEW PARAMS or EDIT PARAMS command to view or edit an existing parameter file that is in a character set other than that of the local operating system (such as one where the CHARSET option was used to specify a different character set). View the parameter file from outside GGSCI if this is the case; otherwise, the contents may become corrupted.

---

11. Add the marker table to the Replicat parameter file in a MAP statement, and use the EVENTACTIONS parameter as shown to stop Replicat and ignore operations on the marker table.

```
MAP marker, TARGET marker, EVENTACTIONS (STOP, IGNORE);
```

12. Save and close the parameter file.
  13. Stop, and then immediately restart, the Replicat process.
- ```
STOP REPLICAT group
START REPLICAT group
```
14. When you are ready to change the table attributes for both source and target tables, stop all user activity on them.
  15. On the source system, perform an UPDATE operation to the marker table as the only operation in the transaction.

```
UPDATE marker
SET column=2,
WHERE id=1;
COMMIT;
```

16. On the target system, issue the following command until it shows that Replicat is stopped as a result of the EVENTACTIONS rule.

```
STATUS REPLICAT group
```

17. Perform the DDL on the source and target tables, but do not yet allow user activity.
18. Start Replicat.

```
START REPLICAT group
```

19. Allow user activity on the source and target tables.

#### 20.4.4 Performing an ALTER TABLE to Add a Column on DB2 z/OS Tables

To add a fixed length column to a table that is in reordered row format and contains one or more variable length columns, one of the following will be required, depending on whether the table can be quiesced or not.

**If the table can be quiesced**

1. Allow Extract to finish capturing transactions that happened prior to the quiesce.
2. Alter the table to add the column.
3. Reorganize the tablespace.
4. Restart Extract.
5. Allow table activity to resume.

**If the table cannot be quiesced**

1. Stop Extract.
2. Remove the table from the TABLE statement in the parameter file.
3. Restart Extract.
4. Alter the table to add the column.
5. Reorganize the tablespace.
6. Stop Extract.
7. Add the table back to the TABLE statement.
8. Resynchronize the source and target tables.
9. Start Extract.
10. Allow table activity to resume.

#### 20.4.5 Dropping and Recreating a Source Table

Dropping and recreating a source table requires caution when performed while Oracle GoldenGate is running.

1. Stop access to the table.
2. Allow Extract to process any remaining changes to that table from the transaction logs. To determine when Extract is finished, use the INFO EXTRACT command in GGSCI.

`INFO EXTRACT group`

3. Stop Extract.
4. Drop and recreate the table.
5. If supported for this database, run the ADD TRANDATA command in GGSCI for the table.
6. If the recreate action changed the source table's definitions so that they are different from those of the target, run the DEFGEN utility for the source table to

generate source definitions, and then replace the old definitions with the new definitions in the *existing* source definitions file on the target system.

7. Permit user access to the table.

#### 20.4.6 Changing the Number of Oracle RAC Threads when Using Classic Capture

Valid for Extract in classic capture mode for Oracle. When Extract operates in classic capture mode, the Extract group must be dropped and re-added any time the number of redo threads in an Oracle RAC cluster changes. To drop and add an Extract group, perform the following steps:

1. On the source and target systems, run GGSCI.
2. Stop Extract and Replicat.

```
STOP EXTRACT group
STOP REPLICAT group
```

3. On the source system, issue the following command to delete the primary Extract group and the data pump.

```
DELETE EXTRACT group
DELETE EXTRACT pump_group
```

4. On the target system, issue the following command to delete the Replicat groups.

```
DELETE REPLICAT group
```

5. Using standard operating system commands, remove the local and remote trail files.

6. Add the primary Extract group again with the same name as before, specifying the new number of RAC threads.

```
ADD EXTRACT group TRANLOG, THREADS n, BEGIN NOW
```

7. Add the local trail again with the same name as before.

```
ADD EXTTRAIL trail, EXTRACT group
```

8. Add the data pump Extract again, with the same name as before.

```
ADD EXTRACT group EXTTRAILSOURCE trail, BEGIN NOW
```

9. Add the remote trail again with the same name as before.

```
ADD RMTTRAIL trail, EXTRACT group
```

10. Add the Replicat group with the same name as before. Leave off any BEGIN options so that processing begins at the start of the trail.

```
ADD REPLICAT group EXTTRAIL trail
```

11. Start all processes, using wildcards as appropriate. If the re-created processes are the only ones in the source and target Oracle GoldenGate instances, you can use START ER \* instead of the following commands.

```
START EXTRACT group
START REPLICAT group
```

## 20.4.7 Changing the ORACLE\_SID

You can change the ORACLE\_SID and ORACLE\_HOME without having to change environment variables at the operating-system level. Depending on whether the change is for the source or target database, set the following parameters in the Extract or Replicat parameter files. Then, stop and restart Extract or Replicat for the parameters to take effect.

```
SETENV (ORACLE_HOME=location)
SETENV (ORACLE_SID='SID')
```

## 20.4.8 Purging Archive Logs

An Oracle archive log can be purged safely once Extract's read and write checkpoints are past the end of that log. Extract does not write a transaction to a trail until it has been committed, so Extract must keep track of all open transactions. To do so, Extract requires access to the archive log where each open transaction started and all archive logs thereafter.

Extract reads the current archive log (the read checkpoint) for new transactions and also has a checkpoint (the recovery checkpoint) in the oldest archive log for which there is an uncommitted transaction.

Use the following command in GGSCI to determine Extract's checkpoint positions.

```
INFO EXTRACT group, SHOWCH
```

- The Input Checkpoint field shows where Extract began processing when it was started.
- The Recovery Checkpoint field shows the location of the oldest uncommitted transaction.
- The Next Checkpoint field shows the position in the redo log that Extract is reading.
- The Output Checkpoint field shows the position where Extract is writing.

You can write a shell script that purges all archive logs no longer needed by Extract by capturing the sequence number listed under the Recovery Checkpoint field. All archive logs prior to that one can be safely deleted.

## 20.4.9 Reorganizing a DB2 Table (z/OS Platform)

When using IBM's REORG utility to reorganize a DB2 table that has compressed tablespaces, specify the KEEPDICTIONARY option if the table is being processed by Oracle GoldenGate. This prevents the REORG utility from recreating the compression dictionary, which would cause log data that was written prior to the change not to be decompressed and cause Extract to terminate abnormally. As an alternative, ensure that all of the changes for the table have been extracted by Oracle GoldenGate before doing the reorganization, or else truncate the table.

# 20.5 Adding Process Groups to an Active Configuration

This section describes how to add process groups.

## 20.5.1 Before You Start

These instructions are for adding process groups to a configuration that is already active. The procedures should be performed by someone who has experience with Oracle GoldenGate. They involve stopping processes for a short period of time and reconfiguring parameter files. The person performing them must:

- Know the basic components of an Oracle GoldenGate configuration
- Understand Oracle GoldenGate parameters and commands
- Have access to GGSCI to create groups and parameter files
- Know which parameters to use in specific situations

Instructions are provided for:

- [Adding Another Extract Group to an Active Configuration](#)
- [Adding Another Data Pump to an Active Configuration](#)
- [Adding Another Replicat Group to an Active Configuration](#)

## 20.5.2 Adding Another Extract Group to an Active Configuration

This procedure splits the workload of an existing Extract group into multiple Extract groups. It also provides instructions for including a data pump group (if applicable) and a Replicat group to propagate data that is captured by the new Extract group.

Steps are performed on the source and target systems.

1. Make certain the archived transaction logs are available in case the online logs recycle before you complete this procedure.
2. Choose a name for the new Extract group.
3. Decide whether or not to use a data pump.
4. On the source system, run GGSCI.
5. Create a parameter file for the new Extract group.

`EDIT PARAMS group`

---

**Note:** You can copy the original parameter file to use for this group, but make certain to change the Extract group name and any other relevant parameters that apply to this new group.

---

6. In the parameter file, include:
  - EXTRACT parameter that specifies the new group.
  - Appropriate database login parameters.
  - Other appropriate Extract parameters for your configuration.
  - EXTTRAIL parameter that points to a local trail (if you will be adding a data pump) or a RMTTRAIL parameter (if you are not adding a data pump).
  - RMTHOST parameter if this Extract will write directly to a remote trail.
  - TABLE statement(s) (and TABLEEXCLUDE, if appropriate) for the tables that are to be processed by the new group.
7. Save and close the file.

8. Edit the original Extract parameter file(s) to remove the TABLE statements for the tables that are being moved to the new group or, if using wildcards, add the TABLEEXCLUDE parameter to exclude them from the wildcard specification.
9. (Oracle) If you are using Extract in integrated mode, register the new Extract group with the source database.

```
REGISTER EXTRACT group DATABASE [CONTAINER (container[, ...])]
```

10. Lock the tables that were moved to the new group, and record the timestamp for the point when the locks were applied. For Oracle tables, you can run the following script, which also releases the lock after it is finished.

```
-- temp_lock.sql
-- use this script to temporary lock a table in order to
-- get a timestamp

lock table &schema . &table_name in EXCLUSIVE mode;
SELECT TO_CHAR(sysdate, 'MM/DD/YYYY HH24:MI:SS') "Date" FROM dual;
commit;
```

11. Unlock the table(s) if you did not use the script in the previous step.
  12. Stop the old Extract group(s) and any existing data pumps.
- ```
STOP EXTRACT group
```
13. Add the new Extract group and configure it to start at the timestamp that you recorded.
- ```
ADD EXTRACT group, TRANLOG, BEGIN YYYY/MM/DD HH:MI:SS:CCCCCC
```
14. Add a trail for the new Extract group.

```
ADD {EXTTRAIL | RMTTRAIL} trail, EXTRACT group
```

Where:

- EXTTRAIL creates a local trail. Use this option if you will be creating a data pump for use with the new Extract group. Specify the trail that is specified with EXTTRAIL in the parameter file. After creating the trail, go to [Section , "To link a local data pump to the new Extract group"](#).
- RMTTRAIL creates a remote trail. Use this option if a data pump will not be used. Specify the trail that is specified with RMTTRAIL in the parameter file. After creating the trail, go to [To link a remote Replicat to the new data pump](#).

You can specify a relative or full path name. Examples:

```
ADD RMTTRAIL dirdat\rt, EXTRACT primary
ADD EXTTRAIL c:\ogg\dirdat\lt, EXTRACT primary
```

#### To link a local data pump to the new Extract group

1. On the source system, add the data-pump Extract group using the EXTTRAIL trail as the data source.

```
ADD EXTRACT pump, EXTTRAILSOURCE trail
```

For example:

```
ADD EXTRACT pump2, EXTTRAILSOURCE dirdat\lt
```

2. Create a parameter file for the data pump.

```
EDIT PARAMS pump
```

3. In the parameter file, include the appropriate Extract parameters for your configuration, plus:

- RMTHOST parameter to point to the target system.
- RMTTRAIL parameter to point to a new remote trail (to be specified later).
- TABLE parameter(s) for the tables that are to be processed by this data pump.

---

**Note:** If the data pump will be pumping data, but not performing filtering, mapping, or conversion, then you can include the PASSTHRU parameter to bypass the overhead of database lookups. You also can omit database authentication parameters.

---

4. In GGSCI on the source system, add a remote trail for the data-pump. Use the trail name that you specified with RMTTRAIL in the parameter file.

```
ADD RMTTRAIL trail, EXTRACT pump
```

For example:

```
ADD RMTTRAIL dirdat/rt, EXTRACT pump2
```

5. Follow the steps in [To link a remote Replicat to the new data pump](#).

#### To link a remote Replicat to the new data pump

1. In GGSCI on the target system, add a Replicat group to read the remote trail. For EXTTRAIL, specify the same trail as in the RMTTRAIL Extract parameter and the ADD RMTTRAIL command.

```
ADD REPLICAT group, EXTTRAIL trail
```

For example:

```
ADD REPLICAT rep2, EXTTRAIL /home/ggs/dirdat/rt
```

2. Create a parameter file for this Replicat group. Use MAP statement(s) to specify the same tables that you specified for the new primary Extract and the data pump (if used).

3. On the source system, start the Extract groups and data pumps.

```
START EXTRACT group
START EXTRACT pump
```

4. On the target system, start the new Replicat group.

```
START REPLICAT group
```

### 20.5.3 Adding Another Data Pump to an Active Configuration

This procedure adds a data-pump Extract group to an active primary Extract group on the source system. It makes these changes:

- The primary Extract will write to a local trail.

- The data pump will write to a new remote trail after the data in the old trail is applied to the target.
- The old Replicat group will be replaced by a new one.

Steps are performed on the source and target systems.

1. On the source system, run GGSCI.
2. Add a local trail, using the name of the primary Extract group for *group*.

```
ADD EXTTRAIL trail, EXTRACT group
```

For example:

```
ADD EXTTRAIL dirdat\lt, EXTRACT primary
```

3. Open the parameter file of the primary Extract group, and replace the RMTTRAIL parameter with an EXTTRAIL parameter that points to the local trail that you created.

---

**Caution:** Do not use the VIEW PARAMS or EDIT PARAMS command to view or edit an existing parameter file that is in a character set other than that of the local operating system (such as one where the CHARSET option was used to specify a different character set). View the parameter file from outside GGSCI if this is the case; otherwise, the contents may become corrupted..

---

Example EXTTRAIL parameter:

```
EXTTRAIL dirdat\lt
```

4. Remove the RMTHOST parameter.
5. Save and close the file.
6. Add a new data-pump Extract group, using the trail that you specified in step 2 as the data source.

```
ADD EXTRACT group, EXTTRAILSOURCE trail
```

For example:

```
ADD EXTRACT pump, EXTTRAILSOURCE dirdat\lt
```

7. Create a parameter file for the new data pump.

```
EDIT PARAMS group
```

8. In the parameter file, include the appropriate Extract parameters for your configuration, plus:

- TABLE parameter(s) for the tables that are to be processed by this data pump.
- RMTHOST parameter to point to the target system.
- RMTTRAIL parameter to point to a new remote trail (to be created later).

---

**Note:** If the data pump will be pumping data, but not performing filtering, mapping, or conversion, you can include the `PASSTHRU` parameter to bypass the overhead of database lookups. You also can omit database authentication parameters.

---

9. In GGSCI on the source system, add a remote trail for the data-pump. Use the trail name that is specified with `RMTTRAIL` in the data pump's parameter file, and specify the group name of the data pump for `EXTRACT`.

```
ADD RMTTRAIL trail, EXTRACT group
```

For example:

```
ADD RMTTRAIL dirdat/rt, EXTRACT pump
```

---

**Note:** This command binds a trail name to an Extract group but does not actually create the trail. A trail file is created when processing starts.

---

10. On the target system, run GGSCI.
11. Add a new Replicat group and link it with the remote trail.

```
ADD REPLICAT group, EXTTRAIL trail
```

For example:

```
ADD REPLICAT rep, EXTTRAIL dirdat/rt
```

```
STOP EXTRACT group
START EXTRACT group
```

14. On the source system, start the data pump.

```
START EXTRACT group
```

15. On the target system, issue the `LAG REPLICAT` command for the old Replicat, and continue issuing it until it reports At EOF, no more records to process.

```
LAG REPLICAT group
```

16. Stop the old Replicat group.

```
STOP REPLICAT group
```

17. If using a checkpoint table for the old Replicat group, log into the database from GGSCI.

```
DBLOGIN [SOURCEDB datasource] [{, USERIDALIAS alias | USERID user [,options]}]
```

18. Delete the old Replicat group.

---

```
DELETE REPLICAT group
```

19. Start the new Replicat group.

```
START REPLICAT group
```

---

**Note:** Do not delete the old remote trail, just in case it is needed later on for a support case or some other reason. You can move it to another location, if desired.

---

#### 20.5.4 Adding Another Replicat Group to an Active Configuration

This procedure adds a new Replicat group to an existing Replicat group. The new Replicat reads from the same trail as the original Replicat.

Multiple Replicat groups may be required when Replicat is configured in classic mode, for the purpose of isolating transactions on certain tables or improving performance. Multiple Replicat groups usually are not required if using coordinated Replicat, because you can divide the workload among multiple processing threads within the same Replicat group. See [Section 14.7, "Creating an Online Replicat Group"](#) for more information about Replicat modes.

Steps are performed on the source and target systems.

1. Choose a name for the new group.
2. On the target system, run GGSCI.
3. Create a parameter file for the new Replicat group.

```
EDIT PARAMS group
```

---

**Note:** You can copy the original parameter file to use for this group, but make certain to change the Replicat group name and any other relevant parameters that apply to this new group.

---

4. Add MAP statements (or edit copied ones) to specify the tables that you are adding or moving to this group. If this group will be a coordinated Replicat group, include the appropriate thread specifications.
5. Save and close the parameter file.
6. On the source system, run GGSCI.
7. Stop the Extract group.

```
STOP EXTRACT group
```

8. On the target system, edit the old Replicat parameter file to remove MAP statements that specified the tables that you moved to the new Replicat group. Keep only the MAP statements that this Replicat will continue to process.
9. Save and close the file.
10. Issue the INFO REPLICAT command for the old Replicat group, and continue issuing it until it reports At EOF, no more records to process.

```
INFO REPLICAT group
```

11. Stop the old Replicat group. If you are stopping a coordinated Replicat, make certain the stop is clean so that all threads stop at the same trail record.

```
STOP REPLICAT group
```

12. Add the new Replicat group. For EXTTRAIL, specify the trail that this Replicat group is to read.

```
ADD REPLICAT group, EXTTRAIL trail
```

For example:

```
ADD REPLICAT rep, EXTTRAIL dirdat/rt
```

13. On the source system, start the Extract group.

```
START EXTRACT group
```

14. On the target system, start the old Replicat group.

```
START REPLICAT group
```

15. Start the new Replicat group.

```
START REPLICAT group
```

## 20.6 Changing the Size of Trail Files

You can change the size of trail files with the MEGABYTES option of either the ALTER EXTTRAIL or ALTER RMTTRAIL command, depending on whether the trail is local or remote. To change the file size, follow this procedure.

1. Issue one of the following commands, depending on the location of the trail, to view the path name of the trail you want to alter and the name of the associated Extract group. Use a wildcard to view all trails.

(Remote trail)

```
INFO RMTTRAIL *
```

(Local trail)

```
INFO EXTTRAIL *
```

2. Issue one of the following commands, depending on the location of the trail, to change the file size.

(Remote trail)

```
ALTER RMTTRAIL trail, EXTRACT group, MEGABYTES n
```

(Local trail)

```
ALTER EXTTRAIL trail, EXTRACT group, MEGABYTES n
```

3. Issue the following command to cause Extract to switch to the next file in the trail.

```
SEND EXTRACT group, ROLLOVER
```

## 20.7 Switching Extract from Classic Mode to Integrated Mode

Valid for Oracle only.

This procedure switches an existing Extract group from classic mode to integrated mode. For more information about Extract modes for an Oracle database, see *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database*.

To support the transition to integrated mode, the transaction log that contains the start of the oldest open transaction must be available on the source or downstream mining system, depending on where Extract will be running.

To determine the oldest open transaction, issue the `SEND EXTRACT` command with the `SHOWTRANS` option. You can use the `FORCETRANS` or `SKIPTRANS` options of this command to manage specific open transactions, with the understanding that skipping a transaction may cause data loss and forcing a transaction to commit to the trail may add unwanted data if the transaction is rolled back by the user applications. Review these options in *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* before using them.

```
GGSCI> SEND EXTRACT group, SHOWTRANS
GGSCI> SEND EXTRACT group, { SKIPTRANS ID [THREAD n] [FORCE] |
FORCETRANS ID [THREAD n] [FORCE] }
```

### To switch Extract modes

1. Back up the current Oracle GoldenGate working directories.
2. While the Oracle GoldenGate processes continue to run in their current configuration, so that they keep up with current change activity, copy the Extract parameter file to a new name.
3. Grant the appropriate privileges to the Extract user and perform the required configuration steps to support your business applications in integrated capture mode. See *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database* for information about configuring and running Extract in integrated mode.
4. Log into the mining database with one of the following commands, depending on where the mining database is located.

```
DBLOGIN USERIDALIAS alias
```

```
MININGDBLOGIN USERIDALIAS alias
```

Where: `alias` specifies the alias of a user in the credential store who has the privileges granted through the Oracle `dbms_goldengate_auth.grant_admin_privilege` procedure.

5. Register the Extract group with the mining database. Among other things, this creates the logmining server.

```
REGISTER EXTRACT group DATABASE
```

6. Stop the Extract group.

```
STOP EXTRACT group
```

7. Issue the following command to determine whether the upgrade command can be issued. Transactions that started before the registration command must be written to the trail before you can proceed with the upgrade. You may have to issue this command more than once until it returns a message stating that Extract can be upgraded.

```
INFO EXTRACT group UPGRADE
```

8. Switch the Extract group to integrated mode. See Oracle RAC options for this command in *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX*, if applicable.

```
ALTER EXTRACT group UPGRADE INTEGRATED TRANLOG
```

9. Replace the old parameter file with the new one, keeping the same name.
10. Start the Extract group.

```
START EXTRACT group
```

## 20.8 Switching Extract from Integrated Mode to Classic Mode

Valid for Oracle only.

This procedure switches an existing Extract group from integrated mode to classic mode. For more information about Extract modes for an Oracle database, see *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database*.

To support the transition to classic mode, the transaction log that contains the start of the oldest open transaction must be available on the source or downstream mining system. To determine the oldest open transaction, issue the SEND EXTRACT command with the SHOWTRANS option. You can use the FORCETRANS or SKIPTRANS options of this command to manage specific open transactions, with the understanding that skipping a transaction may cause data loss and forcing a transaction to commit to the trail may add unwanted data if the transaction is rolled back by the user applications. Review these options in *Reference for Oracle GoldenGate for Windows and UNIX* before using them.

```
GGSCI> SEND EXTRACT group, SHOWTRANS  
GGSCI> SEND EXTRACT group, { SKIPTRANS ID [THREAD n] [FORCE] |  
FORCETRANS ID [THREAD n] [FORCE] }
```

### To switch Extract modes

1. Back up the current Oracle GoldenGate working directories.
2. While the Oracle GoldenGate processes continue to run in their current configuration, so that they keep up with current change activity, copy the Extract parameter file to a new name.
3. Grant the appropriate privileges to the Extract user and perform the required configuration steps to support your business applications in classic capture mode. See *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database* for information about configuring and running Extract in classic mode.

4. Stop the Extract group.

```
STOP EXTRACT group
```

5. Issue the following command to determine whether the downgrade command can be issued. Transactions that started before the downgrade command is issued must be written to the trail before you can proceed. You may have to issue this command more than once until it returns a message stating that Extract can be downgraded.

```
INFO EXTRACT group DOWNGRADE
```

6. Log into the mining database with one of the following commands, depending on where the mining database is located.

```
DBLOGIN USERIDALIAS alias
```

---

```
MININGDBLOGIN USERIDALIAS alias
```

Where: *alias* is the alias of a user in the credential store who has the privileges granted through the Oracle `dbms_goldengate_auth.grant_admin_privilege` procedure.

7. Switch the Extract group to classic mode.

```
ALTER EXTRACT group DOWNGRADE INTEGRATED TRANLOG
```

If on a RAC system, then the `THREADS` option has to be used with the `dowgrade` command to specify the number of RAC threads.

8. Unregister the Extract group from the mining database. Among other things, this removes the logmining server.

```
UNREGISTER EXTRACT group DATABASE
```

9. Replace the old parameter file with the new one, keeping the same name.
10. Start the Extract group.

```
START EXTRACT group
```

## 20.9 Switching Replicat from Nonintegrated Mode to Integrated Mode

Valid for Oracle only. For more information about Replicat modes for an Oracle database, see *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database*.

This procedure switches an existing Replicat group from nonintegrated to integrated mode.

---

**Note:** Do not configure the switch between Replicat modes to occur immediately after Extract recovers from a failure or is repositioned to a different location in the transaction log.

---

1. Back up the Oracle GoldenGate working directories.
2. While the Oracle GoldenGate processes continue to run in their current configuration, so that they keep up with current change activity, copy the Replicat parameter file to a new name.
3. Grant the appropriate privileges to the Replicat user and perform the required configuration steps to support your business applications in integrated Replicat mode. See *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database* for information about configuring and running Replicat in integrated mode.
4. Run GGSCI.
5. Stop Replicat.

```
STOP REPLICAT group
```

6. Log into the target database from GGSCI.

```
DBLOGIN USERIDALIAS alias
```

Where: *alias* is the alias of a user in the credential store who has the privileges granted through the Oracle `dbms_goldengate_auth.grant_admin_privilege` procedure.

7. Alter Replicat to integrated mode.

---

```
ALTER REPLICAT group, INTEGRATED
```

8. Replace the old parameter file with the new one, keeping the same name.
9. Start Replicat.

```
START REPLICAT group
```

10. Verify that Replicat is in integrated mode.

```
INFO REPLICAT group
```

When you start Replicat in integrated mode for the first time, the START command registers the Replicat group with the database and starts an inbound server to which Replicat attaches. When you convert a Replicat group to integrated mode, the use of the Oracle GoldenGate checkpoint table is discontinued and recovery information is maintained internally by the inbound server and by the checkpoint file going forward. You can retain the checkpoint table in the event that you decide to switch back to nonintegrated mode.

## 20.10 Switching Replicat from Integrated Mode to Nonintegrated Mode

Valid for Oracle only. For more information about Replicat modes for an Oracle database, see *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database*.

You can, at any time, switch Replicat from integrated mode to nonintegrated mode. This switch automatically unregisters the Replicat group from the target database, which removes the inbound server.

---

**Note:** Do not configure the switch between Replicat modes to occur immediately after Extract recovers from a failure or is repositioned to a different location in the transaction log.

---

1. Back up the Oracle GoldenGate working directories.
2. While the Oracle GoldenGate processes continue to run in their current configuration, so that they keep up with current change activity, copy the Replicat parameter file to a new name.
3. Grant the appropriate privileges to the Replicat user and perform the required configuration steps to support your business applications in nonintegrated Replicat mode. See *Installing and Configuring Oracle GoldenGate for Oracle Database* for information about configuring and running Replicat in integrated mode.
4. Run GGSCI.
5. Log into the target database from GGSCI.

```
DBLOGIN USERIDALIAS alias
```

Where: *alias* is the alias of a user in the credential store who has the privileges granted through the Oracle `dbms_goldengate_auth.grant_admin_privilege` procedure.

6. Create a checkpoint table in the target database for the nonintegrated Replicat to use to store its recovery checkpoints. If a checkpoint table was previously associated with this Replicat group and still exists, you can omit this step. See [Section 14.3, "Creating a Checkpoint Table"](#) for more information about options for using a checkpoint table.

- 
- ADD CHECKPOINTTABLE *[container.]table*
7. Stop Replicat.

STOP REPLICAT *group*

  8. Alter Replicat to nonintegrated mode. For the CHECKPOINTTABLE argument, specify the checkpoint table that you created for this Replicat group.

ALTER REPLICAT *group*, NONINTEGRATED, CHECKPOINTTABLE *[container.]table*

  9. Replace the old parameter file with the new one, keeping the same name.
  10. Start Replicat.

START REPLICAT *group*

After issuing this command, wait until there is some activity on the source database so that the switchover can be completed. (Replicat waits until its internal high-water mark is exceeded before removing the status of "switching from integrated mode.")

  11. Verify that Replicat switched to nonintegrated mode.
- INFO REPLICAT *group*

## 20.11 Switching Replicat to Coordinated Mode

Valid for all database types supported by Oracle GoldenGate.

This procedure upgrades a regular Replicat configuration (non-coordinated) to a coordinated configuration. This procedure assumes you are replacing a configuration that partitions data across multiple Extract and Replicat processes with a configuration that uses one Extract and one coordinated Replicat. The coordinated Replicat replaces the need for using multiple Replicat processes. A coordinated Replicat requires only one trail, so there is no need for multiple Extract processes or data pumps.

See [Chapter 14, "Configuring Online Change Synchronization"](#) for more information about coordinated Replicat.

### 20.11.1 Procedure overview

This procedure makes use of the EVENTACTIONS parameter with a STOP action, which enables all of the Replicat processes to stop at the same point in the trail. The EVENTACTIONS action is triggered by a transaction that contains an INSERT to a dummy table. The INSERT causes each process to finish processing everything up to, and including, the event transaction and then stop cleanly. An additional event action of IGNORE is specified for Replicat to prevent the multiple Replicat processes from attempting to insert the same record to the target. The result of this procedure is that all processes stop at the same point in the data stream: after completing the INSERT transaction to the dummy table.

After the processes stop, you move all of the TABLE statements to one primary Extract group. You move the same TABLE statements to the data pump that reads the trail of the Extract group that you retained. You move all of the MAP statements to a new coordinated Replicat group that reads the remote trail that is associated with the retained data pump. Once all of the MAP statements are in one parameter file, you edit them to add the thread specifications to support a coordinated Replicat. (This can be done ahead of time.) Then you drop the Replicat group and add it back in coordinated mode with the same name.

## 20.11.2 Performing the switch to coordinated Replicat

---

**Note:** Do not create the Replicat group until prompted by these instructions.

---

1. Back up the current parameter files of all of the Extract groups, data pumps, and Replicat groups. You will be editing them.
2. Create a working directory outside the Oracle GoldenGate directory. You will use this directory to create and stage new versions of the parameter files. If needed, you can create a working directory on the source and target systems.
3. In the working directory, create a parameter file for a coordinated Replicat. Copy the MAP parameters from the active parameter files of all of the Replicat groups to this parameter file, and then add the thread specifications and any other parameters that support your required coordinated Replicat configuration
4. If using multiple primary Extract groups, select one to keep, and then save a copy of its current parameter file to the working directory.
5. Copy all of the TABLE statements from the other Extract groups to the new parameter file of the primary Extract that you are keeping.
6. In the working directory, save a copy of the parameter file of the data pump that is linked to the primary Extract that you are keeping.
7. Copy all of the TABLE statements from the other data pumps to the copied parameter file of the kept data pump.
8. In the source database, create a simple dummy table on which a simple INSERT statement can be performed. For this procedure, the name schema.event is used.
9. Create the same table on the target system, to avoid the need for additional configuration parameters.
10. Edit the active parameter files (not the copies) of all primary and data-pump Extract groups to add the following EVENTACTIONS parameter to each one. If the data pump is configured with the PASSTHRU parameter for the data tables, add NOPASSTHRU before the TABLE statement that captures the dummy table.

```
NOPASSTHRU
TABLE schema.event, EVENTACTIONS (STOP);
```

11. Edit the active parameter files (not the copies) of all of the Replicat groups to add the following EVENTACTIONS parameter to each one.

```
MAP schema.event, TARGET schema.event, EVENTACTIONS (IGNORE, STOP);
```

12. Stop the Oracle GoldenGate processes gracefully in the following order:

- Stop all Replicat processes.
- Stop all data pumps.
- Stop all Extract processes.

13. Restart the Oracle GoldenGate processes in the following order so that the EVENTACTIONS parameters take effect:

- Start all Extract processes.
- Start all data pumps.

- Start all Replicat processes.
14. On the source system, issue a transaction on the schema.event table that contains one `INSERT` statement. Make certain to commit the transaction.
  15. In GGSCI, issue the `STATUS` command for all of the primary Extract and data pump processes on the source system, and issue the same command for all of the Replicat processes on the target system, until the commands show that all of the processes are `STOPPED`.
- ```
STATUS EXTRACT *
STATUS REPLICAT *
```
16. Replace the active parameter files of the primary Extract and data pump that you kept with the new parameter files from the working directory.
  17. Delete the unneeded Extract and data pump groups and their parameter files.
  18. Log into the target database by using the `DBLOGIN` command.
  19. Delete all of the Replicat groups and their active parameter files.
  20. Copy or move the new coordinated Replicat parameter file from the working directory to the Oracle GoldenGate directory.
  21. In GGSCI, issue the `INFO EXTRACT` command for the data pump and make note of its write checkpoint position in the output (remote) trail.
- ```
INFO EXTRACT pump, DETAIL
```
22. Add a new coordinated Replicat group with the following parameters.

```
ADD REPLICAT group, EXTTRAIL trail, EXTSEQNO sequence_number, EXTRBA rba,
COORDINATED MAXTHREADS number
```

Where:

- *group* is the name of the coordinated Replicat group. The name must match that of the new parameter file created for this group.
  - `EXTTRAIL trail` is the name of the trail that the data pump writes to.
  - `EXTSEQNO sequence_number` is the sequence number of the trail as shown in the write checkpoint returned by the `INFO EXTRACT` that you issued for the data pump.
  - `EXTRBA rba` is the relative byte address in the trail as shown in the write checkpoint returned by `INFO EXTRACT`. Together, these position Replicat to resume processing at the correct point in the trail.
  - `MAXTHREADS number` specifies the maximum number of threads allowed for this group. This value should be appropriate for the number of threads that are specified in the parameter file.
23. Start the primary Extract group.
  24. Start the data pump group.
  25. Start the coordinated Replicat group.

## 20.12 Administering a Coordinated Replicat Configuration

This section contains instructions for coordinating threads and re-partitioning the workload among new or different threads. A coordinated Replicat should be stopped cleanly with the `STOP REPLICAT` command before making modifications to the

partition specifications in THREAD or THREADRANGE clauses of the MAP statements. A clean stop ensures that all of the threads, which may be at different locations in the trail at any given point, all finish their work and arrive at a common trail location.

At startup, Replicat issues an error and abends if it detects that the last shutdown was not clean and the partitioning in the MAP statements was changed to contain a different number of threads (threads were added or removed). However, if the same threads are kept in the parameter file but simply rearranged among different MAP statements, Replicat issues a warning but does not abend. This can result in missing or duplicate records, because there is no way to ensure continuity of the thread-to-workload allocations from the previous run.

The following is an example of this condition.

Following is the original partitioning scheme:

```
MAP source, target, THREADRANGE(1-5);  
MAP source1, target1, THREADRANGE(6-10);
```

The following re-partitioning of the original scheme produces only a warning:

```
MAP source, target, THREADRANGE(1-4);  
MAP source1, target1, THREADRANGE(5-10);
```

This section provides instructions for cleanly shutting down Replicat before performing a re-partitioning, as well as instructions for attempting to recover Replicat continuity when a re-partitioning is performed after an unclean shutdown.

The following tasks can be performed for a Replicat group in coordinated mode.

[Section 20.12.1, "Performing a Planned Re-partitioning of the Workload"](#)

[Section 20.12.2, "Recovering Replicat after an Unplanned Re-partitioning"](#)

[Section 20.12.3, "Synchronizing threads after an Unclean Stop"](#)

## 20.12.1 Performing a Planned Re-partitioning of the Workload

A planned re-partitioning is when Replicat is allowed to shut down cleanly before it is started again with a new parameter file that contains updated thread partitioning. A clean shutdown enables all of the threads to arrive at a common checkpoint position in the trail. At that point, the new partitioning scheme can be applied in the next run. If Replicat does not shut down cleanly in this procedure, for example if there is an apply error, use the procedure in [Section 20.12.3](#) to re-synchronize the threads before you re-partition them.

1. Run GGSCI.

2. Stop Replicat.

```
STOP REPLICAT group
```

3. Open the parameter file for editing.

```
EDIT PARAMS group
```

4. Make the required changes to the THREAD or THREADRANGE specifications in the MAP statements.

5. Save and close the parameter file.

6. Start Replicat.

```
START REPLICAT group
```

## 20.12.2 Recovering Replicat after an Unplanned Re-partitioning

An *unplanned re-partitioning* is when Replicat is not allowed to shut down cleanly before it is started again with a new parameter file that contains updated thread partitioning. In this scenario, some or all of the old threads were not able to finish their work and arrive at a common checkpoint. Upon restart, the coordinator thread attempts to apply the old partitioning scheme, and Replicat abends with an error. You can recover the coordinated Replicat group from this condition in one of the following ways:

- Use the auto-saved copy of the parameter file
- Reprocess from the low watermark with `HANDLECOLLISIONS`

### 20.12.2.1 Reprocessing from the low watermark with `HANDLECOLLISIONS`

In this procedure, you reposition all of the threads to the *low watermark* position. This is the earliest checkpoint position performed among all of the threads. To state it another way, the low watermark position is the last record processed by the slowest thread before the unclean stop. When you start Replicat, the threads reprocess the operations that they were processing before Replicat stopped, and the `HANDLECOLLISIONS` parameter handles any duplicate-record and missing-record errors that occur as the faster threads reprocess operations that they applied before the unclean stop.

1. Add the `HANDLECOLLISIONS` parameter to the Replicat parameter file. It is not necessary to use any `THREADS` options.
2. Issue the `INFO REPLICAT` command for the Replicat group as a whole (the coordinator thread). Make a record of the RBA of the checkpoint. This is the *low watermark* value. This output also shows you the active thread IDs under the Group Name column. Make a record of these, as well.

```
INFO REPLICAT group
```

```
GGSCI (slc03jgo) 3> info ra detail
```

```
REPLICAT RA      Last Started 2013-05-01 14:15   Status ABENDED
COORDINATED          Coordinator           MAXTHREADS 15
Checkpoint Lag       00:00:00 (updated 00:00:07 ago)
Process ID           11445
Log Read Checkpoint File ./dirdat/withMaxTransOp/bg000001
                      2013-05-02 07:49:45.975662 RBA 44704
```

Lowest Log BSN value: (requires database login)

Active Threads:

| ID | Group Name | PID   | Status  | Lag at Chkpt | Time Since Chkpt |
|----|------------|-------|---------|--------------|------------------|
| 1  | RA001      | 11454 | ABENDED | 00:00:00     | 00:00:01         |
| 2  | RA002      | 11455 | ABENDED | 00:00:00     | 00:00:04         |
| 3  | RA003      | 11456 | ABENDED | 00:00:00     | 00:00:01         |
| 5  | RA005      | 11457 | ABENDED | 00:00:00     | 00:00:02         |
| 6  | RA006      | 11458 | ABENDED | 00:00:00     | 00:00:04         |
| 7  | RA007      | 11459 | ABENDED | 00:00:00     | 00:00:04         |

3. Issue the `INFO REPLICAT` command for each processing thread ID and record the RBA position of each thread. Make a note of the *highest* RBA. This is the *high watermark* of the Replicat group.

```
INFO REPLICAT threadID
```

```
info ra002
```

```
REPLICAT RA002      Last Started 2013-05-01 14:15      Status ABENDED
COORDINATED          Replicat Thread                  Thread 2
Checkpoint Lag        00:00:00 (updated 00:00:06 ago)
Process ID           11455
Log Read Checkpoint File ./dirdat/withMaxTransOp/bg000001
                     2013-05-02 07:49:15.837271 RBA 45603
```

4. Issue the ALTER REPLICAT command for the coordinator thread (Replicat as a whole, without any thread ID) and position to the *low watermark* RBA that you recorded.

```
ALTER REPLICAT group EXTRBA low_watermark_rba
```

5. Start Replicat.

```
START REPLICAT group
```

6. Issue the basic INFO REPLICAT command until it shows an RBA that is higher than the *high watermark* that you recorded. HANDLECOLLISIONS handles any collisions that occur due to previously applied transactions.

```
INFO REPLICAT group
```

7. Stop Replicat.

```
STOP REPLICAT group
```

8. Remove or comment out the HANDLECOLLISIONS parameter.

9. Start Replicat.

```
START REPLICAT group
```

### 20.12.2.2 Using the auto-saved parameter file

A copy of the original parameter file is saved whenever the parameter file is edited before shutting down Replicat cleanly. You can revert to this parameter file and then resynchronize the threads so that they all catch up to the thread that had the most recent checkpoint position. Once the threads are synchronized, you can switch to the new parameter file and then start Replicat.

1. Save the new parameter file to a different name, and then rename the saved original parameter file to the correct name (same as the group name). The saved parameter file has a .backup suffix and is stored in the dirprm subdirectory of the Oracle GoldenGate installation directory.
2. Issue the following command to synchronize the Replicat threads to the maximum checkpoint position. This command automatically starts Replicat and executes the threads until they reach the maximum checkpoint position.

```
SYNCHRONIZE REPLICAT group
```

3. Issue the STATUS REPLICAT command until it shows that Replicat stopped cleanly.

```
STATUS REPLICAT group
```

4. Save the original parameter file to a different name, and then rename the new parameter file to the group name.

5. Start Replicat.

```
START REPLICAT group
```

### 20.12.3 Synchronizing threads after an Unclean Stop

When a Replicat group stops in an unclean manner, not all of the threads will reach a common checkpoint position in the trail. Unclean stops can be caused by issuing `STOP REPLICAT` with the `!` option, issuing the `KILL REPLICAT` command, or by transient errors related to Replicat, the database, or other local processes. You can restore the threads to the same position in the trail after an unclean stop and then start Replicat again from the correct checkpoint position.

In this procedure, the restore position is the *high watermark*. This is the most recent checkpoint position performed among all of the threads (the last record processed by the fastest thread before the unclean stop). Before starting Replicat, you can make changes to the parameter file, such as to repartition the workload among different or new threads. The repartitioning takes effect in a seamless manner after you start Replicat, because the threads can start from a synchronized state.

1. Run GGSCI.
2. Synchronize the Replicat threads to the maximum checkpoint position. Replicat performs the synchronization and then stops.

`SYNCHRONIZE REPLICAT group`

3. (Optional) To re-partition the workload among different or new threads, open the parameter file for editing and then make the required changes to the `THREAD` or `THREADRANGE` specifications in the `MAP` statements.

`EDIT PARAMS group`

4. Save and close the parameter file.
5. Start Replicat.

`START REPLICAT group`

## 20.13 Restarting a Primary Extract after System Failure or Corruption

This procedure enables Oracle GoldenGate to recover from certain conditions, such as a file system corruption or a system failure, that corrupt the Extract checkpoint file, trail, or both, and which prevent Extract from being able to start. It enables you to establish a safe starting point in the transaction log for the primary Extract after the system has been restored. It also shows you how to reposition downstream data pumps and Replicat to read from the correct Extract write position in the trails, and to filter out any transactions that Replicat already applied to the target.

### 20.13.1 Details of this procedure

Extract passes a *log begin sequence number*, or `LOGBSN`, to the trail files. The BSN is the native database sequence number that identifies the oldest uncommitted transaction that is held in Extract memory. For example, the BSN in an Oracle installation would be the Oracle system change number (SCN). Each trail file contains the lowest `LOGBSN` value for all of the transactions in that trail file. Once you know the `LOGBSN` value, you can reposition Extract at the correct read position to ensure that the appropriate transactions are re-generated to the trail and propagated to Replicat.

---

**Note:** In an Oracle RAC environment, the lowest SCN of all of the threads is transmitted to Replicat. Transactions that may already have been committed by Replicat are handled as duplicates at startup. However, any thread that has been idle past a certain threshold will not be considered for the BSN value, to avoid Extract having to read too far back in the log stream when restarted.

---

The bounded recovery checkpoint is not taken into account when calculating the LOGBSN. The failure that affected the Extract checkpoint file may also involve a loss of the persisted bounded recovery data files and bounded recovery checkpoint information.

### 20.13.2 Performing the Recovery

Follow these steps in the order shown to recover the Oracle GoldenGate processes.

1. In GGSCI on the target system, issue the DBLOGIN command.

```
DBLOGIN {USERID Replicat_user | USERIDALIAS alias_of_Replicat_user}
```

2. On the target, obtain the LOGBSN value by issuing the INFO REPLICAT command with the DETAIL option.

```
INFO REPLICAT group, DETAIL
```

The BSN is included in the output as a line similar to the following:

```
Current Log BSN value: 1151679
```

3. (Classic capture mode only. Skip if using integrated capture mode.) Query the source database to find the sequence number of the transaction log file that contains the value of the LOGBSN that you identified in the previous step. This example assumes 1855798 is the LOGBSN value and shows that the sequence number of the transaction log that contains that LOGBSN value is 163.

```
SQL> select name, thread#, sequence# from v$archived_log
where 1855798 between first_change# and next_change#;
```

| NAME                                | THREAD# | SEQUENCE# |
|-------------------------------------|---------|-----------|
| /oracle/dbs/arch1_163_800262442.dbf | 1       | 163       |

4. Issue the following commands in GGSCI to reposition the primary Extract to the LOGBSN start position.

- (Classic capture mode)

```
ALTER EXTRACT group EXTSEQNO 163
ALTER EXTRACT group EXTRBA 0
ALTER EXTRACT group ETROLLOVER
```

- (Integrated capture mode)

```
ALTER EXTRACT group SCN 1151679
ALTER EXTRACT group ETROLLOVER
```

---

**Note:** There is a limit on how far back Extract can go in the transaction stream, when in integrated mode. If the required SCN is no longer available, the ALTER EXTRACT command fails.

---

5. Issue the following command in GGSCI to the primary Extract to view the new sequence number of the Extract *Write Checkpoint*. This command shows the trail and RBA where Extract will begin to write new data. Because a rollover was issued, the start point is at the beginning (RBA 0) of the new trail file, in this example file number 7.

```
INFO EXTRACT group SHOWCH
Sequence #: 7
RBA: 0
```

6. Issue the following command in GGSCI to reposition the downstream data pump and start a new output trail file.

```
ALTER EXTRACT pump EXTSEQNO 7
ALTER EXTRACT pump EXTRBA 0
ALTER EXTRACT pump ETROLLOVER
```

7. Issue the following command in GGSCI to the data pump Extract to view the new sequence number of the data pump Write Checkpoint, in this example trail number 9.

```
INFO EXTRACT pump SHOWCH
Sequence #: 9
RBA: 0
```

8. Reposition Replicat to start reading the trail at the new Write Checkpoint of the data pump.

```
ALTER REPLICAT group EXTSEQNO 9
ALTER REPLICAT group EXTRBA 0
```

9. Start the primary Extract and the data pump.

```
START EXTRACT group
START REPLICAT group
```

10. Issue the following command in GGSCI to start Replicat. If Replicat is operating in integrated mode (Oracle targets only), omit the FILTERDUPTRANSACTIONS option. Integrated Replicat handles duplicate transactions transparently.

```
START REPLICAT group[, FILTERDUPTRANSACTIONS]
```

---

**Note:** The LOGBSN gives you the information needed to set Extract back in time to reprocess transactions. Some filtering by Replicat is necessary because Extract will likely re-generate a small amount of data that was already applied by Replicat. FILTERDUPTRANSACTIONS directs Replicat to find and filter duplicates at the beginning of the run.

---



---

# Undoing Data Changes with the Reverse Utility

This chapter describes how to undo data changes with the reverse utility.

This chapter includes the following sections:

- [Overview of the Reverse Utility](#)
- [Reverse Utility Restrictions](#)
- [Configuring the Reverse Utility](#)
- [Creating Process Groups and Trails for Reverse Processing](#)
- [Running the Reverse Utility](#)
- [Undoing the Changes Made by the Reverse Utility](#)

## 21.1 Overview of the Reverse Utility

The Reverse utility uses before images to undo database changes for specified tables, records, and time periods. It enables you to perform a selective backout, unlike other methods which require restoring the entire database.

You can use the Reverse utility for the following purposes:

- To restore a test database to its original state before the test run. Because the Reverse utility only backs out changes, a test database can be restored in a matter of minutes, much more efficiently than a complete database restore, which can take hours.
- To reverse errors caused by corrupt data or accidental deletions. For example, if an UPDATE or DELETE command is issued without a WHERE clause, the Reverse utility reverses the operation.

To use the Reverse utility, you do the following:

- Run Extract to extract the before data.
- Run the Reverse utility to perform the reversal of the transactions.
- Run Replicat to apply the restored data to the target database.

The Reverse utility reverses the forward operations by:

- Reversing the ordering of database operations in an extract file, a series of extract files, or a trail so that they can be processed in reverse order, guaranteeing that records with the same key are properly applied.
- Changing delete operations to inserts.

- Changing inserts to deletes.
- Changing update before images to update after images.
- Reversing the begin and end transaction indicators.

**Figure 21–1 Reverse Utility Architecture**

This graphic shows the reverse utility architecture. Arrows connect the architecture from Datasource to Extract to Input File(s) to Reverse to Output File(s) to Replicat to Target DB.

\*\*\*\*\*

## 21.2 Reverse Utility Restrictions

Observe the following restrictions on the reverse utility:

- Commit timestamps are not changed during the reverse procedure, which causes the time sequencing in the trail to be backwards. Because of this, you cannot position Replicat based on a timestamp.
- Oracle GoldenGate does not store the before images of the following data types, so these types are not supported by the Reverse utility. A before image is required to reverse update and delete operations

**Table 21–1 Data types Not Supported by the Reverse Utility**

| DB2                |                                                                        |                        |               |                                                                                                   |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (all supported OS) | Oracle                                                                 | SQL Server             | Sybase        | Teradata                                                                                          |
| BLOB               | CLOB                                                                   | TEXT                   | VARBINARY     | None supported.                                                                                   |
| CLOB               | BLOB                                                                   | IMAGE                  | BINARY        |                                                                                                   |
| DBCLOB             | NCLOB<br>LONG<br>LONG RAW<br>XMLType<br>UDT<br>Nested Tables<br>VARRAY | NTEXT<br>VARCHAR (MAX) | TEXT<br>IMAGE | This is because only the after images of a row are captured by the Teradata vendor access module. |

## 21.3 Configuring the Reverse Utility

The reversal process is performed with online Extract and Replicat processes that are created and started through GGSCI. These processes write to standard local or remote trails. Oracle GoldenGate automatically reverses the file order during reverse processing so that transaction sequencing is maintained.

To configure the Reverse utility, create Extract and Replicat parameter files with the parameters shown in [Table 21–2](#) and [Table 21–3](#). In addition to these parameters, include any other optional parameters or special MAP statements that are required for your synchronization configuration.

**Table 21–2 Extract Parameter File for the Reverse Utility**

| Parameter                                                                                                | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| EXTRACT <i>group</i>                                                                                     | EXTRACT <i>group</i> specifies the Extract process. You will create this process in GGSCI.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| END { <i>time</i>   RUNTIME}                                                                             | <p><i>time</i> causes Extract to terminate when it reaches a record in the data source whose timestamp exceeds the one that is specified with this parameter. The valid format is as follows, based on a 24-hour clock:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">YYYY-MM-DD [ HH:MI [:SS [.CCCCCC]] ]</p> <p>RUNTIME causes Extract to terminate when it reaches a record in the data source whose timestamp exceeds the current date and clock time. All unprocessed records with timestamps up to this point in time are processed. One advantage of using RUNTIME is that you do not have to alter the parameter file to change dates and times from run to run. Instead, you can control the process start time within your batch programming.</p> |
| [SOURCEDB <i>datasource</i> ,]<br>[USERIDALIAS <i>alias</i>   USERID <i>user</i> [,<br><i>options</i> ]] | Specifies database connection information. See <a href="#">Section 11, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security"</a> for more information. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ SOURCEDB specifies a data source name, if required in the connection information.</li> <li>■ USERID and USERIDALIAS specify authentication information.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| NOCOMPRESSDELETES                                                                                        | Causes Extract to send all column data to the output, instead of only the primary key. Enables deletes to be converted back to inserts.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| GETUPDATEBEFORES                                                                                         | Directs Oracle GoldenGate to extract before images so that updates can be rolled back.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| RMTHOST <i>hostname</i>                                                                                  | The name or IP address of the target system.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| {EXTTRAIL <i>input trail</i>  <br>RMTTRAIL <i>input trail</i> }                                          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use EXTTRAIL to specify an extract trail on the local system.</li> <li>■ Use RMTTRAIL to specify a remote trail on a remote system.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| TABLE [ <i>container</i> .] <i>owner.table</i> ;                                                         | Specify the relative or full path name of a trail, including the two-character trail name, for example:<br><br>EXTTRAIL /home/ggs/dirdat/rt                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

This example Extract parameter file uses a remote trail.

#### **Example 21–1 Extracting a Parameter File Using a Remote Trail**

```
EXTRACT ext_1
END 2011-01-09 14:12:20
USERIDALIAS ogg
GETUPDATEBEFORES
NOCOMPRESSDELETES
RMTHOST sysb, MGRPORT 8040
RMTTRAIL /home/ggs/dirdat/in
TABLE tcustmer;
TABLE tcustord;
```

**Table 21–3 Replicat Parameter File for the Reverse Utility**

| Parameter                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| REPLICAT group                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | REPLICAT group specifies the Replicat process to be created in GGSCI.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| END {time   RUNTIME}                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | <p><i>time</i> causes Extract to terminate when it reaches a record in the data source whose timestamp exceeds the one that is specified with this parameter. The valid format is as follows, based on a 24-hour clock:</p> <p>YYYY-mm-dd[ hh:mi[:ss[.cccccc]]]</p> <p>RUNTIME causes Replicat to terminate when it reaches a record in the data source whose timestamp exceeds the current date and clock time. All unprocessed records with timestamps up to this point in time are processed. One advantage of using RUNTIME is that you do not have to alter the parameter file to change dates and times from run to run. Instead, you can control the process start time within your batch programming.</p> |
| [TARGETDB datasource,]<br>[USERIDALIAS alias   USERID user [, options]]                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Specifies database connection information. See <a href="#">Chapter 11, "Configuring Oracle GoldenGate Security"</a> for more information about security options.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ TARGETDB specifies a data source name, if required in the connection information.</li> <li>■ USERID and USERIDALIAS specify authentication information.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| {SOURCEDEFS full_pathname}  <br>ASSUMETARGETDEFS                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | Specifies how to interpret data definitions.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Use SOURCEDEFS if the source and target tables have different definitions. Specify the source-definitions file generated by DEFGEN. for more information about DEFGEN, see <a href="#">Chapter 13, "Associating Replicated Data with Metadata."</a>.</li> <li>■ Use ASSUMETARGETDEFS if the source and target tables have the same definitions.</li> </ul> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| MAP [container.]owner.table],<br>TARGET owner.table;                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | The table or tables (specified with either multiple MAP statements or a wildcard) to which to post the reversed data. When reversing data from the source database, the source and target TABLE entries are the same. When reversing replicated data from a target database, the source and target of each MAP statement are different.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

The following is an example Replicat parameter file.

**Example 21–2 Replicat Parameter File**

```
REPLICAT rep_1
END RUNTIME
USERIDALIAS ogg
ASSUMETARGETDEFS
MAP tcustmer, TARGET tcustmer;
```

## 21.4 Creating Process Groups and Trails for Reverse Processing

To create process groups to perform the backout procedure, you create the following:

- An online Extract group.
- A local or remote trail that is linked to the Extract group. Extract captures the data from the database, and writes it to this trail, which serves as the input trail for the Reverse utility.
- An online Replicat group.
- Another local or remote trail that is linked to the Replicat group. This is the output trail that is written by the Reverse utility. Replicat reads this trail to apply the reversed data.

### To create an Extract group for reverse processing

```
ADD EXTRACT group, TRANLOG, BEGIN {NOW | YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM[:SS[.CCCCCC]]}
```

Where:

- *group* is the name of the Extract group. A group name can contain up to eight characters, and is not case-sensitive.
- TRANLOG specifies the transaction log as the data source.
- BEGIN specifies a starting timestamp at which to begin processing. Use one of the following:
  - NOW to begin extracting changes that are timestamped at the point when the ADD EXTRACT command is executed to create the group.
  - YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM[:SS[.CCCCCC]] as the format for specifying an exact timestamp as the begin point.

### To create an input trail that is linked to the Extract group

```
ADD {EXTTRAIL | RMTTRAIL} pathname, EXTRACT group[, MEGABYTES n]
```

Where:

- EXTTRAIL specifies a trail on the local system. RMTTRAIL specifies a trail on a remote system.
- *pathname* is the relative or fully qualified name of the input trail, including a two-character name that can be any two alphanumeric characters, for example c:\ggs\dirdat\rt. It must be the same name that you specified in the Extract parameter file.
- EXTRACT *group* specifies the name of the Extract group.
- MEGABYTES *n* is an optional argument with which you can set the size, in megabytes, of each trail file (default is 100).

### To create a Replicat group for reverse processing

```
ADD REPLICAT group, EXTTRAIL pathname  
[, BEGIN {NOW | YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM[:SS[.CCCCCC]]}] | , EXTSEQNO seqno, EXTRBA rba  
[, CHECKPOINTTABLE ]  
[, NODBCHECKPOINT]
```

Where:

- *group* is the name of the Replicat group. A group name can contain up to eight characters, and is not case-sensitive.
- EXTTRAIL *pathname* is the relative or fully qualified name of an output trail that you will be creating for this Replicat with the ADD RMTTRAIL command.

- BEGIN {NOW | YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM[:SS[.CCCCCC]]} defines an online Replicat group by establishing an initial checkpoint and start point for processing. Use one of the following:
  - Use NOW to begin replicating records that are timestamped at the point when the ADD REPLICAT command is executed to create the group.
  - Use YYYY-MM-DD HH:MM[:SS[.CCCCCC]] as the format for specifying an exact timestamp as the begin point.
- EXTSEQNO *seqno* specifies the sequence number of a file in the trail in which to start processing. EXTRBA *rba* specifies a relative byte address as the start point within that file. By default, processing begins at the beginning of a trail unless this option is used. For the sequence number, specify the number, but not any zeroes used for padding. For example, if a trail file is c:\ggs\dirdat\aa000026, you would specify EXTSEQNO 26. Contact Oracle Support before using this option. For more information, go to <http://support.oracle.com>.
- CHECKPOINTTABLE specifies the owner and name of a checkpoint table other than the default specified in the GLOBALS file. To use this option, you must add the checkpoint table to the database with the ADD CHECKPOINTTABLE command.
- NODBCHECKPOINT specifies that this Replicat group will not use a checkpoint table.

#### To create an output trail that is linked to the Replicat group

```
ADD {EXTTRAIL | RMTTRAIL} pathname, REPLICAT group
[, MEGABYTES n]
```

Where:

- EXTTRAIL specifies a trail on the local system. RMTTRAIL specifies a trail on a remote system.
- *pathname* is the relative or fully qualified name of the output trail, including a two-character name that can be any two alphanumeric characters, for example c:\ggs\dirdat\rt. This must be the trail that was specified with EXTTRAIL in the ADD REPLICAT command.
- REPLICAT *group* specifies the name of the Replicat group.
- MEGABYTES *n* is an optional argument with which you can set the size, in megabytes, of each trail file (default is 100).

## 21.5 Running the Reverse Utility

1. From GGSCI, run Extract.

```
START EXTRACT group
```

2. Issue the following command until at EOF is returned, indicating that Extract is finished capturing the specified records.

```
SEND EXTRACT group, STATUS
```

3. Run the Reverse utility by using the fully qualified path name or by changing directories to the Oracle GoldenGate directory and running reverse from there.

---

**Note:** Using a full path name or a path relative to the Oracle GoldenGate directory is especially important on UNIX systems, to prevent confusion with the UNIX reverse command.

---

*/GoldenGate\_directory/reverse input\_file, output\_file*

Where:

- *input\_file* is the input file specified with EXTTRAIL or RMTTRAIL in the Extract parameter file.
- *output\_file* is the output file specified with EXTTRAIL in the ADD REPLICAT command.

\home\ggs\reverse input.c:\ggs\dirdat\et, output.c:\ggs\dirdat\rt

4. When reverse is finished running, run Replicat to apply the reversed-out data to the database.

START REPLICAT *group*

## 21.6 Undoing the Changes Made by the Reverse Utility

If the reverse processing produces unexpected or undesired results, you can reapply the original changes to the database. To do so, edit the Replicat parameter file and specify the input file in place of the output file, then run Replicat again.



# A

---

## Supported Character Sets

This appendix lists the character sets that Oracle GoldenGate supports when converting data from source to target.

The identifiers that are shown should be used for Oracle GoldenGate parameters or commands when a character set must be specified, instead of the actual character set name. Currently Oracle GoldenGate does not provide a facility to specify the database-specific character set.

This appendix includes the following sections:

- [Section A.1, "Supported Character Sets - Oracle"](#)
- [Section A.2, "Supported Character Sets - Non-Oracle"](#)

### A.1 Supported Character Sets - Oracle

*Table A-1 Supported Oracle Character Sets*

| Identifier to use in parameter files and commands | Character Set                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| ar8ados710t                                       | Arabic MS-DOS 710 8-bit Latin/Arabic           |
| ar8ados710                                        | Arabic MS-DOS 710 Server 8-bit Latin/Arabic    |
| ar8ados720t                                       | Arabic MS-DOS 720 8-bit Latin/Arabic           |
| ar8ados720                                        | Arabic MS-DOS 720 Server 8-bit Latin/Arabic    |
| ar8aptec715t                                      | APTEC 715 8-bit Latin/Arabic                   |
| ar8aptec715                                       | APTEC 715 Server 8-bit Latin/Arabic            |
| ar8arabicmacs                                     | Mac Server 8-bit Latin/Arabic                  |
| ar8arabicmact                                     | Mac 8-bit Latin/Arabic                         |
| ar8arabicmac                                      | Mac Client 8-bit Latin/Arabic                  |
| ar8asmo708plus                                    | ASMO 708 Plus 8-bit Latin/Arabic               |
| ar8asmo8x                                         | ASMO Extended 708 8-bit Latin/Arabic           |
| ar8ebcdic420s                                     | EBCDIC Code Page 420 Server 8-bit Latin/Arabic |
| ar8ebcdicx                                        | EBCDIC XBASIC Server 8-bit Latin/Arabic        |
| ar8hparabic8t                                     | HP 8-bit Latin/Arabic                          |
| ar8iso8859p6                                      | ISO 8859-6 Latin/Arabic                        |
| ar8mswin1256                                      | MS Windows Code Page 1256 8-Bit Latin/Arabic   |

**Table A-1 (Cont.) Supported Oracle Character Sets**

| <b>Identifier to use in parameter files and commands</b> | <b>Character Set</b>                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| ar8mussad768t                                            | Muss'a'd Alarabi/2 768 8-bit Latin/Arabic              |
| ar8mussad768                                             | Muss'a'd Alarabi/2 768 Server 8-bit Latin/Arabic       |
| ar8nafitha711t                                           | Nafitha International 711 Server 8-bit Latin/Arabic    |
| ar8nafitha711                                            | Nafitha Enhanced 711 Server 8-bit Latin/Arabic         |
| ar8nafitha721t                                           | Nafitha International 721 8-bit Latin/Arabic           |
| ar8nafitha721                                            | Nafitha International 721 Server 8-bit Latin/Arabic    |
| ar8sakhr706                                              | SAKHR 706 Server 8-bit Latin/Arabic                    |
| ar8sakhr707t                                             | SAKHR 707 8-bit Latin/Arabic                           |
| ar8sakhr707                                              | SAKHR 707 Server 8-bit Latin/Arabic                    |
| ar8xbasic                                                | XBASIC 8-bit Latin/Arabic                              |
| az8iso8859p9e                                            | ISO 8859-9 Azerbaijani                                 |
| bg8mswin                                                 | MS Windows 8-bit Bulgarian Cyrillic                    |
| bg8pc437s                                                | IBM-PC Code Page 437 8-bit (Bulgarian Modification)    |
| blt8cp921                                                | Latvian Standard LVS8-92(1) Windows/Unix 8-bit Baltic  |
| blt8ebcdic1112s                                          | EBCDIC Code Page 1112 8-bit Server Baltic Multilingual |
| blt8ebcdic1112                                           | EBCDIC Code Page 1112 8-bit Baltic Multilingual        |
| blt8iso8859p13                                           | ISO 8859-13 Baltic                                     |
| blt8mswin1257                                            | MS Windows Code Page 1257 8-bit Baltic                 |
| blt8pc775                                                | IBM-PC Code Page 775 8-bit Baltic                      |
| bn8bsci                                                  | Bangladesh National Code 8-bit BSCII                   |
| cdn8pc863                                                | IBM-PC Code Page 863 8-bit Canadian French             |
| ce8bs2000                                                | Siemens EBCDIC.DF.04-2 8-bit Central European          |
| cel8iso8859p14                                           | ISO 8859-13 Celtic                                     |
| ch7dec                                                   | DEC VT100 7-bit Swiss (German/French)                  |
| c18bs2000                                                | Siemens EBCDIC.EHC.LC 8-bit Latin/Cyrillic-1           |
| c18ebcdic1025c                                           | EBCDIC Code Page 1025 Client 8-bit Cyrillic            |
| c18ebcdic1025r                                           | EBCDIC Code Page 1025 Server 8-bit Cyrillic            |
| c18ebcdic1025s                                           | EBCDIC Code Page 1025 Server 8-bit Cyrillic            |
| c18ebcdic1025                                            | EBCDIC Code Page 1025 8-bit Cyrillic                   |
| c18ebcdic1025x                                           | EBCDIC Code Page 1025 (Modified) 8-bit Cyrillic        |
| c18ebcdic1158r                                           | EBCDIC Code Page 1158 Server 8-bit Cyrillic            |
| c18ebcdic1158                                            | EBCDIC Code Page 1158 8-bit Cyrillic                   |
| c18iso8859p5                                             | ISO 8859-5 Latin/Cyrillic                              |
| c18isoir111                                              | SOIR111 Cyrillic                                       |
| c18koi8r                                                 | RELCOM Internet Standard 8-bit Latin/Cyrillic          |
| c18koi8u                                                 | KOI8 Ukrainian Cyrillic                                |

**Table A-1 (Cont.) Supported Oracle Character Sets**

| <b>Identifier to use in parameter files and commands</b> | <b>Character Set</b>                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| cl8maccyrillics                                          | Mac Server 8-bit Latin/Cyrillic                 |
| cl8maccyrillic                                           | Mac Client 8-bit Latin/Cyrillic                 |
| cl8mswin1251                                             | MS Windows Code Page 1251 8-bit Latin/Cyrillic  |
| d7dec                                                    | DEC VT100 7-bit German                          |
| d7siemens9780x                                           | Siemens 97801/97808 7-bit German                |
| d8bs2000                                                 | Siemens 9750-62 EBCDIC 8-bit German             |
| d8ebcdic1141                                             | EBCDIC Code Page 1141 8-bit Austrian German     |
| d8ebcdic273                                              | EBCDIC Code Page 273/1 8-bit Austrian German    |
| dk7siemens9780x                                          | Siemens 97801/97808 7-bit Danish                |
| dk8bs2000                                                | Siemens 9750-62 EBCDIC 8-bit Danish             |
| dk8ebcdic1142                                            | EBCDIC Code Page 1142 8-bit Danish              |
| dk8ebcdic277                                             | EBCDIC Code Page 277/1 8-bit Danish             |
| e7dec                                                    | DEC VT100 7-bit Spanish                         |
| e7siemens9780x                                           | Siemens 97801/97808 7-bit Spanish               |
| e8bs2000                                                 | Siemens 9750-62 EBCDIC 8-bit Spanish            |
| ee8bs2000                                                | Siemens EBCDIC.EHC.L2 8-bit East European       |
| ee8ebcdic870c                                            | EBCDIC Code Page 870 Client 8-bit East European |
| ee8ebcdic870s                                            | EBCDIC Code Page 870 Server 8-bit East European |
| ee8ebcdic870                                             | EBCDIC Code Page 870 8-bit East European        |
| ee8iso8859p2                                             | ISO 8859-2 East European                        |
| ee8macces                                                | Mac Server 8-bit Central European               |
| ee8macce                                                 | Mac Client 8-bit Central European               |
| ee8maccroatians                                          | Mac Server 8-bit Croatian                       |
| ee8maccroatian                                           | Mac Client 8-bit Croatian                       |
| ee8mswin1250                                             | MS Windows Code Page 1250 8-bit East European   |
| ee8pc852                                                 | IBM-PC Code Page 852 8-bit East European        |
| eec8euroasci                                             | EEC Targon 35 ASCII West European/Greek         |
| eec8europa3                                              | EEC EUROPA3 8-bit West European/Greek           |
| e18dec                                                   | DEC 8-bit Latin/Greek                           |
| e18ebcdic423r                                            | IBM EBCDIC Code Page 423 for RDBMS server-side  |
| e18ebcdic875r                                            | EBCDIC Code Page 875 Server 8-bit Greek         |
| e18ebcdic875s                                            | EBCDIC Code Page 875 Server 8-bit Greek         |
| e18ebcdic875                                             | EBCDIC Code Page 875 8-bit Greek                |
| e18gcos7                                                 | Bull EBCDIC GCOS7 8-bit Greek                   |
| e18iso8859p7                                             | ISO 8859-7 Latin/Greek                          |
| e18macgreeks                                             | Mac Server 8-bit Greek                          |

**Table A–1 (Cont.) Supported Oracle Character Sets**

| <b>Identifier to use in parameter files and commands</b> | <b>Character Set</b>                                                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| e18macgreek                                              | Mac Client 8-bit Greek                                                                             |
| e18mswin1253                                             | MS Windows Code Page 1253 8-bit Latin/Greek                                                        |
| e18pc437s                                                | IBM-PC Code Page 437 8-bit (Greek modification)                                                    |
| e18pc737                                                 | IBM-PC Code Page 737 8-bit Greek/Latin                                                             |
| e18pc851                                                 | IBM-PC Code Page 851 8-bit Greek/Latin                                                             |
| e18pc869                                                 | IBM-PC Code Page 869 8-bit Greek/Latin                                                             |
| et8mswin923                                              | MS Windows Code Page 923 8-bit Estonian                                                            |
| f7dec                                                    | DEC VT100 7-bit French                                                                             |
| f7siemens9780x                                           | Siemens 97801/97808 7-bit French                                                                   |
| f8bs2000                                                 | Siemens 9750-62 EBCDIC 8-bit French                                                                |
| f8ebcdic1147                                             | EBCDIC Code Page 1147 8-bit French                                                                 |
| f8ebcdic297                                              | EBCDIC Code Page 297 8-bit French                                                                  |
| hu8abmod                                                 | Hungarian 8-bit Special AB Mod                                                                     |
| hu8cwi2                                                  | Hungarian 8-bit CWI-2                                                                              |
| i7dec                                                    | DEC VT100 7-bit Italian                                                                            |
| i7siemens9780x                                           | Siemens 97801/97808 7-bit Italian                                                                  |
| i8ebcdic1144                                             | EBCDIC Code Page 1144 8-bit Italian                                                                |
| i8ebcdic280                                              | EBCDIC Code Page 280/1 8-bit Italian                                                               |
| in8iscii                                                 | Multiple-Script Indian Standard 8-bit Latin/Indian                                                 |
| is8maccelandics                                          | Mac Server 8-bit Icelandic                                                                         |
| is8maccelandic                                           | Mac Client 8-bit Icelandic                                                                         |
| is8pc861                                                 | IBM-PC Code Page 861 8-bit Icelandic                                                               |
| iw7is960                                                 | Israeli Standard 960 7-bit Latin/Hebrew                                                            |
| iw8ebcdic1086                                            | EBCDIC Code Page 1086 8-bit Hebrew                                                                 |
| iw8ebcdic424s                                            | EBCDIC Code Page 424 Server 8-bit Latin/Hebrew                                                     |
| iw8ebcdic424                                             | EBCDIC Code Page 424 8-bit Latin/Hebrew                                                            |
| iw8iso8859p8                                             | ISO 8859-8 Latin/Hebrew                                                                            |
| iw8machebrews                                            | Mac Server 8-bit Hebrew                                                                            |
| iw8machebrew                                             | Mac Client 8-bit Hebrew                                                                            |
| iw8mswin1255                                             | MS Windows Code Page 1255 8-bit Latin/Hebrew                                                       |
| iw8pc1507                                                | IBM-PC Code Page 1507/862 8-bit Latin/Hebrew                                                       |
| ja16dbcs                                                 | IBM EBCDIC 16-bit Japanese                                                                         |
| ja16ebcdic930                                            | IBM DBCS Code Page 290 16-bit Japanese                                                             |
| ja16euctilde                                             | Same as ja16euc except for the way that the wave dash and the tilde are mapped to and from Unicode |
| ja16euc                                                  | EUC 24-bit Japanese                                                                                |

**Table A-1 (Cont.) Supported Oracle Character Sets**

| <b>Identifier to use in parameter files and commands</b> | <b>Character Set</b>                                                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| ja16eucyen                                               | EUC 24-bit Japanese with '\' mapped to the Japanese yen character                                    |
| ja16macsjis                                              | Mac client Shift-JIS 16-bit Japanese                                                                 |
| ja16sjistilde                                            | Same as ja16sjis except for the way that the wave dash and the tilde are mapped to and from Unicode. |
| ja16sjis                                                 | Shift-JIS 16-bit Japanese                                                                            |
| ja16sjisyen                                              | Shift-JIS 16-bit Japanese with '\' mapped to the Japanese yen character                              |
| ja16vms                                                  | JVMS 16-bit Japanese                                                                                 |
| ko16dbcs                                                 | IBM EBCDIC 16-bit Korean                                                                             |
| ko16ksc5601                                              | KSC5601 16-bit Korean                                                                                |
| ko16ksccs                                                | KSCCS 16-bit Korean                                                                                  |
| ko16mswin949                                             | MS Windows Code Page 949 Korean                                                                      |
| la8iso6937                                               | ISO 6937 8-bit Coded Character Set for Text Communication                                            |
| la8passport                                              | German Government Printer 8-bit All-European Latin                                                   |
| lt8mswin921                                              | MS Windows Code Page 921 8-bit Lithuanian                                                            |
| lt8pc772                                                 | IBM-PC Code Page 772 8-bit Lithuanian (Latin/Cyrillic)                                               |
| lt8pc774                                                 | IBM-PC Code Page 774 8-bit Lithuanian (Latin)                                                        |
| lv8pc1117                                                | IBM-PC Code Page 1117 8-bit Latvian                                                                  |
| lv8pc81r                                                 | Latvian Version IBM-PC Code Page 866 8-bit Latin/Cyrillic                                            |
| lv8rst104090                                             | IBM-PC Alternative Code Page 8-bit Latvian (Latin/Cyrillic)                                          |
| n7siemens9780x                                           | Siemens 97801/97808 7-bit Norwegian                                                                  |
| n8pc865                                                  | IBM-PC Code Page 865 8-bit Norwegian                                                                 |
| ndk7dec                                                  | DEC VT100 7-bit Norwegian/Danish                                                                     |
| ne8iso8859p10                                            | ISO 8859-10 North European                                                                           |
| nee8iso8859p4                                            | ISO 8859-4 North and North-East European                                                             |
| nl7dec                                                   | DEC VT100 7-bit Dutch                                                                                |
| ru8besta                                                 | BESTA 8-bit Latin/Cyrillic                                                                           |
| ru8pc855                                                 | IBM-PC Code Page 855 8-bit Latin/Cyrillic                                                            |
| ru8pc866                                                 | IBM-PC Code Page 866 8-bit Latin/Cyrillic                                                            |
| s7dec                                                    | DEC VT100 7-bit Swedish                                                                              |
| s7siemens9780x                                           | Siemens 97801/97808 7-bit Swedish                                                                    |
| s8bs2000                                                 | Siemens 9750-62 EBCDIC 8-bit Swedish                                                                 |
| s8ebcdic1143                                             | EBCDIC Code Page 1143 8-bit Swedish                                                                  |
| s8ebcdic278                                              | EBCDIC Code Page 278/1 8-bit Swedish                                                                 |
| se8iso8859p3                                             | ISO 8859-3 South European                                                                            |
| sf7ascii                                                 | ASCII 7-bit Finnish                                                                                  |
| sf7dec                                                   | DEC VT100 7-bit Finnish                                                                              |

**Table A-1 (Cont.) Supported Oracle Character Sets**

| <b>Identifier to use in parameter files and commands</b> | <b>Character Set</b>                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| th8macthais                                              | Mac Server 8-bit Latin/Thai                                 |
| th8macthai                                               | Mac Client 8-bit Latin/Thai                                 |
| th8tisascii                                              | Thai Industrial Standard 620-2533 - ASCII 8-bit             |
| th8tisebcdics                                            | Thai Industrial Standard 620-2533 - EBCDIC Server 8-bit     |
| th8tisebcdic                                             | Thai Industrial Standard 620-2533 - EBCDIC 8-bit            |
| timesten8                                                | TimesTen Legacy                                             |
| tr7dec                                                   | DEC VT100 7-bit Turkish                                     |
| tr8dec                                                   | DEC 8-bit Turkish                                           |
| tr8ebcdic1026s                                           | EBCDIC Code Page 1026 Server 8-bit Turkish                  |
| tr8ebcdic1026                                            | EBCDIC Code Page 1026 8-bit Turkish                         |
| tr8macturkishs                                           | Mac Server 8-bit Turkish                                    |
| tr8macturkish                                            | Mac Client 8-bit Turkish                                    |
| tr8mswin1254                                             | MS Windows Code Page 1254 8-bit Turkish                     |
| tr8pc857                                                 | IBM-PC Code Page 857 8-bit Turkish                          |
| us7ascii                                                 | ASCII 7-bit American                                        |
| us8bs2000                                                | Siemens 9750-62 EBCDIC 8-bit American                       |
| us8ic1                                                   | ICL EBCDIC 8-bit American                                   |
| us8pc437                                                 | IBM-PC Code Page 437 8-bit American                         |
| vn8mswin1258                                             | MS Windows Code Page 1258 8-bit Vietnamese                  |
| vn8vn3                                                   | VN3 8-bit Vietnamese                                        |
| we8bs2000e                                               | Siemens EBCDIC.DF.04-F 8-bit West European with Euro symbol |
| we8bs200015                                              | Siemens EBCDIC.DF.04-9 8-bit WE & Turkish                   |
| we8bs2000                                                | Siemens EBCDIC.DF.04-1 8-bit West European                  |
| we8dec                                                   | DEC 8-bit West European                                     |
| we8dg                                                    | DG 8-bit West European                                      |
| we8ebcdic1047e                                           | Latin 1/Open Systems 1047                                   |
| we8ebcdic1047                                            | EBCDIC Code Page 1047 8-bit West European                   |
| we8ebcdic1140c                                           | EBCDIC Code Page 1140 Client 8-bit West European            |
| we8ebcdic1140                                            | EBCDIC Code Page 1140 8-bit West European                   |
| we8ebcdic1145                                            | EBCDIC Code Page 1145 8-bit West European                   |
| we8ebcdic1146                                            | EBCDIC Code Page 1146 8-bit West European                   |
| we8ebcdic1148c                                           | EBCDIC Code Page 1148 Client 8-bit West European            |
| we8ebcdic1148                                            | EBCDIC Code Page 1148 8-bit West European                   |
| we8ebcdic284                                             | EBCDIC Code Page 284 8-bit Latin American/Spanish           |
| we8ebcdic285                                             | EBCDIC Code Page 285 8-bit West European                    |
| we8ebcdic37c                                             | EBCDIC Code Page 37 8-bit Oracle/c                          |

**Table A-1 (Cont.) Supported Oracle Character Sets**

| <b>Identifier to use in parameter files and commands</b> | <b>Character Set</b>                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| we8ebcdic37                                              | EBCDIC Code Page 37 8-bit West European                                                                                                               |
| we8ebcdic500c                                            | EBCDIC Code Page 500 8-bit Oracle/c                                                                                                                   |
| we8ebcdic500                                             | EBCDIC Code Page 500 8-bit West European                                                                                                              |
| we8ebcdic871                                             | EBCDIC Code Page 871 8-bit Icelandic                                                                                                                  |
| we8ebcdic924                                             | Latin 9 EBCDIC 924                                                                                                                                    |
| we8gcos7                                                 | Bull EBCDIC GCOS7 8-bit West European                                                                                                                 |
| we8hp                                                    | HP LaserJet 8-bit West European                                                                                                                       |
| we8icl                                                   | ICL EBCDIC 8-bit West European                                                                                                                        |
| we8iso8859p15                                            | ISO 8859-15 West European                                                                                                                             |
| we8iso8859p1                                             | ISO 8859-1 West European                                                                                                                              |
| we8iso8859p9                                             | ISO 8859-9 West European & Turkish                                                                                                                    |
| we8isoiclk                                               | ICL special version ISO8859-1                                                                                                                         |
| we8macroman8s                                            | Mac Server 8-bit Extended Roman8 West European                                                                                                        |
| we8macroman8                                             | Mac Client 8-bit Extended Roman8 West European                                                                                                        |
| we8mswin1252                                             | MS Windows Code Page 1252 8-bit West European                                                                                                         |
| we8ncr4970                                               | NCR 4970 8-bit West European                                                                                                                          |
| we8nextstep                                              | NeXTSTEP PostScript 8-bit West European                                                                                                               |
| we8pc850                                                 | IBM-PC Code Page 850 8-bit West European                                                                                                              |
| we8pc858                                                 | IBM-PC Code Page 858 8-bit West European                                                                                                              |
| we8pc860                                                 | IBM-PC Code Page 860 8-bit West European                                                                                                              |
| we8roman8                                                | HP Roman8 8-bit West European                                                                                                                         |
| yug7ascii                                                | ASCII 7-bit Yugoslavian                                                                                                                               |
| zhs16cgb231280                                           | CGB2312-80 16-bit Simplified Chinese                                                                                                                  |
| zhs16dbcs                                                | IBM EBCDIC 16-bit Simplified Chinese                                                                                                                  |
| zhs16gbk                                                 | GBK 16-bit Simplified Chinese                                                                                                                         |
| zhs16maccgb231280                                        | Mac client CGB2312-80 16-bit Simplified Chinese                                                                                                       |
| zht16big5                                                | BIG5 16-bit Traditional Chinese                                                                                                                       |
| zht16ccdc                                                | HP CCDC 16-bit Traditional Chinese                                                                                                                    |
| zht16dbcs                                                | IBM EBCDIC 16-bit Traditional Chinese                                                                                                                 |
| zht16dbt                                                 | Taiwan Taxation 16-bit Traditional Chinese                                                                                                            |
| zht16hkscs31                                             | MS Windows Code Page 950 with Hong Kong Supplementary Character Set HKSCS-2001 (character set conversion to and from Unicode is based on Unicode 3.1) |
| zht16hkscs                                               | MS Windows Code Page 950 with Hong Kong Supplementary Character Set HKSCS-2001 (character set conversion to and from Unicode is based on Unicode 3.0) |
| zht16mswin950                                            | MS Windows Code Page 950 Traditional Chinese                                                                                                          |

**Table A-1 (Cont.) Supported Oracle Character Sets**

| <b>Identifier to use in parameter files and commands</b> | <b>Character Set</b>            |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| zht32euc                                                 | EUC 32-bit Traditional Chinese  |
| zht32sops                                                | SOPS 32-bit Traditional Chinese |
| zht32tris                                                | TRIS 32-bit Traditional Chinese |

## A.2 Supported Character Sets - Non-Oracle

| <b>Identifier to use in parameter files and commands</b> | <b>Character set</b>                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| UTF-8                                                    | ISO-10646 UTF-8, surrogate pairs are 4 bytes per character                          |
| UTF-16                                                   | ISO-10646 UTF-16                                                                    |
| UTF-16BE                                                 | UTF-16 Big Endian                                                                   |
| UTF-16LE                                                 | UTF-16 Little Endian                                                                |
| UTF-32                                                   | ISO-10646 UTF-32                                                                    |
| UTF-32BE                                                 | UTF-32 Big Endian                                                                   |
| UTF-32LE                                                 | UTF-32 Little Endian                                                                |
| CESU-8                                                   | Similar to UTF-8, correspond to UCS-2 and surrogate pairs are 6 bytes per character |
| US-ASCII                                                 | US-ASCII, ANSI X34-1986                                                             |
| windows-1250                                             | Windows Central Europe                                                              |
| windows-1251                                             | Windows Cyrillic                                                                    |
| windows-1252                                             | Windows Latin-1                                                                     |
| windows-1253                                             | Windows Greek                                                                       |
| windows-1254                                             | Windows Turkish                                                                     |
| windows-1255                                             | Windows Hebrew                                                                      |
| windows-1256                                             | Windows Arabic                                                                      |
| windows-1257                                             | Windows Baltic                                                                      |
| windows-1258                                             | Windows Vietnam                                                                     |
| windows-874                                              | Windows Thai                                                                        |
| cp437                                                    | DOS Latin-1                                                                         |
| ibm-720                                                  | DOS Arabic                                                                          |
| cp737                                                    | DOS Greek                                                                           |
| cp775                                                    | DOS Baltic                                                                          |
| cp850                                                    | DOS multilingual                                                                    |
| cp851                                                    | DOS Greek-1                                                                         |
| cp852                                                    | DOS Latin-2                                                                         |
| cp855                                                    | DOS Cyrillic                                                                        |

| <b>Identifier to use in parameter files and commands</b> | <b>Character set</b>                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| cp856                                                    | DOS Cyrillic / IBM                                                                                    |
| cp857                                                    | DOS Turkish                                                                                           |
| cp858                                                    | DOS Multilingual with Euro                                                                            |
| cp860                                                    | DOS Portuguese                                                                                        |
| cp861                                                    | DOS Icelandic                                                                                         |
| cp862                                                    | DOS Hebrew                                                                                            |
| cp863                                                    | DOS French                                                                                            |
| cp864                                                    | DOS Arabic                                                                                            |
| cp865                                                    | DOS Nordic                                                                                            |
| cp866                                                    | DOS Cyrillic / GOST 19768-87                                                                          |
| ibm-867                                                  | DOS Hebrew / IBM                                                                                      |
| cp868                                                    | DOS Urdu                                                                                              |
| cp869                                                    | DOS Greek-2                                                                                           |
| ISO-8859-1                                               | ISO-8859-1 Latin-1/Western Europe                                                                     |
| ISO-8859-2                                               | ISO-8859-2 Latin-2/Eastern Europe                                                                     |
| ISO-8859-3                                               | ISO-8859-3 Latin-3/South Europe                                                                       |
| ISO-8859-4                                               | ISO-8859-4 Latin-4/North Europe                                                                       |
| ISO-8859-5                                               | ISO-8859-5 Latin/Cyrillic                                                                             |
| ISO-8859-6                                               | ISO-8859-6 Latin/Arabic                                                                               |
| ISO-8859-7                                               | ISO-8859-7 Latin/Greek                                                                                |
| ISO-8859-8                                               | ISO-8859-8 Latin/Hebrew                                                                               |
| ISO-8859-9                                               | ISO-8859-9 Latin-5/Turkish                                                                            |
| ISO-8859-10                                              | ISO-8859-10 Latin-6/Nordic                                                                            |
| ISO-8859-11                                              | ISO-8859-11 Latin/Thai                                                                                |
| ISO-8859-13                                              | ISO-8859-13 Latin-7/Baltic Rim                                                                        |
| ISO-8859-14                                              | ISO-8859-14 Latin-8/Celtic                                                                            |
| ISO-8859-15                                              | ISO-8859-15 Latin-9/Western Europe                                                                    |
| IBM037                                                   | IBM 037-1/697-1 EBCDIC, Brazil, Canada, Netherlands, Portugal, US, and 037/1175 Traditional Chinese   |
| IBM01140                                                 | IBM 1140-1/695-1 EBCDIC, Brazil, Canada, Netherlands, Portugal, US, and 1140/1175 Traditional Chinese |
| IBM273                                                   | IBM 273-1/697-1 EBCDIC, Austria, Germany                                                              |
| IBM01141                                                 | IBM 1141-1/695-1 EBCDIC, Austria, Germany                                                             |
| IBM277                                                   | IBM 277-1/697-1 EBCDIC, Denmark, Norway                                                               |
| IBM01142                                                 | IBM 1142-1/695-1 EBCDIC, Denmark, Norway                                                              |
| IBM278                                                   | IBM 278-1/697-1 EBCDIC, Finland, Sweden                                                               |
| IBM01143                                                 | IBM 1143-1/695-1 EBCDIC, Finland, Sweden                                                              |

| <b>Identifier to use in parameter files and commands</b> | <b>Character set</b>                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| IBM280                                                   | IBM 280-1/697-1 EBCDIC, Italy                       |
| IBM01144                                                 | IBM 1144-1/695-1 EBCDIC, Italy                      |
| IBM284                                                   | IBM 284-1/697-1 EBCDIC, Latin America, Spain        |
| IBM01145                                                 | IBM 1145-1/695-1 EBCDIC, Latin America, Spain       |
| IBM285                                                   | IBM 285-1/697-1 EBCDIC, United Kingdom              |
| IBM01146                                                 | IBM 1146-1/695-1 EBCDIC, United Kingdom             |
| IBM290                                                   | IBM 290 EBCDIC, Japan (Katakana) Extended           |
| IBM297                                                   | IBM 297-1/697-1 EBCDIC, France                      |
| IBM01147                                                 | IBM 1147-1/695-1 EBCDIC, France                     |
| IBM420                                                   | IBM 420 EBCDIC, Arabic Bilingual                    |
| IBM424                                                   | IBM 424/941 EBCDIC, Israel (Hebrew - Bulletin Code) |
| IBM500                                                   | IBM 500-1/697-1 EBCDIC, International               |
| IBM01148                                                 | IBM 1148-1/695-1 EBCDIC International               |
| IBM870                                                   | IBM 870/959 EBCDIC, Latin-2 Multilingual            |
| IBM871                                                   | IBM 871-1/697-1 EBCDIC Iceland                      |
| IBM918                                                   | IBM EBCDIC code page 918, Arabic 2                  |
| IBM1149                                                  | IBM 1149-1/695-1, EBCDIC Iceland                    |
| IBM1047                                                  | IBM 1047/103 EBCDIC, Latin-1 (Open Systems)         |
| ibm-803                                                  | IBM 803 EBCDIC, Israel (Hebrew - Old Code)          |
| IBM875                                                   | IBM 875 EBCDIC, Greece                              |
| ibm-924                                                  | IBM 924-1/1353-1 EBCDIC International               |
| ibm-1153                                                 | IBM 1153/1375 EBCDIC, Latin-2 Multilingual          |
| ibm-1122                                                 | IBM 1122/1037 EBCDIC, Estonia                       |
| ibm-1157                                                 | IBM 1157/1391 EBCDIC, Estonia                       |
| ibm-1112                                                 | IBM 1112/1035 EBCDIC, Latvia, Lithuania             |
| ibm-1156                                                 | IBM 1156/1393 EBCDIC, Latvia, Lithuania             |
| ibm-4899                                                 | IBM EBCDIC code page 4899, Hebrew with Euro         |
| ibm-12712                                                | IBM 12712 EBCDIC, Hebrew (max set including Euro)   |
| ibm-1097                                                 | IBM 1097 EBCDIC, Farsi                              |
| ibm-1018                                                 | IBM 1018 EBCDIC, Finland Sweden (ISO-7)             |
| ibm-1132                                                 | IBM 1132 EBCDIC, Laos                               |
| ibm-1137                                                 | IBM EBCDIC code page 1137, Devanagari               |
| ibm-1025                                                 | IBM 1025/1150 EBCDIC, Cyrillic                      |
| ibm-1154                                                 | IBM EBCDIC code page 1154, Cyrillic with Euro       |
| IBM1026                                                  | IBM 1026/1152 EBCDIC, Latin-5 Turkey                |
| ibm-1155                                                 | IBM EBCDIC code page 1155, Turkish with Euro        |
| ibm-1123                                                 | IBM 1123 EBCDIC, Ukraine                            |

| <b>Identifier to use in parameter files and commands</b> | <b>Character set</b>                            |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| ibm-1158                                                 | IBM EBCDIC code page 1158, Ukrainian with Euro  |
| IBM838                                                   | IBM 838/1173 EBCDIC, Thai                       |
| ibm-1160                                                 | IBM EBCDIC code page 1160, Thai with Euro       |
| ibm-1130                                                 | IBM 1130 EBCDIC, Vietnam                        |
| ibm-1164                                                 | IBM EBCDIC code page 1164, Vietnamese with Euro |
| ibm-4517                                                 | IBM EBCDIC code page 4517, Arabic French        |
| ibm-4971                                                 | IBM EBCDIC code page 4971, Greek                |
| ibm-9067                                                 | IBM EBCDIC code page 9067, Greek 2005           |
| ibm-16804                                                | IBM EBCDIC code page 16804, Arabic              |
| KOI8-R                                                   | Russian and Cyrillic (KOI8-R)                   |
| KOI8-U                                                   | Ukrainian (KOI8-U)                              |
| eucTH                                                    | EUC Thai                                        |
| ibm-1162                                                 | Windows Thai with Euro                          |
| DEC-MCS                                                  | DEC Multilingual                                |
| hp-roman8                                                | HP Latin-1 Roman8                               |
| ibm-901                                                  | IBM Baltic ISO-8 CCSID 901                      |
| ibm-902                                                  | IBM Estonia ISO-8 with Euro CCSID 902           |
| ibm-916                                                  | IBM ISO8859-8 CCSID                             |
| ibm-922                                                  | IBM Estonia ISO-8 CCSID 922                     |
| ibm-1006                                                 | IBM Urdu ISO-8 CCSID 1006                       |
| ibm-1098                                                 | IBM Farsi PC CCSID 1098                         |
| ibm-1124                                                 | Ukrainian ISO-8 CCSID 1124                      |
| ibm-1125                                                 | Ukrainian without Euro CCSID 1125               |
| ibm-1129                                                 | IBM Vietnamese without Euro CCSID 1129          |
| ibm-1131                                                 | IBM Belarusi CCSID 1131                         |
| ibm-1133                                                 | IBM Lao CCSID 1133                              |
| ibm-4909                                                 | IBM Greek Latin ASCII CCSID 4909                |
| JIS_X201                                                 | JIS X201 Japanese                               |
| windows-932                                              | Windows Japanese                                |
| windows-936                                              | Windows Simplified Chinese                      |
| ibm-942                                                  | IBM Windows Japanese                            |
| windows-949                                              | Windows Korean                                  |
| windows-950                                              | Windows Traditional Chinese                     |
| eucjis                                                   | EUC Japanese                                    |
| EUC-JP                                                   | IBM/MS EUC Japanese                             |
| EUC-CN                                                   | EUC Simplified Chinese, GBK                     |
| EUC-KR                                                   | EUC Korean                                      |

| <b>Identifier to use in<br/>parameter files<br/>and commands</b> | <b>Character set</b>                              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| EUC-TW                                                           | EUC Traditional Chinese                           |
| ibm-930                                                          | IBM 930/5026 Japanese                             |
| ibm-933                                                          | IBM 933 Korean                                    |
| ibm-935                                                          | IBM 935 Simplified Chinese                        |
| ibm-937                                                          | IBM 937 Traditional Chinese                       |
| ibm-939                                                          | IBM 939/5035 Japanese                             |
| ibm-1364                                                         | IBM 1364 Korean                                   |
| ibm-1371                                                         | IBM 1371 Traditional Chinese                      |
| ibm-1388                                                         | IBM 1388 Simplified Chinese                       |
| ibm-1390                                                         | IBM 1390 Japanese                                 |
| ibm-1399                                                         | IBM 1399 Japanese                                 |
| ibm-5123                                                         | IBM CCSID 5123 Japanese                           |
| ibm-8482                                                         | IBM CCSID 8482 Japanese                           |
| ibm-13218                                                        | IBM CCSID 13218 Japanese                          |
| ibm-16684                                                        | IBM CCSID 16684 Japanese                          |
| shiftjis                                                         | Japanese Shift JIS, Tilde 0x8160 mapped to U+301C |
| gb18030                                                          | GB-18030                                          |
| GB2312                                                           | GB-2312-1980                                      |
| GBK                                                              | GBK                                               |
| HZ                                                               | HZ GB2312                                         |
| Ibm-1381                                                         | IBM CCSID 1381 Simplified Chinese                 |
| Big5                                                             | Big5, Traditional Chinese                         |
| Big5-HKSCS                                                       | Big5, HongKong ext.                               |
| Big5-HKSCS2001                                                   | Big5, HongKong ext. HKSCS-2001                    |
| ibm-950                                                          | IBM Big5, CCSID 950                               |
| ibm-949                                                          | CCSID 949 Korean                                  |
| ibm-949C                                                         | IBM CCSID 949 Korean, has backslash               |
| ibm-971                                                          | IBM CCSID 971 Korean EUC, KSC5601 1989            |
| x-IBM1363                                                        | IBM CCSID 1363, Korean                            |

# B

---

## Supported Locales

This appendix lists the locales that are supported by Oracle GoldenGate. The locale is used when comparing case-insensitive object names.

af  
af\_NA  
af\_ZA  
am  
am\_ET  
ar  
ar\_AE  
ar\_BH  
ar\_DZ  
ar\_EG  
ar\_IQ  
ar\_JO  
ar\_KW  
ar\_LB  
ar LY  
ar\_MA  
ar\_OM  
ar\_QA  
ar\_SA  
ar\_SD  
ar\_SY  
ar\_TN  
ar\_YE  
as  
as\_IN  
az  
az\_Cyrl  
az\_Cyrl\_AZ  
az\_Latn  
az\_Latn\_AZ  
be  
be\_BY  
bg  
bg\_BG  
bn  
bn\_BD  
bn\_IN  
ca  
ca\_ES

---

```
cs
cs_CZ
cy
cy_GB
da
da_DK
de
de_AT
de_BE
de_CH
de_DE
de_LI
de LU
el
el_CY
el_GR
en
en_AU
en_BE
en_BW
en_BZ
en_CA
en_GB
en_HK
en_IE
en_IN
en_JM
en_MH
en_MT
en_NA
en_NZ
en_PH
en_PK
en_SG
en_TT
en_US
en_US_POSIX
en_VI
en_ZA
en_ZW
eo
es
es_AR
es_BO
es_CL
es_CO
es_CR
es_DO
es_EC
es_ES
es_GT
es_HN
es_MX
es_NI
es_PA
```

---

es\_PE  
es\_PR  
es\_PY  
es\_SV  
es\_US  
es\_UY  
es\_VE  
et  
et\_EE  
eu  
eu\_ES  
fa  
fa\_AF  
fa\_IR  
fi  
fi\_FI  
fo  
fo\_FO  
fr  
fr\_BE  
fr\_CA  
fr\_CH  
fr\_FR  
fr\_LU  
fr\_MC  
ga  
ga\_IE  
gl  
gl\_ES  
gu  
gu\_IN  
gv  
gv\_GB  
haw  
haw\_US  
he  
he\_IL  
hi  
hi\_IN  
hr  
hr\_HR  
hu  
hu\_HU  
hy  
hy\_AM  
hy\_AM\_REVISED  
id  
id\_ID  
is  
is\_IS  
it  
it\_CH  
it\_IT  
ja  
ja\_JP

---

```
ka
ka_GE
kk
kk_KZ
kl
kl_GL
km
km_KH
kn
kn_IN
ko
ko_KR
kok
kok_IN
kw
kw_GB
lt
lt_LT
lv
lv_LV
mk
mk_MK
ml
ml_IN
mr
mr_IN
ms
ms_BN
ms_MY
mt
mt_MT
nb
nb_NO
nl
nl_BE
nl_NL
nn
nn_NO
om
om_ET
om_KE
or
or_IN
pa
pa_Guru
pa_Guru_IN
pl
pl_PL
ps
ps_AF
pt
pt_BR
pt_PT
ro
ro_RO
```

---

ru  
ru\_RU  
ru\_UA  
sk  
sk\_SK  
sl  
sl\_SI  
so  
so\_DJ  
so\_ET  
so\_KE  
so\_SO  
sq  
sq\_AL  
sr  
sr\_Cyrl  
sr\_Cyrl\_BA  
sr\_Cyrl\_ME  
sr\_Cyrl\_RS  
sr\_Latn  
sr\_Latn\_BA  
sr\_Latn\_ME  
sr\_Latn\_RS  
sv  
sv\_FI  
sv\_SE  
sw  
sw\_KE  
sw\_TZ  
ta  
ta\_IN  
te  
te\_IN  
th  
th\_TH  
ti  
ti\_ER  
ti\_ET  
tr  
tr\_TR  
uk  
uk\_UA  
ur  
ur\_IN  
ur\_PK  
uz  
uz\_Arab  
uz\_Arab\_AF  
uz\_Cyrl  
uz\_Cyrl\_UZ  
uz\_Latn  
uz\_Latn\_UZ  
vi  
vi\_VN  
zh

---

```
zh_Hans
zh_Hans_CN
zh_Hans_SG
zh_Hant
zh_Hant_HK
zh_Hant_MO
zh_Hant_TW
```

---

## About the Oracle GoldenGate Trail

This appendix contains information about the Oracle GoldenGate trail that you may need to know for troubleshooting, for a support case, or for other purposes. To view the Oracle GoldenGate trail records, use the Logdump utility.

This appendix includes the following sections:

- [Trail Recovery Mode](#)
- [Trail File Header Record](#)
- [Trail Record Format](#)
- [Example of an Oracle GoldenGate Record](#)
- [Record Header Area](#)
- [Record Data Area](#)
- [Tokens Area](#)
- [Oracle GoldenGate Operation Types](#)
- [Oracle GoldenGate Trail Header Record](#)

### C.1 Trail Recovery Mode

By default, Extract operates in *append mode*, where if there is a process failure, a recovery marker is written to the trail and Extract appends recovery data to the file so that a history of all prior data is retained for recovery purposes.

In append mode, the Extract initialization determines the identity of the last complete transaction that was written to the trail at startup time. With that information, Extract ends recovery when the commit record for that transaction is encountered in the data source; then it begins new data capture with the next committed transaction that qualifies for extraction and begins appending the new data to the trail. A data pump or Replicat starts reading again from that recovery point.

*Overwrite mode* is another version of Extract recovery that was used in versions of Oracle GoldenGate prior to version 10.0. In these versions, Extract overwrites the existing transaction data in the trail after the last write-checkpoint position, instead of appending the new data. The first transaction that is written is the first one that qualifies for extraction after the last read checkpoint position in the data source.

If the version of Oracle GoldenGate on the target is older than version 10, Extract will automatically revert to overwrite mode to support backward compatibility. This behavior can be controlled manually with the RECOVERYOPTIONS parameter.

## C.2 Trail File Header Record

As of Oracle GoldenGate version 10.0, each file of a trail contains a *file header record* that is stored at the beginning of the file. The file header contains information about the trail file itself. Previous versions of Oracle GoldenGate do not contain this header.

Because all of the Oracle GoldenGate processes are decoupled and thus can be of different Oracle GoldenGate versions, the file header of each trail file contains a version indicator. By default, the version of a trail file is the current version of the process that created the file. If you need to set the version of a trail, use the FORMAT option of the EXTTRAIL, EXTFILE, RMTTRAIL, or RMTFILE parameter.

To ensure forward and backward compatibility of files among different Oracle GoldenGate process versions, the file header fields are written in a standardized token format. New tokens that are created by new versions of a process can be ignored by older versions, so that backward compatibility is maintained. Likewise, newer Oracle GoldenGate versions support older tokens. Additionally, if a token is deprecated by a new process version, a default value is assigned to the token so that older versions can still function properly. The token that specifies the file version is COMPATIBILITY and can be viewed in the Logdump utility and also by retrieving it with the GGFILEHEADER option of the @GETENV function.

A trail or extract file must have a version that is equal to, or lower than, that of the process that *reads* it. Otherwise the process will abend. Additionally, Oracle GoldenGate forces the output trail or file of a data pump to be the same version as that of its input trail or file. Upon restart, Extract rolls a trail to a new file to ensure that each file is of only one version (unless the file is empty).

## C.3 Trail Record Format

Each change record written by Oracle GoldenGate to a trail or extract file includes a header area (unless the NOHEADERS parameter was specified), a data area, and possibly a user token area. The record header contains information about the transaction environment, and the data area contains the actual data values that were extracted. The token area contains information that is specified by Oracle GoldenGate users for use in column mapping and conversion.

Oracle GoldenGate trail files are unstructured. You can view Oracle GoldenGate records with the Logdump utility provided with the Oracle GoldenGate software. For more information, see *Logdump Reference for Oracle GoldenGate*.

---

**Note:** As enhancements are made to the Oracle GoldenGate software, the trail record format is subject to changes that may not be reflected in this documentation. To view the current structure, use the Logdump utility.

---

## C.4 Example of an Oracle GoldenGate Record

The following illustrates an Oracle GoldenGate record as viewed with Logdump. The first portion (the list of fields) is the header and the second portion is the data area. The record looks similar to this on all platforms supported by Oracle GoldenGate.

**Figure C-1 Sample Trail Record as Viewed with the Logdump Utility**

```

Commands to show headers, column detail,
and user tokens, and to go to next record
↓
Logdump 59 >open c:\goldengate802\dirdat\cc000000
Current LogTrail is c:\goldengate802\dirdat\cc000000
Logdump 60 >ghdr on
Logdump 61 >detail on
Logdump 62 >detail data
Logdump 63 >usertoken on
Logdump 64 >n

Header area:contains transaction information
↓

Hdr-Ind : E <x45> Partition : . <x04>
UndoFlag : <x00> BeforeAfter: A <x41>
RecLength : 64 <x0040> IO Time : 2011/01/24 14:45:26.000.000
IOType : 5 <x05> OrigNode : 255 <xff>
TransInd : <x03> FormatType : R <x52>
SyskeyLen : 0 <x00> Incomplete : <x00>
AuditRBA : 41 AuditPos : 92002584
Continued : N <x00> RecCount : 1 <x01>

Operation type
and time record
was written
→ 2011/01/24 14:45:26.000.000 Insert Len 64 RBA 0

Source object → Name: DDIEC.DEPARTMENTS
Image type: → After Image:
could be a
before or after
→ 0000 000A 0000 0000 0000 0000 033E 0001 0012 0000 | Partition 4
→ 000E 4164 6D69 6E69 7374 7261 7469 6F6E 0002 000A | Administration...
→ 0000 0000 0000 0000 00C8 0003 000A 0000 0000 0000 | ...
→ 0000 06A4 | ...

Column
information
with data, or
could be
sequence
information
→ Column 0 <x0000>, Len 10 <x000a>
→ 0000 0000 0000 0000 033E | ...
→ Column 1 <x0001>, Len 18 <x0012>
→ 0000 000E 4164 6D69 6E69 7374 7261 7469 6F6E | ...
→ Column 2 <x0002>, Len 10 <x000a>
→ 0000 0000 0000 0000 00C8 | ...
→ Column 3 <x0003>, Len 10 <x000a>
→ 0000 0000 0000 0000 06A4 | ...

User token
area → User tokens: 7 bytes
→ 5465 7374 0031 00 | Test.1.

Record data,
in hex format
Length of
record
RBA position of record
in the trail file
Record data,
in ASCII format

```

This graphic shows a sample trail record as viewed with the Logdump utility.

\*\*\*\*\*

## C.5 Record Header Area

The Oracle GoldenGate record header provides metadata of the data that is contained in the record and includes the following information.

- The operation type, such as an insert, update, or delete
- The before or after indicator for updates
- Transaction information, such as the transaction group and commit timestamp

### C.5.1 Description of Header Fields

The following describes the fields of the Oracle GoldenGate record header. Some fields apply only to certain platforms.

**Table C-1 Oracle GoldenGate record header fields**

| <b>Field</b> | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Hdr-Ind      | Should always be a value of E, indicating that the record was created by the Extract process. Any other value indicates invalid data.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| UndoFlag     | (NonStop) Conditionally set if Oracle GoldenGate is extracting aborted transactions from the TMF audit trail. Normally, UndoFlag is set to zero, but if the record is the backout of a previously successful operation, then UndoFlag will be set to 1. An undo that is performed by the disc process because of a constraint violation is not marked as an undo.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| RecLength    | The length, in bytes, of the record buffer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| IOType       | The type of operation represented by the record. See <a href="#">Table C-2, "Oracle GoldenGate Operation Types"</a> for a list of operation types.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| TransInd     | <p>The place of the record within the current transaction. Values are:</p> <p>0 — first record in transaction<br/>     1 — neither first nor last record in transaction<br/>     2 — last record in the transaction<br/>     3 — only record in the transaction</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| SyskeyLen    | (NonStop) The length of the system key (4 or 8 bytes) if the source is a NonStop file and has a system key. If a system key exists, the first Syskeylen bytes of the record are the system key. Otherwise, SyskeyLen is 0.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| AuditRBA     | Identifies the transaction log identifier, such as the Oracle redo log sequence number.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Continued    | <p>(Windows and UNIX) Identifies whether or not the record is a segment of a larger piece of data that is too large to fit within one record. LOBS, CLOBs, and some VARCHARs are stored in segments. Unified records that contain both before and after images in a single record (due to the UPDATERECORDFORMAT parameter) may exceed the maximum length of a record and may also generate segments.</p> <p>Y — the record is a segment; indicates to Oracle GoldenGate that this data continues to another record.<br/>     N — there is no continuation of data to another segment; could be the last in a series or a record that is not a segment of larger data.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Partition    | <p>This field is for Oracle GoldenGate internal use and may not be meaningful for any particular database.</p> <p>For Windows and UNIX records, this field will always be a value of 4 (FieldComp compressed record in internal format). For these platforms, the term Partition does not indicate that the data represents any particular logical or physical partition within the database structure.</p> <p>For NonStop records, the value of this field depends on the record type:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ In the case of BulkIO operations, Partition indicates the number of the source partition on which the bulk operation was performed. It tells Oracle GoldenGate which source partition the data was originally written to. Replicat uses the Partition field to determine the name of the target partition. The file name in the record header will always be the name of the primary partition. Valid values for BulkIO records are 0 through 15.</li> <li>■ For other non-bulk NonStop operations, the value can be either 0 or 4. A value of 4 indicates that the data is in FieldComp record format.</li> </ul> |
| BeforeAfter  | Identifies whether the record is a before (B) or after (A) image of an update operation. Records that combine both before and after images as the result of the UPDATERECORDFORMAT parameter are marked as after images. Inserts are always after images, deletes are always before images.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

**Table C-1 (Cont.) Oracle GoldenGate record header fields**

| Field      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| IO Time    | The timestamp of the commit record, in local time of the source system, in GMT format. All records in a transaction will have the same commit timestamp. The combination of IO Time and AuditRBA uniquely identifies data from a given transaction. |
| OrigNode   | (NonStop) The node number of the system where the data was extracted. Each system in a NonStop cluster has a unique node number. Node numbers can range from 0 through 255.<br><br>For records other than NonStop in origin, OrigNode is 0.         |
| FormatType | Identifies whether the data was read from the transaction log or fetched from the database.<br><br>F — fetched from database<br>R — readable in transaction log                                                                                     |
| Incomplete | This field is obsolete.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| AuditPos   | Identifies the position in the transaction log of the data.                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| RecCount   | (Windows and UNIX) Used for LOB data when it must be split into chunks to be written to the Oracle GoldenGate file. RecCount is used to reassemble the chunks.                                                                                      |

## C.5.2 Using Header Data

Some of the data available in the Oracle GoldenGate record header can be used for mapping by using the GGHEADER option of the @GETENV function or by using any of the following transaction elements as the source expression in a COLMAP statement in the TABLE or MAP parameter.

- GGS\_TRANS\_TIMESTAMP
- GGS\_TRANS\_RBA
- GGS\_OP\_TYPE
- GGS\_BEFORE\_AFTER\_IND

## C.6 Record Data Area

The data area of the Oracle GoldenGate trail record contains the following:

- The time that the change was written to the Oracle GoldenGate file
- The type of database operation
- The length of the record
- The relative byte address within the trail file
- The table name
- The data changes in hex format

The following explains the differences in record image formats used by Oracle GoldenGate on Windows, UNIX, Linux, and NonStop systems.

### C.6.1 Full Record Image Format (NonStop sources)

A *full record image* contains the values of all of the columns of a processed row. Full record image format is generated in the trail when the source system is HP NonStop, and only when the IOType specified in the record header is one of the following:

3 – Delete  
5 – Insert  
10 – Update

Each full record image has the same format as if retrieved from a program reading the original file or table directly. For SQL tables, datetime fields, nulls, and other data is written exactly as a program would select it into an application buffer. Although datetime fields are represented internally as an eight-byte timestamp, their external form can be up to 26 bytes expressed as a string. Enscribe records are retrieved as they exist in the original file.

When the operation type is `Insert` or `Update`, the image contains the contents of the record *after* the operation (the after image). When the operation type is `Delete`, the image contains the contents of the record *before* the operation (the before image).

For records generated from an Enscribe database, full record images are output unless the original file has the `AUDITCOMPRESS` attribute set to `ON`. When `AUDITCOMPRESS` is `ON`, compressed update records are generated whenever the original file receives an update operation. (A full image can be retrieved by the Extract process by using the `FETCHCOMPS` parameter.)

## C.6.2 Compressed Record Image Format (Windows, UNIX, Linux sources)

A *compressed record image* contains only the key (primary, unique, `KEYCOLS`) and the columns that changed in the processed row. By default, trail records written by processes on Windows and UNIX systems are always compressed. The format of a compressed record is as follows:

`column_index column_length column_data[...]`

Where:

- `column_index` is the ordinal index of the column within the source table (2 bytes).
- `column_length` is the length of the data (2 bytes).
- `column_data` is the data, including `NULL` or `VARCHAR` length indicators.

Enscribe records written from the NonStop platform may be compressed. The format of a compressed Enscribe record is as follows:

`field_offset field_length field_value[...]`

Where:

- `field_offset` is the offset within the original record of the changed value (2 bytes).
- `field_length` is the length of the data (2 bytes).
- `field_value` is the data, including `NULL` or `VARCHAR` length indicators.

The first field in a compressed Enscribe record is the primary or system key.

## C.7 Tokens Area

The trail record also can contain two areas for tokens. One is for internal use and is not documented here, and the other is the user tokens area. User tokens are environment values that are captured and stored in the trail record for replication to target columns or other purposes. If used, these tokens follow the data portion of the record and appear similar to the following when viewed with Logdump:

| Parameter     | Value                        |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| TKN-HOST      | : sysdq                      |
| TKN-GROUP     | : EXTORA                     |
| TKN-BA_IND    | : AFTER                      |
| TKN-COMMIT_TS | : 2011-01-24 17:08:59.000000 |
| TKN-POS       | : 3604496                    |
| TKN-RBA       | : 4058                       |
| TKN-TABLE     | : SOURCE.CUSTOMER            |
| TKN-OPTYPE    | : INSERT                     |
| TKN-LENGTH    | : 57                         |
| TKN-TRAN_IND  | : BEGIN                      |

## C.8 Oracle GoldenGate Operation Types

The following are some of the Oracle GoldenGate operation types. Types may be added as new functionality is added to Oracle GoldenGate. For a more updated list, use the SHOW RECTYPE command in the Logdump utility.

**Table C-2 Oracle GoldenGate Operation Types**

| Type           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Platform |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| 1-Abort        | A transaction aborted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | NSK TMF  |
| 2-Commit       | A transaction committed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | NSK TMF  |
| 3-Delete       | A record/row was deleted. A Delete record usually contains a full record image. However, if the COMPRESSDELETES parameter was used, then only key columns will be present.                                                                                                                                                  | All      |
| 4-EndRollback  | A database rollback ended                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | NSK TMF  |
| 5-Insert       | A record/row was inserted. An Insert record contains a full record image.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | All      |
| 6-Prepared     | A networked transaction has been prepared to commit.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | NSK TMF  |
| 7-TMF-Shutdown | A TMF shutdown occurred.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | NSK TMF  |
| 8-TransBegin   | No longer used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | NSK TMF  |
| 9-TransRelease | No longer used.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | NSK TMF  |
| 10-Update      | A record/row was updated. An Update record contains a full record image. Note: If the partition indicator in the record header is 4, then the record is in FieldComp format (see below) and the update is compressed.                                                                                                       | All      |
| 11-UpdateComp  | A record/row in TMF AuditComp format was updated. In this format, only the changed bytes are present. A 4-byte descriptor in the format of <i>2-byte_offset2-byte_length</i> precedes each data fragment. The byte offset is the ordinal index of the column within the source table. The length is the length of the data. | NSK TMF  |
| 12-FileAlter   | An attribute of a database file was altered.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | NSK      |
| 13-FileCreate  | A database file was created.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | NSK      |
| 14-FilePurge   | A database file was deleted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | NSK      |

**Table C-2 (Cont.) Oracle GoldenGate Operation Types**

| Type                                 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Platform         |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| 15-FieldComp                         | A row in a SQL table was updated. In this format, only the changed bytes are present. Before images of unchanged columns are not logged by the database. A 4-byte descriptor in the format of <i>2-byte_offset2-byte_length</i> precedes each data fragment. The byte offset is the ordinal index of the column within the source table. The length is the length of the data. A partition indicator of 4 in the record header indicates FieldComp format. | All              |
| 16-FileRename                        | A file was renamed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | NSK              |
| 17-AuxPointer                        | Contains information about which AUX trails have new data and the location at which to read.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | NSK TMF          |
| 18-NetworkCommit                     | A networked transaction committed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | NSK TMF          |
| 19-NetworkAbort                      | A networked transaction was aborted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | NSK TMF          |
| 90-(GGS)SQLCol                       | A column or columns in a SQL table were added, or an attribute changed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | NSK              |
| 100-(GGS)Purgedata                   | All data was removed from the file (PURGEDATA).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | NSK              |
| 101-(GGS)Purge(File )                | A file was purged.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | NSK non-TMF      |
| 102-(GGS)Create(File)                | A file was created. The Oracle GoldenGate record contains the file attributes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | NSK non-TMF      |
| 103-(GGS)Alter(File)                 | A file was altered. The Oracle GoldenGate record contains the altered file attributes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | NSK non-TMF      |
| 104-(GGS)Rename(File)                | A file was renamed. The Oracle GoldenGate record contains the original and new names.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | NSK non-TMF      |
| 105-(GGS)Setmode                     | A SETMODE operation was performed. The Oracle GoldenGate record contains the SETMODE information.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | NSK non-TMF      |
| 106-GGSChangeLabel                   | A CHANGETLABEL operation was performed. The Oracle GoldenGate record contains the CHANGETLABEL information.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | NSK non-TMF      |
| 107-(GGS)Control                     | A CONTROL operation was performed. The Oracle GoldenGate record contains the CONTROL information.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | NSK non-TMF      |
| 115 and 117<br>(GGS)KeyFieldComp(32) | A primary key was updated. The Oracle GoldenGate record contains the before image of the key and the after image of the key and the row. The data is in FieldComp format (compressed), meaning that before images of unchanged columns are not logged by the database.                                                                                                                                                                                     | Windows and UNIX |
| 116-LargeObject<br>116-LOB           | Identifies a RAW, BLOB, CLOB, or LOB column. Data of this type is stored across multiple records.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Windows and UNIX |
| 132-(GGS)<br>SequenceOp              | Identifies an operation on a sequence.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Windows and UNIX |

**Table C–2 (Cont.) Oracle GoldenGate Operation Types**

| Type                      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Platform         |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| 134-UNIFIED UPDATE        | Identifies a unified trail record that contains both before and after values in the same record. The before image in a UNIFIED UPDATE contains all of the columns that are available in the transaction record for both the before and after images. The before image in a UNIFIED PKUPDATE contains all of the columns that are available in the transaction record, but the after image is limited to the primary key columns and the columns that were modified in the UPDATE.            | Windows and UNIX |
| 135-UNIFIED PKUPDATE      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                  |
| 160 - DDL_Op              | Identifies a DDL operation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Windows and UNIX |
| 161-RecordFragment        | Identifies part of a large row that must be stored across multiple records (more than just the base record).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Windows and UNIX |
| 200-GGSUnstructured Block | A BULKIO operation was performed. The Oracle GoldenGate record contains the RAW DP2 block.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | NSK non-TMF      |
| 200-BulkIO                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                  |
| 201 through 204           | <p>These are different types of NonStop trace records. Trace records are used by Oracle GoldenGate support analysts. The following are descriptions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ ARTYPE_FILECLOSE_GGS 201 — the source application closed a file that was open for unstructured I/O. Used by Replicat</li> <li>■ ARTYPE_LOGGERTS_GGS 202 — Logger heartbeat record</li> <li>■ ARTYPE_EXTRACTERTS_GGS 203 — unused</li> <li>■ ARTYPE_COLLECTORTS_GGS 204 — unused</li> </ul> | NSK non-TMF      |
| 205-GGSComment            | Indicates a comment record created by the Logdump utility. Comment records are created by Logdump at the beginning and end of data that is saved to a file with Logdump's SAVE command.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | All              |

**Table C–2 (Cont.) Oracle GoldenGate Operation Types**

| Type            | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | Platform    |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| 249 through 254 | <p>These are different types of NonStop trace records. Trace records are used by Oracle GoldenGate support analysts. The following are descriptions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ ARTYPE_LOGGER_ADDED_STATS 249 — a stats record created by Logger when the source application closes its open on Logger (if SENDERSTATS is enabled and stats are written to the logtrail)</li> <li>■ ARTYPE_LIBRARY_OPEN 250 — written by BASELIB to show that the application opened a file</li> <li>■ ARTYPE_LIBRARY_CLOSE 251 — written by BASELIB to show that the application closed a file.</li> <li>■ ARTYPE_LOGGER_ADDED_OPEN 252 — unused</li> <li>■ ARTYPE_LOGGER_ADDED_CLOSE 253 — unused</li> <li>■ ARTYPE_LOGGER_ADDED_INFO 254 — written by Logger and contains information about the source application that performed the I/O in the subsequent record (if SENDERSTATS is enabled and stats are written to the logtrail). The file name in the trace record is the object file of the application. The trace data has the application process name and the name of the library (if any) that it was running with.</li> </ul> | NSK non-TMF |

## C.9 Oracle GoldenGate Trail Header Record

In addition to the transaction-related records that are in the Oracle GoldenGate trail, each trail file contains a file header.

The file header is stored as a record at the beginning of a trail file preceding the data records. The information that is stored in the trail header provides enough information about the records to enable an Oracle GoldenGate process to determine whether the records are in a format that the current version of Oracle GoldenGate supports.

The trail header fields are stored as tokens, where the token format remains the same across all versions of Oracle GoldenGate. If a version of Oracle GoldenGate does not support any given token, that token is ignored. Deprecated tokens are assigned a default value to preserve compatibility with previous versions of Oracle GoldenGate.

You can view the trail header with the FILEHEADER command in the Logdump utility. For more information about the tokens in the file header, see *Logdump Reference for Oracle GoldenGate*.

# D

---

## About the Commit Sequence Number

This appendix contains information about the Oracle GoldenGate Commit Sequence Number (CSN).

When working with Oracle GoldenGate, you might need to refer to a *Commit Sequence Number*, or CSN. The CSN can be required to position Extract in the transaction stream, to reposition Replicat in the trail, or for other purposes. It is returned by some conversion functions and is included in reports and certain GGSCI output.

A CSN is a monotonically increasing identifier generated by Oracle GoldenGate that uniquely identifies a point in time when a transaction commits to the database. Its purpose is to ensure transactional consistency and data integrity as transactions are replicated from source to target.

Each kind of database management system generates some kind of unique serial number of its own at the completion of each transaction, which uniquely identifies the commit of that transaction. For example, the Oracle RDBMS generates a System Change Number, which is a monotonically increasing sequence number assigned to every event by Oracle RDBMS. The CSN captures this same identifying information and represents it internally as a series of bytes, but the CSN is processed in a platform-independent manner. A comparison of any two CSN numbers, each of which is bound to a transaction-commit record in the same log stream, reliably indicates the order in which the two transactions completed.

The CSN is cross-checked with the transaction ID (displayed as XID in Oracle GoldenGate informational output). The XID-CSN combination uniquely identifies a transaction even in cases where there are multiple transactions that commit at the same time, and thus have the same CSN. For example, this can happen in an Oracle RAC environment, where there is parallelism and high transaction concurrency.

The CSN value is stored as a token in any trail record that identifies the commit of a transaction. This value can be retrieved with the @GETENV column conversion function and viewed with the Logdump utility.

All database platforms except Oracle, DB2 LUW, and DB2 z/OS have fixed-length CSNs, which are padded with leading zeroes as required to fill the fixed length. CSNs that contain multiple fields can be padded within each field, such as the Sybase CSN.

MySQL does not create a transaction ID as part of its event data, so Oracle GoldenGate considers a unique transaction identifier to be a *combination* of the following:

- the log file number of the log file that contains the START TRANSACTION record for the transaction that is being identified
- the record offset of that record

---

**Table D-1 Oracle GoldenGate CSN Values Per Database**

| Database  | CSN Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| DB2 for i | <i>sequence_number</i><br><br><b>Where:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ <i>sequence_number</i> is the fixed-length, 20 digit, decimal-based DB2 for i system sequence number.</li></ul><br><b>Example:</b><br>12345678901234567890                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| DB2 LUW   | <i>LSN</i> or <i>LRI</i><br><br><b>Where:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ For version 9.7 and earlier, <i>LSN</i> is the variable-length, decimal-based DB2 log sequence number.<br/><br/><b>Example:</b><br/>1234567890</li><li>■ For version 10.1 and later, <i>LRI</i> is a period-separated pair of numbers for the DB2 log record identifier.<br/><br/><b>Example:</b><br/>123455.34645</li></ul>                                                                                          |
| DB2 z/OS  | <i>RBA</i><br><br><b>where:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ <i>RBA</i> is the 6-byte relative byte address of the commit record within the transaction log.</li></ul><br><b>Example:</b><br>1274565892                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| MySQL     | <i>LogNum</i> : <i>LogPosition</i><br><br><b>Where:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ <i>LogNum</i> is the name of the log file that contains the START TRANSACTION record for the transaction that is being identified.</li><li>■ <i>LogPosition</i> is the event offset value of that record. Event offset values are stored in the record header section of a log record.</li></ul><br>For example, if the log number is 12 and the log position is 121, the CSN is:<br>000012:000000000000121 |
| Oracle    | <i>system_change_number</i><br><br><b>Where:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ <i>system_change_number</i> is the Oracle SCN value.</li></ul><br><b>Example:</b><br>6488359                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

---

**Table D–1 (Cont.) Oracle GoldenGate CSN Values Per Database**

---

| Database   | CSN Value                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SQL/MX     | <p><i>sequence_number</i> RBA</p> <p><b>Where:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ <i>sequence_number</i> is the 6-digit decimal NonStop TMF audit trail sequence number padded with leading zeroes.</li><li>▪ <i>RBA</i> is the 10-digit decimal relative byte address within that file, padded with leading zeroes.</li></ul> <p>Together these specify the location in the TMF Master Audit Trail (MAT).</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <p>000042 0000068242</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| SQL Server | <p>Can be any of these, depending on how the database returns it:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ Colon separated hex string (8:8:4) padded with leading zeroes and 0X prefix</li><li>▪ Colon separated decimal string (10:10:5) padded with leading zeroes</li><li>▪ Colon separated hex string with 0X prefix and without leading zeroes</li><li>▪ Colon separated decimal string without leading zeroes</li><li>▪ Decimal string</li></ul> <p><b>Where:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ The first value is the virtual log file number, the second is the segment number within the virtual log, and the third is the entry number.</li></ul> <p><b>Examples:</b></p> <p>0X00000d7e:0000036b:01bd<br/>0000003454:0000000875:00445<br/>0xd7e:36b:1bd<br/>3454:875:445<br/>3454000000087500445</p> |
| Sybase     | <p><i>time_high.time_low.page.row</i></p> <p><b>Where:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ <i>time_high</i> and <i>time_low</i> represent an instance ID for the log page. It is stored in the header of each database log page. <i>time_high</i> is 2-bytes and <i>time_low</i> is 4-bytes, each padded with leading zeroes.</li><li>▪ <i>page</i> is the database logical page number, padded with zeroes.</li><li>▪ <i>row</i> is the row number, padded with zeroes.</li></ul> <p>Taken together, these components represent a unique location in the log stream. The valid range of a 2-byte integer for a timestamp-high is 0 – 65535. For a 4-byte integer for a timestamp-low, it is: 0 – 4294967295.</p> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <p>00001.0000067330.0000013478.00026</p>                                   |
| Teradata   | <p><i>sequence_ID</i></p> <p><b>Where:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>▪ <i>sequence_ID</i> is a generic fixed-length printable sequence ID.</li></ul> <p><b>Example:</b></p> <p>0x0800000000000000D700000021</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| TimesTen   | There is no CSN for TimesTen, because extraction (capture) is not supported by Oracle GoldenGate for this database.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |



---

## About Checkpoints

This appendix provides information about checkpoints. When working with Oracle GoldenGate, you might need to refer to the checkpoints that are made by a process. Checkpoints save the state of the process for recovery purposes. Extract and Replicat use checkpoints.

This appendix includes the following sections:

- [Extract Checkpoints](#)
- [Replicat Checkpoints](#)
- [Internal checkpoint information](#)
- [Oracle GoldenGate checkpoint tables](#)

### E.1 Extract Checkpoints

Extract checkpoint positions are composed of read checkpoints in the data source and write checkpoints in the trail. The following is a sampling of checkpoint information displayed with the INFO EXTRACT command with the SHOWCH option. In this case, the data source is an Oracle RAC database cluster, so there is thread information included in the output. You can view past checkpoints by specifying the number of them that you want to view after the SHOWCH argument.

**Example E-1 INFO EXTRACT with SHOWCH**

```
EXTRACT      JC108XT Last Started 2011-01-01 14:15    Status ABENDED
Checkpoint Lag      00:00:00 (updated 00:00:01 ago)
Log Read Checkpoint File /orarac/oradata/racq redo01.log
                    2011-01-01 14:16:45 Thread 1, Seqno 47, RBA 68748800
Log Read Checkpoint File /orarac/oradata/racq redo04.log
                    2011-01-01 14:16:19 Thread 2, Seqno 24, RBA 65657408
```

Current Checkpoint Detail:

Read Checkpoint #1

```
Oracle RAC Redo Log
Startup Checkpoint (starting position in data source):
    Thread #: 1
    Sequence #: 47
    RBA: 68548112
    Timestamp: 2011-01-01 13:37:51.000000
    SCN: 0.8439720
    Redo File: /orarac/oradata/racq redo01.log
```

Recovery Checkpoint (position of oldest unprocessed transaction in data source):

```
Thread #: 1
Sequence #: 47
RBA: 68748304
Timestamp: 2011-01-01 14:16:45.000000
SCN: 0.8440969
Redo File: /orarac/oradata/racq redo01.log
```

```
Current Checkpoint (position of last record read in the data source):
Thread #: 1
Sequence #: 47
RBA: 68748800
Timestamp: 2011-01-01 14:16:45.000000
SCN: 0.8440969
Redo File: /orarac/oradata/racq redo01.log
```

Read Checkpoint #2

Oracle RAC Redo Log

```
Startup Checkpoint(starting position in data source):
Sequence #: 24
RBA: 60607504
Timestamp: 2011-01-01 13:37:50.000000
SCN: 0.8439719
Redo File: /orarac/oradata/racq redo04.log
```

```
Recovery Checkpoint (position of oldest unprocessed transaction in data source):
Thread #: 2
Sequence #: 24
RBA: 65657408
Timestamp: 2011-01-01 14:16:19.000000
SCN: 0.8440613
Redo File: /orarac/oradata/racq redo04.log
```

```
Current Checkpoint (position of last record read in the data source):
Thread #: 2
Sequence #: 24
RBA: 65657408
Timestamp: 2011-01-01 14:16:19.000000
SCN: 0.8440613
Redo File: /orarac/oradata/racq redo04.log
```

Write Checkpoint #1

GGS Log Trail

Current Checkpoint (current write position):

```
Sequence #: 2
RBA: 2142224
Timestamp: 2011-01-01 14:16:50.567638
Extract Trail: ./dirdat/eh
```

Header:

```
Version = 2
Record Source = A
Type = 6
# Input Checkpoints = 2
# Output Checkpoints = 1
```

```

File Information:
  Block Size = 2048
  Max Blocks = 100
  Record Length = 2048
  Current Offset = 0

Configuration:
  Data Source = 3
  Transaction Integrity = 1
  Task Type = 0

Status:
  Start Time = 2011-01-01 14:15:14
  Last Update Time = 2011-01-01 14:16:50
  Stop Status = A
  Last Result = 400

```

See [Section E.3](#)for information about the internal information that starts with the Header entry in the SHOWCH output.

## E.1.1 About Extract read checkpoints

Extract places read checkpoints in the data source.

### E.1.1.1 Startup checkpoint

The startup checkpoint is the first checkpoint that is made in the data source when the process starts. This statistic is composed of the following:

- Thread #: The number of the Extract thread that made the checkpoint, if Oracle GoldenGate is running in an Oracle RAC environment. Otherwise, this statistic is not displayed.
- Sequence #: The sequence number of the transaction log where the checkpoint was made.
- RBA: The relative byte address of the record at which the checkpoint was made.
- Timestamp: The timestamp of the record at which the checkpoint was made.
- SCN: The system change number of the record at which the checkpoint was made.
- Redo File: The path name of the transaction log containing the record where the checkpoint was made.

### E.1.1.2 Recovery checkpoint

The recovery checkpoint is the position in the data source of the record containing the oldest transaction not yet processed by Extract. The fields for this statistic are the same as those of the other read checkpoint types.

### E.1.1.3 Current checkpoint

The current checkpoint is the position of the last record read by Extract in the data source. This should match the Log Read Checkpoint statistic shown in the summary and in the basic INFO EXTRACT command without options. The fields for this statistic are the same as those of the other read checkpoint types.

## E.1.2 About Extract write checkpoints

Extract places a write checkpoint, known as the current checkpoint, in the trail. The current checkpoint is the position in the trail where Extract is currently writing. This statistic is composed of the following:

- Sequence #: The sequence number of the trail file where the checkpoint was written.
- RBA: The relative byte address of the record in the trail file at which the checkpoint was made.
- Timestamp: The timestamp of the record at which the checkpoint was made.
- Extract trail: The relative path name of the trail.
- Trail Type: Identifies the trail type. EXTTRAIL identifies the trail as a local trail, which means that it is directly accessible by Oracle GoldenGate processes through the host filesystem. RMTTRAIL identifies the trail as a remote trail, which means it is not directly accessible by Oracle GoldenGate processes through the host filesystem. A trail stored on a shared network device and accessible through NFS-like services are considered local because they are accessible transparently through the host filesystem.

## E.2 Replicat Checkpoints

Replicat makes checkpoints in the trail file to mark its last read position. To view process checkpoints, use the INFO REPLICAT command with the SHOWCH option. The basic command shows current checkpoints. To view a specific number of previous checkpoints, type the value after the SHOWCH argument.

### **Example E-2 INFO REPLICAT, SHOWCH**

```
REPLICAT  JC108RP  Last Started 2011-01-12 13:10  Status RUNNING
Checkpoint Lag          00:00:00 (updated 111:46:54 ago)
Log Read Checkpoint    File ./dirdat/eh000000
                           First Record RBA 3702915
Current Checkpoint Detail:
  Read Checkpoint #1
  GGS Log Trail
  Startup Checkpoint(starting position in data source):
    Sequence #: 0
    RBA: 3702915
    Timestamp: Not Available
    Extract Trail: ./dirdat/eh
    Current Checkpoint (position of last record read in the data source):
      Sequence #: 0
      RBA: 3702915
      Timestamp: Not Available
      Extract Trail: ./dirdat/eh
      Header:
        Version = 2
        Record Source = A
        Type = 1
        # Input Checkpoints = 1
        # Output Checkpoints = 0
      File Information:
        Block Size = 2048
        Max Blocks = 100
        Record Length = 2048
        Current Offset = 0
```

```

Configuration:
Data Source = 0
Transaction Integrity = -1
Task Type = 0
Status:
Start Time = 2011-01-12 13:10:13
Last Update Time = 2011-01-12 21:23:31
Stop Status = A
Last Result = 400

```

See [Section E.3](#) for information about the internal information that starts with the Header entry in the SHOWCH output.

## E.2.1 About Replicat checkpoints

The following describes the detail of the Replicat checkpoints in the trail.

### E.2.1.1 Startup Checkpoint

The *startup checkpoint* is the first checkpoint made in the trail when the process starts. Comprising this statistic are:

- Sequence #: The sequence number of the trail file where the checkpoint was written.
- RBA: The relative byte address of the record at which the checkpoint was made.
- Timestamp: The timestamp of the record at which the checkpoint was made.
- Extract Trail: The relative path name of the trail.

### E.2.1.2 Current Checkpoint

The *current checkpoint* is the position of the last record read by Replicat in the trail. This should match the Log Read Checkpoint statistic shown in the summary and in the basic INFO REPLICAT command without options. The fields for this statistic are the same as those of the Startup Checkpoint.

## E.3 Internal checkpoint information

The INFO command with the SHOWCH option not only displays current checkpoint entries, but it also displays metadata information about the record itself. This information is not documented and is for use by the Oracle GoldenGate processes and by support personnel when resolving a support case. The metadata is contained in the following entries in the SHOWCH output.

```

Header:
Version = 2
Record Source = A
Type = 1
# Input Checkpoints = 1
# Output Checkpoints = 0
File Information:
Block Size = 2048
Max Blocks = 100
Record Length = 2048
Current Offset = 0
Configuration:
Data Source = 0
Transaction Integrity = -1

```

```
Task Type = 0
Status:
Start Time = 2011-01-12 13:10:13
Last Update Time = 2011-01-12 21:23:31
Stop Status = A
Last Result = 400
```

## E.4 Oracle GoldenGate checkpoint tables

When database checkpoints are being used, Oracle GoldenGate creates a checkpoint table with a user-defined name in the database upon execution of the ADD CHECKPOINTTABLE command, or a user can create the table by using the `chkpt_db_create.sql` script (where `db` is an abbreviation of the type of database that the script supports).

There are two tables: the main checkpoint table and an auxiliary checkpoint table that is created automatically. The auxiliary table, known as the *transaction table*, bears the name of the primary checkpoint table appended with `_lox`. Each Replicat, or each thread of a coordinated Replicat, uses one row in the checkpoint table to store its progress information.

At checkpoint time, there typically are some number of transactions (among the total  $n$  transactions) that were applied, and the rest are still in process. For example, if Replicat is processing a group of  $n$  transactions ranging from CSN1 to CSN3. CSN1 is the high watermark and CSN3 is the low watermark. Any transaction with a CSN higher than the high watermark has not been processed, and any transaction with a CSN lower than the low watermark has already been processed.

Completed transactions are stored in the `LOG_CMPLT_XID` column of the checkpoint table. Any overflow of these transactions is stored in the transaction table (auxiliary checkpoint table) in the `LOG_CMPLT_XID` column of that table.

Currently, Replicat (or each Replicat thread of a coordinated Replicat) applies transactions serially (not in parallel); therefore, the high watermark (the `LOG_CSN` value in the table) is always the same as the low watermark (the `LOG_CMPLT_CSN` value in the table), and there typically is only one transaction ID in the `LOG_CMPLT_XID` column. The only exception is when there are multiple transactions sharing the same CSN.

Do not change the names or attributes of the columns in these tables. You can change table storage attributes as needed.

**Table E-1 Checkpoint table definition**

| Column                   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| GROUP_NAME (primary key) | The name of a Replicat group using this table for checkpoints. There can be multiple Replicat groups using the same table. This column is part of the primary key.                                          |
| GROUP_KEY (primary key)  | A unique identifier that, together with GROUPNAME, uniquely identifies a checkpoint regardless of how many Replicat groups are writing to the same table. This column is part of the primary key.           |
| SEQNO                    | The sequence number of the input trail that Replicat was reading at the time of the checkpoint.                                                                                                             |
| RBA                      | The relative byte address that Replicat reached in the trail identified by SEQNO. RBA + SEQNO provide an absolute position in the trail that identifies the progress of Replicat at the time of checkpoint. |
| AUDIT_TS                 | The timestamp of the commit of the source transaction.                                                                                                                                                      |

**Table E–1 (Cont.) Checkpoint table definition**

| <b>Column</b>  | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                         |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| CREATE_TS      | The date and time when the checkpoint table was created.                                                                                   |
| LAST_UPDATE_TS | The date and time when the checkpoint table was last updated.                                                                              |
| CURRENT_DIR    | The current Oracle GoldenGate home directory or folder.                                                                                    |
| LOG_CSNS       | Stores the high watermark, or the upper boundary, of the CSNs. Any transaction with a CSN higher than this value has not been processed.   |
| LOG_XID        | Not used. Retained for backward compatibility.                                                                                             |
| LOG_CMPLT_CSNS | Stores the low watermark, or the lower boundary, of the CSNs. Any transaction with a lower CSN than this value has already been processed. |
| LOG_CMPLT_XIDS | Stores the transactions between the high and low watermarks that are already applied.                                                      |
| VERSION        | The version of the checkpoint table format. Enables future enhancements to be identified as version numbers of the table.                  |

**Table E–2 Transaction table definition**

| <b>Column</b>      | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| GROUP_NAME         | The name of a Replicat group using this table for checkpoints. There can be multiple Replicat groups using the same table. This column is part of the primary key of the transaction table.                                |
| GROUP_KEY          | A unique identifier that, together with GROUPNAME, uniquely identifies a checkpoint regardless of how many Replicat groups are writing to the same table. This column is part of the primary key of the transaction table. |
| LOG_CMPLT_CSNS     | The foreign key that references the checkpoint table. This column is part of the primary key of the transaction table.                                                                                                     |
| LOG_CMPLT_XIDS_SEQ | Creates unique rows in the event there are so many overflow transactions that multiple rows are required to store them all. This column is part of the primary key of the transaction table.                               |
| LOG_CMPLT_XIDS     | Stores the overflow of transactions between the high and low watermarks that are already applied.                                                                                                                          |

